Structural Deformation Surveying - Part 1 of 3

Course No: L06-002
Credit: 6 PDH

Gilbert Gedeon, P.E.

Continuing Education and Development, Inc.

P: (877) 322-5800
info@cedengineering.com

This course was adapted from the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Publication No. EM 1110-2-1009, "Structural Deformation Surveying", which is in the public domain.

Note: This course is based on chapters 1 through 3 of Structural Deformation Surveying of this PDF document.

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

*EM 1110 2-1009

CECW-EE

Manual
No. 1110-2-1009

01 Feb 2018

Engineering and Design
STRUCTURAL DEFORMATION SURVEYING

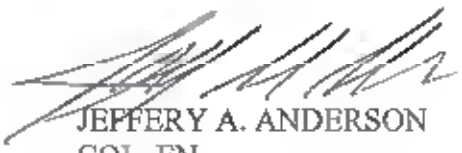
1. Purpose. This manual provides technical guidance for performing precise structural deformation surveys of locks, dams, and other hydraulic flood control or navigation structures. Accuracy, procedural, and quality control standards are defined for monitoring displacements in hydraulic structures.

2. Applicability. This manual applies to all U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) commands having responsibility for conducting periodic inspections of completed civil works projects, as required under Engineer Regulation (ER) 1110-2-1156, Safety of Dams – Policy and Procedure.

3. Distribution Statement. This publication is approved for public release; distribution is unlimited

4. Discussion. The Corps of Engineers has constructed hundreds of dams, locks, levees, and other structures that require periodic surveys to monitor long-term movements and settlements, or to monitor short-term deflections and deformations. These structures are subject to external loads that cause deformation and permeation of the structure itself, as well as its foundations. Any indication of abnormal behavior may threaten the safety of the structure. Careful monitoring of the loads on a structure and its response to them can aid in determining abnormal behavior of that structure. In general, monitoring consists of both measurements and visual inspections, as outlined in ER 1110-2-1156. To facilitate the monitoring of structures, they should be permanently equipped with proper instrumentation and/or monitoring points according to the goals of the observation, structure type and size, and site conditions.

FOR THE COMMANDER:



JEFFERY A. ANDERSON
COL, EN
Chief of Staff

6 Appendices
(See Table of Contents)

*This manual supersedes EM 1110-2-1009, Structural Deformation Surveying, 1 June 2002

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

DEPARTMENT OF THE ARMY
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
Washington, DC 20314-1000

EM 1110-2-1009

CECW-EE

Manual
No. 1110-2-1009

01 Feb 18

Engineering and Design
STRUCTURAL DEFORMATION SURVEYING

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Paragraph	Page
Chapter 1. Introduction		
Purpose	1-1	1-1
Applicability	1-2	1-1
Distribution	1-3	1-1
References	1-4	1-1
Scope of Manual	1-5	1-1
Background	1-6	1-1
Structural Deformation Surveying	1-7	1-3
Life Cycle Project Management	1-8	1-4
Metrics	1-9	1-4
Trade Name Exclusions	1-10	1-4
Abbreviations and Terms	1-11	1-4
Mandatory Requirements	1-12	1-4
Proponency and Waivers	1-13	1-4
Chapter 2. Planning, Design, and Accuracy Requirements		
Standards for Deformation Surveys	2-1	2-1
Accuracy Requirements for Performing Deformation Surveys	2-2	2-2
Overview of Deformation Surveying Design	2-3	2-4
Professional Associations	2-4	2-9
Causes of Dam Failure	2-5	2-10
Foundation Problems in Dams	2-6	2-11
Navigation Locks	2-7	2-12
Deformation Parameters	2-8	2-14
Location of Monitoring Points	2-9	2-15
Design of Reference Networks	2-10	2-17
Reference Point Monumentation	2-11	2-21
Monitoring Point Monumentation	2-12	2-23
Design of Measurement Schemes	2-13	2-26

	Paragraph	Page
Measurement Reliability	2-14	2-29
Frequency of Measurements	2-15	2-31
Chapter 3. Deformation Measurement and Alignment Instrumentation		
General	3-1	3-1
Angle and Distance Measurements	3-2	3-2
Differential Leveling	3-3	3-6
Total Station Trigonometric Elevations	3-4	3-7
Global Positioning System (GPS)	3-5	3-8
Photogrammetric Techniques	3-6	3-11
Alignment Measurements	3-7	3-12
Extension and Strain Measurements	3-8	3-14
Tilt and Inclination Measurements	3-9	3-17
Non-Geodetic Measurements	3-10	3-19
Optical Tooling Technology	3-11	3-21
Laser Tooling methods	3-12	3-22
Chapter 4. Sources of Measurement Error and Instrument Calibrations		
General	4-1	4-1
Theory of Measurements and Survey Measurement Error	4-2	4-1
Optical Pointing Error	4-3	4-4
Instrument Leveling Error	4-4	4-7
Instrument Centering Error	4-5	4-8
Horizontal Angle Measurement Error	4-6	4-11
Electronic Distance Measurement Error	4-7	4-11
Zenith Angle Measurement Error	4-8	4-14
Refraction of Optical Lines of Sight	4-9	4-15
Theodolite System Error	4-10	4-20
Reflector Alignment Error	4-11	4-21
EDM Scale Error	4-12	4-21
EDM Prism Zero Error	4-13	4-22
EDM Cyclic Error	4-14	4-24
Calibration Baselines	4-15	4-25
Equipment for Baseline Calibration	4-16	4-26
Procedures for Baseline Calibration	4-17	4-27
Sources of Error in GPS Measurements	4-18	4-29

	Paragraph	Page
Chapter 5. Angle and Distance Observations--Theodolites, Total Stations and EDM		
Scope	5-1	5-1
Instrument and Reflector Centering Procedures	5-2	5-2
Angle and Direction Observations	5-3	5-3
Distance Observations	5-4	5-6
Electro-Optical Distance Measurement	5-5	5-8
EDM Reductions	5-6	5-11
Atmospheric Refraction Correction	5-7	5-12
Chapter 6. Settlement Surveys--Precise Differential Leveling Observations		
Scope	6-1	6-1
Precise Geodetic Leveling	6-2	6-1
Differential Leveling Reductions	6-3	6-5
Total Station Trigonometric Heights	6-4	6-8
Chapter 7. Alignment, Deflection, and Crack Measurement Surveys--Micrometer Observations		
Scope	7-1	7-1
Relative Alignment Deflections from Fixed Baseline	7-2	7-1
Micrometer Crack Measurement Observations	7-3	7-6
Chapter 8. Monitoring Structural Deformations Using the Global Positioning System		
Purpose	8-1	8-1
Background	8-2	8-1
Scope of Chapter	8-3	8-2
Section I		
Monitoring Structural Deformation with GPS		
Surveying Requirements	8-4	8-4
Surveying Procedures	8-5	8-6
Data Processing Procedures	8-6	8-8
GPS Monitoring Applications	8-7	8-11
GPS Survey Reporting and Results	8-8	8-15
Section II		
GPS Performance on Monitoring Networks		
GPS Receiving System Performance	8-9	8-17
GPS Performance on Monitoring Networks	8-10	8-20

	Paragraph	Page
Section III		
Data Quality Assessment for GPS Monitoring Surveying		
Post-Processing Statistics	8-11	8-26
Closure and Station Checks	8-12	8-30
Section IV		
Mitigation of Multipath Signals		
Description of Multipath Signals	8-13	8-32
Data Cleaning Techniques for GPS Monitoring Surveys	8-14	8-34
Chapter 9. Preanalysis and Network Adjustment		
General	9-1	9-1
Least Squares Adjustment	9-2	9-1
Adjustment Input Parameters	9-3	9-5
Adjustment Output Parameters	9-4	9-10
Adjustment Procedures	9-5	9-15
Chapter 10. Laser Scanning in Deformation Monitoring		
General	10-1	10-1
Instrumentation and Performance	10-2	10-2
Data Management	10-3	10-5
Standardized Reporting	10-4	10-5
Project Example	10-5	10-6
Chapter 11. Analysis and Assessment of Results		
General	11-1	11-1
Geometrical Analysis	11-2	11-2
Statistical Modeling	11-3	11-8
Deterministic Modeling	11-4	11-9
Hybrid Analysis Method	11-5	11-10
Automated Data Management	11-6	11-11
Scope of Deformation Analysis	11-7	11-13
Chapter 12. Data Presentation and Final Reports		
Reporting Content and Format	12-1	12-1
Displacement Data Presentation	12-2	12-3

		Paragraph	Page
	Data Management	12-3	12-4
	Example Report	12-4	12-5
Appendix A	References		A-1
Appendix B	Applications: Deformation Surveys of Locks and Dams Central & Southern Florida Flood Control Project (Jacksonville District) Surveying for Lock Structure Dewatering (Lock and Dam No. 4, St. Paul District)		B-1
Appendix C	Applications: Monitoring Schemes for Concrete Dams (Libby Dam, Seattle District)		C-1
Appendix D	Yatesville Lake Dam Network Adjustment Example		D-1
Appendix E	Laser Alignment Surveys and Instrumentation		E-1
Appendix F	Relative Distance Ratio Assessment Methods		F-1
Glossary			Glossary-1

CHAPTER 1

Introduction

1-1. Purpose. This manual provides technical guidance for performing precise structural deformation surveys of locks, dams, and other hydraulic flood control or navigation structures. Accuracy, procedural, and quality control standards are defined for monitoring displacements in hydraulic structures.

1-2. Applicability. This manual applies to all U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (USACE) Commands having responsibility for conducting periodic inspections of completed civil works projects, as required under Engineer Regulation (ER) 1110-2-1156, Safety of Dams – Policy and Procedure.

1-3. Distribution Statement. This publication is approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

1-4. References. Required and related references are at Appendix A.

1-5. Scope of Manual. The primary emphasis of this manual is placed on the technical procedures for performing precise monitoring surveys in support of the USACE dam safety programs. General planning criteria, field and office execution procedures, data reduction and adjustment methods, and required accuracy specifications for performing structural deformation surveys are provided. These techniques are applicable to periodic monitoring surveys on earth and rock-fill dams, embankments, and concrete structures. This manual covers both conventional (terrestrial) and satellite (Global Positioning System (GPS)) deformation survey methods used for measuring external movements. This manual does not cover instrumentation required to measure internal loads, stresses, strains, or pressures within a structure—refer to the references at Appendix A for these activities. Example applications on USACE projects are provided at Appendix B (Deformation Surveys of Locks and Dams) and Appendix C (Monitoring Schemes for Concrete Dams). The manual is intended to be a reference guide for structural deformation surveying, whether performed by in-house hired-labor forces, contracted forces, or combinations thereof. This manual should be directly referenced in the scopes of work for Architect-Engineer (A-E) survey services or other third-party survey services.

1-6. Background. USACE has constructed hundreds of dams, locks, levees, and other flood control structures that require periodic surveys to monitor long-term movements and settlements, or to monitor short-term deflections and deformations. These surveys are usually performed under the directives of ER 1110-2-1156.

a. Structural Deformation. Dams, locks, levees, embankments, and other flood control structures are subject to external loads that cause deformation and permeation of the structure itself, as well as its foundations. Any indication of abnormal behavior may threaten the safety of the structure. Careful monitoring of the loads on a structure and its response to them can aid in

determining abnormal behavior of that structure. In general, monitoring consists of both measurements and visual inspections, as outlined in ER 1110-2-1156. To facilitate the monitoring of structures, they should be permanently equipped with proper instrumentation and/or monitoring points per the goals of the observation, structure type and size, and site conditions.

b. Concrete Structures. It is intuitive that deformations and periodic observations will vary per the type of structure. Differences in construction materials are one of the larger influences on how a structure deforms. For example, concrete dams deform differently than earthen or embankment dams. For concrete dams and other concrete flood control devices, deformation is highly dependent on reservoir water pressure and temperature variations with an overall elastic behavior. Permanent deformation of the structure can sometimes occur as the subsoil adapts to new loads, concrete aging, or foundation rock fatigue is experienced. Such deformation is not considered unsafe if it does not go beyond a predetermined critical value. Therefore, periodic observations are typically configured to observing relatively long-term movement trends, to include abnormal settlements, heaving, or lateral movements. Conventional geodetic survey methods from external points are sufficient to monitor these long-term trends. Highly accurate, short-term deflections or relative movements between monoliths due to varying temperature or hydraulic loading are more rarely required. These may include crack measurements or relative movements between monoliths over different hydraulic loadings.

c. Earthen Embankment Structures. Earthen or embankment dams and levees obviously will deform altogether differently than concrete ones. With earthen dams, the deformation is largely characterized as more permanent. Deformation of an earthen dam can either be from consolidation (self-weight like loading) or the hydrostatic load from the reservoir the dam is resisting. Deformation might be described as multilane. An earthen dam crest cracks, or starts with a divot, or sometimes a heaved boil and a slough. The shapes are mulitplanar. Deformation survey accuracy requirements are less rigid for earthen embankments, and traditional construction survey methods will usually provide sufficient accuracy. Typical surveys include periodic measurement of embankment crest elevations and slopes to monitor settlements and slope stability.

d. Long-Term Deformation Monitoring. Depending on the type and condition of structure, monitoring systems may need to be capable of measuring both long-term movement trends and short-term loading deformations. Long-term measurements are far more common and somewhat more complex given their external nature. Long-term monitoring of a structure's movement typically requires observations to monitoring points on the structure from external reference points. These external reference points are established on stable ground well removed from the structure or its construction influence. These external reference points are inter-connected and termed the "reference network." The reference network must also be monitored to ensure these reference points have not themselves moved. Traditional geodetic survey instruments and techniques may be employed to establish and monitor the reference network points.

1-7. Structural Deformation Surveying**.**

a. Reference and Monitoring Points. The general procedures to monitor the deformation of a structure and its foundation involve measuring the spatial displacement of selected object points (i.e., monitoring points) from external reference points that are fixed in position. Both terrestrial and satellite methods are used to measure these geospatial displacements. When the reference points are located in the structure, only relative deformation is determined, for example, micrometer joint measurements are relative observations. Absolute deformation or displacement is possible if the reference points are located outside the actual structure, in the foundation or surrounding terrain, and beyond the area that may be affected by the dam or reservoir. Subsequent periodic observations are then made relative to these absolute reference points. Assessment of permanent deformations requires absolute data.

b. Reference Point Network. In general, for concrete dams, it is ideal to place the reference points in a rock foundation at a depth unaffected by the reservoir. Once permanently monumented, these reference points can be easily accessed to perform deformation surveys with simple measurement devices. Fixed reference points located within the vicinity of the dam but outside the range of its impact are essential to determination of the deformation behavior of the structure. Thus, monitoring networks in the dam plane will be supplemented by and/or connected horizontally and vertically to the National Spatial Reference System (NSRS) when practical or feasible.

c. Monitoring Techniques. The monitoring of dam or foundation deformation must be done in a manner such that the displacement is measured both horizontally and vertically (i.e., measurement along horizontal and vertical lines) to mimic mulitplanar movement. Such measurements must include the foundation and extend as far as possible into it. Redundancy is essential in this form of deformation monitoring and is achieved through measuring at the points intersecting the orthogonal lines of the deformation network. If a dam includes inspection galleries and shafts, deformation values along vertical lines can be obtained by using hanging and/or inverted plumb lines and along horizontal lines by traverses—both of these methods are standard practice for deformation monitoring. Where there are no galleries or shafts (e.g., embankment dams, thin arch dams, or small gravity dams), the same result can be achieved by an orthogonal network of survey targets on the downstream face. These targets are sighted by angle measurements (typically combined with optical distance measurements) from reference points outside the dam.

d. Relative Displacement Observations. A more routine, less costly, and more frequent monitoring process can be employed to monitor the short-term behavior of dams by simply confining observation to trends at selected points along the crest and sometimes vertical lines. Such procedures typically involve simple angle measurement or alignment (supplementing the measuring installation) along the crest to determine horizontal displacement, and elevation determination by leveling to determine vertical displacement (i.e., settlement). Even with this monitoring process, it is essential to extend leveling to some distance beyond the abutments.

Alternative methods described include settlement gauges, hose leveling devices, or extensometers.

1-8. Life Cycle Project Management**.** As outlined in ER 1110-2-1156, structural stability assessment surveys may be required through the entire life cycle of a project, spanning decades in many cases. During the early planning phases of a project, a comprehensive monitoring plan should be developed which considers survey requirements over a project's life cycle, with a goal of eliminating duplicate or redundant surveys to the maximum extent possible. During initial design and preconstruction phases of a project, reference points should be permanently monumented and situated in areas that are conducive to the performance of periodic monitoring surveys. During construction, fixed monitoring points should be established on the structure at points called for in the comprehensive monitoring plan.

1-9. Metrics. Both English and metric (International System of Units (SI)) units are used in this manual. Metric units are commonly used in precise surveying applications, including the horizontal and vertical survey work covered in this manual. Structural movements are usually recorded and reported in SI units. Some measurement instruments (e.g., micrometers) use English units. In all cases, the use of either metric or non-SI units must follow local engineering and construction practices. Accuracy standards and tolerances specified in this manual are generally stated at the 95% confidence level.

1-10. Trade Name Exclusions. The citation or illustration in this manual of trade names of commercially available survey products, including other auxiliary surveying equipment, instrumentation, and adjustment software, does not constitute official endorsement or approval of the use of such products.

1-11. Abbreviations and Terms. Engineering surveying terms and abbreviations used in this manual are explained in the Glossary.

1-12. Mandatory Requirements. ER 1110-2-1150 (Engineering and Design for Civil Works Projects) prescribes that mandatory requirements be identified in engineer manuals (EMs). Mandatory accuracy standards, quality control, and quality assurance criteria are normally summarized in tables within each chapter. If no mandatory requirements are listed, then the material in a particular chapter is considered recommended guidance. The mandatory criteria contained in this manual are based on the following considerations: (1) project safety assurance, (2) overall project function, (3) previous USACE experience and practice, (4) USACE-wide geospatial data standardization requirements, (5) adverse economic impacts if criteria are not followed, and (6) HQUSACE commitments to industry standards.

1-13. Proponency and Waivers. The HQUSACE proponent for this manual is the Engineering and Construction Division, Directorate of Civil Works. Technical development and compilation of the manual was coordinated by the U.S. Army Geospatial Center (CEAGC-GSS). Comments, recommended changes, or waivers to this manual should be forwarded through Major Subordinate Commands (MSC) to Headquarters, USACE (HQUSACE) (ATTN: CECW-EE).

CHAPTER 2

Planning, Design, and Accuracy Requirements

2-1. Standards for Deformation Surveys.

a. General. This chapter provides guidance for planning and implementing structural deformation surveys on USACE civil works projects. It discusses criteria and objectives used for designing geodetic monitoring networks and for developing reliable and economical measurement schemes based on precise engineering surveying methods. Deformation monitoring is conducted primarily to ensure the safety of the dam and deformation surveys provides engineering data and analysis for verifying design parameters, for construction safety, for periodic inspection reports, and for regular maintenance operations. Safety, economical design of man-made structures, efficient functioning and fitting of structural elements, environmental protection, and development of mitigating measures in the case of natural disasters (landslides, earthquakes, liquefaction of earth dams, etc.) require a good understanding of causes (loads) and the mechanism of deformation, which can be achieved only through the proper measurement and analysis of deformable bodies.

b. Dam Safety. USACE owns and operates a wide range of large engineering structures, including major infrastructure facilities for navigation, flood protection, and large dams. The National Dam Safety Program ensures that all dams and appurtenant structures are designed, constructed, and operated safely and effectively under all conditions. The responsibility to minimize the risk to the public is critical due to the potential loss of life and property that a structural failure could cause. USACE dams and reservoirs must be inspected so that their structural condition and design assumptions can be evaluated and verified. As a result of major disasters in the United States, the Federal Government revised laws for supervision of the safety of dams and reservoirs. The Dam Inspection Act, Public Law (PL) 92-367, 8 August 1972, authorized the Secretary of the Army, acting through the Chief of Engineers, to undertake a national program of inspection of dams.

c. Engineer Regulations (ERs). Standards for conducting instrumentation surveys and for periodic inspections are contained in the following publications.

-ER 1110-2-1156, Safety of Dams – Policy and Procedures
-ER 1110-2-103, Strong-Motion Instruments for Recording Earthquake Motions on Dams
-EM 1110-2-2300, General Design and Construction Consideration for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams
-EM 1110-2-4300, Instrumentation for Concrete Structures
-EM 1110-2-1908, Instrumentation of Embankment Dams and Levees

Guidance for Civil Works projects provides for an adequate level of instrumentation, as appropriate to address potential failure modes and risks, to enable design engineers to monitor and evaluate the safe performance of the structures during the construction period and under all

operating conditions. Appendix AD of ER 1110-2-1156 states that a systematic plan will be established for the inspection of those features relating to safety and stability of the structure and to the operational adequacy of the project. Operational adequacy means the inspecting, testing, operating, and evaluation of those components of the project whose failure to operate properly would impair the operational capability and/or usability of the structure. Appendix AD also addresses provisions to collect and permanently retain specific engineering data relating to the project structure and examine records that detail the principal design assumptions and stability, stress analysis, slope stability, and settlement analyses.

d. Specialized Standards. Federal geospatial data standards, established in OMB Circular No. A-16, Coordination of Geographic Information and Related Spatial Data Activities, provide for activities conducted to meet special agency program needs. USACE engineering and construction guidance for geospatial data products prescribes voluntary industry standards and consensus standards, except where they are non-existent, inappropriate, or do not meet a project's functional requirement. Specialized standards for conducting deformation surveys are justified as long as products are consistent with effective government wide coordination and efficient, economical service to the general public. Deformation monitoring often requires specialized surveying methods that are planned and executed per specialized techniques and procedures.

2-2. Accuracy Requirements for Performing Deformation Surveys**.**

a. Accuracy Requirements. Typical accuracy requirements for deformation surveys can be found in Table 2-1. Surveying accuracy specifications are meant to ensure detection of a given amount of movement under normal operating conditions. Allowable survey error thresholds are related to the maximum expected displacement that would occur between repeated measurement campaigns. For each survey, final positioning accuracies at the 95% probability level, usually stated as 95% confidence level relative to the Root Mean Squared (RMS), should be less than or equal to one-fourth (0.25) of the predicted (maximum) displacement value. In addition to the maximum displacement criteria stated above, the expected velocity and/or frequency (cyclic behavior) should be considered as a further practical basis for the design of accuracy requirements. Specification of accuracy requirements is a major factor in the evaluation of performance for a given GPS-based measurement scheme. The maximum deflection of any structure varies widely and should be determined for each survey design, maximum deflection should be determined by a separate structural analysis. The following sections provide examples of how to calculate survey accuracy for various types of structures.

(1) Example calculation of survey accuracy for concrete structures. Long-term movement studies on large concrete structures (mass gravity dams) indicate that normal maximum relative horizontal deflections between any two monolith pairs are on the order of 20–30 millimeter (mm), due mainly to cyclic-seasonal temperature and pool elevation changes. This implies an accuracy of 5–7 mm in relative horizontal positioning from each survey is required at the 95% confidence level, which closely approximates the values listed in Table 2.1.

(2) Example calculation of survey accuracy for embankment structures. Settlement of earth and rock-fill embankments decreases as a function of time (due to consolidation). Normal vertical settlement is on the order of 400 mm over a 5–10-year stabilizing phase, progressing most actively in the first two years. Mean settlement rates of approximately 50 mm/year, up to a maximum of 140 mm/year are typical, however, these rates depend on the subsurface conditions and embankment composition and can vary dramatically. This implies vertical survey accuracy of approximately 12 mm/year up to a maximum of 35 mm. Horizontal displacements on embankment structures follow similar stabilizing trends with maximum displacements on the order 90–100 mm, occurring at peak rates of 30 mm/year. Positioning accuracies of approximately 22-25 mm/year horizontally are required at the 95% confidence level.

(3) Example calculation of survey accuracy for navigation locks. Navigation lock structures are subject to foundation uplift pressures (especially when dewatered for repairs), and progressive deterioration from use, age, collisions, and river environment effects. Lock monitoring includes events such as ground motion due to nearby seismic activity, scour and associated wall settlements, and inward rotation of wall monoliths away from retaining embankments. Assume an example relative movement (due to tilt) on the order of 20 mm or less between the base and top of the wall would approach minimum safety and stability thresholds. Survey accuracies on the order of 5 mm at 95% are required to observe movement trends and give adequate warning time to evacuate the lock chamber(s) before failure.

b. The following table provides guidance on the accuracy requirements for performing deformation surveys. These represent either absolute or relative movement accuracies on target points that should be attained from survey observations made from external reference points. The accuracy by which the external reference network is established and periodically monitored for stability should exceed these accuracies. Many modern survey systems (e.g., electronic total stations, digital levels, GPS, etc.) are easily capable of meeting or exceeding the accuracies shown below. However, it is important that accuracy criteria be defined relative to the particular structure's requirements, not the capabilities of a survey instrument or system.

Table 2-1. Nominal accuracy requirements for structure target points (95% RMS).

Concrete Structures Dams, Outlet Works, Locks, Intake Structures:	
Long-Term Movement	±5–10 mm
Relative Short-Term Deflections	
Crack/Joint Movements	±0.2 mm
Monolith Alignment	±2 mm
Vertical Stability/Settlement	±2 mm
Embankment Structures Earth Rock-fill Dams, Levees:	
Slope/crest Stability	±10–20 mm
Crest Alignment	±10-20 mm

Settlement measurements	±5 mm
Control Structures Spillways, Stilling Basins, Approach/Outlet Channels, Reservoirs:	
Scour/Erosion/Silting	±25–100 mm

2-3. Overview of Deformation Surveying Design.

a. General. USACE districts have the responsibility for formulating inspection plans, conducting inspections, processing and analyzing instrument observations, evaluating the condition of the structures, recommending inspection schedules, and preparing inspection and evaluation reports. This section presents information to aid in fulfilling these objectives.

b. Monitoring Plan. Each monitored structure should have a technical report or design memorandum published for the instrumentation and/or surveying scheme to document the monitoring plan and its intended performance. A project specific measurement scheme and its operating procedures should be developed for the monitoring system (Figure 2-1). Separate designs should be completed for the instrumentation plan and for the proposed measurement scheme. This plan should be documented in the periodic inspections.

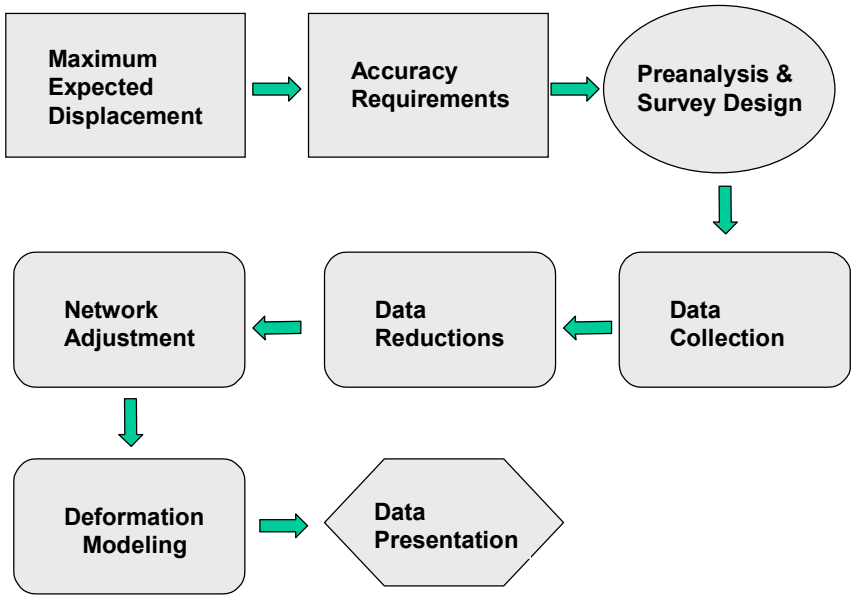


Figure 2-1. Deformation survey data flow.

(1) Survey System Design. Although accuracy and sensitivity criteria may differ considerably between various monitoring applications, the basic principles of the design of monitoring schemes and their geometrical analysis remain the same. For example, a study on the

stability of magnets in a nuclear accelerator may require determination of relative displacements with an accuracy of ±0.05 mm, while a settlement study of a rock-fill dam may require only ±10 mm accuracy. Although in both cases, the monitoring techniques and instrumentation may differ, the same basic methodology applies to the design and analysis of the deformation measurements.

(a) Instrumentation Plan (Design). The instrumentation plan is mainly concerned with building or installing the physical network of surface movement points for a monitoring project. Contained in the instrumentation plan are specifications, procedures, and descriptions for:

-required equipment, supplies, and materials;
-monument types, function, and operating principles;
-procedures for the installation and protection of monuments;
-location and coverage of monitoring points on the project; and
-maintenance and inspection of the monitoring network.

The plan contains drawings, product specifications, and other documents that completely describe the proposed instrumentation, and methods for fabrication; testing; installation; and protection and maintenance of instruments and monuments.

(b) Measurement Scheme (Design). The design of the survey measurement scheme should include analysis and specifications for:

-predicted performance of the structure,
-measurement accuracy requirements,
-positioning accuracy requirements,
-number and types of measurements,
-selection of instrument type and precision,
-data collection and field procedures,
-data reduction and processing procedures,
-data analysis and modeling procedures,
-reporting standards and formats, and
-project management and data archiving.

The main technique used to design and evaluate measurement schemes for accuracy is known as "network preanalysis." Software applications specially written for preanalysis and adjustment are used to compute expected error and positioning confidence for all surveyed points in the monitoring network (see examples in Chapter 9).

(2) Data Collection. The data collection required on a project survey is specifically prescribed by the results of network preanalysis. The data collection scheme must provide built-in levels of both accuracy and reliability to ensure acceptance of the raw data.

(a) Accuracy. Achieving the required accuracy for monitoring surveys is based on instrument performance and observing procedures. Minimum instrument resolution, data collection options, and proper operating instructions are determined from manufacturer specifications. The actual data collection is executed per the results of network preanalysis so that the quality of the results can be verified during data processing and post-analysis of the network adjustment.

(b) Reliability. Reliability in the raw measurements requires a system of redundant measurements, sufficient geometric closure, and strength in the network configuration. Geodetic surveying methods can yield high redundancy in the design of the data collection scheme.

(3) Data Processing. Raw survey data must be converted into meaningful engineering values during the data processing stage. Several major categories of data reductions are:

-applying pre-determined calibration values to the raw measurements,
-finding mean values for repeated measurements of the same observable,
-data quality assessment and statistical testing during least squares adjustment, and
-measurement outlier detection and data cleaning prior to the final adjustment.

Procedures for data reductions should be based on the most rigorous formulas and data processing techniques available. These procedures are applied consistently to each monitoring survey to ensure comparable results. Network adjustment software based on least squares techniques is strongly recommended for data processing. Least squares adjustment techniques are used to compute the coordinates and survey accuracy for each point in the monitoring network. Network adjustment processing also identifies measurement blunders by statistically testing the observation residuals.

(4) Data Analysis. Geometric modeling is used to analyze spatial displacements (see Chapter 11). General movement trends are described using a sufficient number of discrete point displacements (d_n):

$d_n(\Delta x, \Delta y, \Delta z)$ for n = point number

Point displacements are calculated by differencing the adjusted coordinates for the most recent survey campaign (f), from the coordinates obtained at some reference time (i), for example:

$\Delta x = x_f - x_i$ is the x coordinate displacement,
$\Delta y = y_f - y_i$ is the y coordinate displacement,
$\Delta z = z_f - z_i$ is the z coordinate displacement, and
$\Delta t = t_f - t_i$ is the time difference between surveys.

Each movement vector has magnitude and direction expressed as point displacement coordinate differences. Collectively, these vectors describe the displacement field over a given time

interval. Displacements that exceed the amount of movement expected under normal operating conditions will indicate possible abnormal behavior. Comparison of the magnitude of the calculated displacement and its associated survey accuracy indicates whether the reported movement is more likely due to survey error:

$$|d_n| < (e_n)$$

where

$|d_n|$ = sqrt $(\Delta x^2 + \Delta y^2 + \Delta z^2)$ for point *n*, is the magnitude of the displacement,
(e_n) = max dimension of combined 95% confidence ellipse for
point *n* = (1.96) sqrt $(\sigma_f^2 + \sigma_i^2)$,

and

σ_f is the standard error in position for the (final) or most recent survey,
σ_i is the standard error in position for the (initial) or reference survey.

For example, if the adjusted coordinates for point *n* in the initial survey were:

x_i = 1000.000 m
y_i = 1000.000 m
z_i = 1000.000 m

and the adjusted coordinates for the same point in the final survey were:

x_f = 1000.006 m
y_f = 1000.002 m
z_f = 1000.002 m

then the calculated displacement components for point *n* would be:

Δx = 6 mm
Δy = 2 mm
Δz = 2 mm

Assuming that the horizontal position has a standard deviation of σ_h = 1.5 mm for both surveys, and similarly the vertical position has a standard deviation of σ_v = 2.0 mm, as reported from the adjustment results, then the combined (95%) confidence in the horizontal displacement would be:

(1.96) sqrt $(\sigma_f^2 + \sigma_i^2)$ = (1.96) sqrt (2.25 + 2.25) ~ 4.2 mm at 95% confidence

The magnitude of the horizontal displacement is:

$$|d_h| = \text{sqrt}\,(\Delta x^2 + \Delta y^2) = \text{sqrt}\,(36 + 4) = 6.3 \text{ mm}$$

These results show that the horizontal component exceeds the expected survey error margin and is likely due to actual movement of point *n* in the horizontal plane.

Confidence in the vertical displacement would be:

$$(1.96)\ \text{sqrt}\,(\sigma_f^2 + \sigma_i^2) = (1.96)\ \text{sqrt}\,(4 + 4) \sim 5.5 \text{ mm at 95\% confidence}$$

The magnitude of the vertical displacement is:

$$|d_v| = 2.0 \text{ mm}$$

The magnitude of the vertical displacement is much smaller than the confidence in the vertical displacement, and it therefore does not indicate a significant vertical movement. If the structure were to normally experience cyclic movement of 10 mm (horizontally) and 1 mm (vertically) over the course of one year, and if our example deformation surveys were made six months apart, then the above results would be consistent with expected behavior. Specialized methods of geometrical analysis exist to carry out more complex deformation modeling, and it is sometimes possible to identify the causes of deformation based on comparing the actual displacements to alternative predicted displacement modes for the specific type of structure under study. Refer to Chapter 11 for a more detailed discussion.

(5) Data Presentation. Survey reports for monitoring projects should have a standardized format. Reports should contain a summary of the results in both tabulated and graphical form (see Chapter 12). All supporting information, analyses, and data should be documented in an appendix format. Conclusions and recommendations should be clearly presented in an executive summary.

(6) Data Management. Survey personnel should produce hardcopy survey reports and complete electronic copies of these reports. Survey data and processed results should be archived, indexed, and cross-referenced to existing structural performance records. These should be easily located and retrievable whenever the need arises. Information management using computer-based methods is strongly recommended. One of the main difficulties with creating a data management system that includes historical data is the time and cost required to transfer existing hardcopy data into an electronic database for each project. Gradual transition to fully electronic data management on future project surveys should be adopted. Data management tools such as customized software, database software, and spreadsheet programs should be used to organize, store, and retrieve measurement data and processed results. A standard format for archiving data should be established for all monitoring projects.

c. Management Plan. Sound administration and execution of the monitoring program is an integral and valuable part of the periodic inspection process. Personnel involved in the monitoring and instrumentation should maintain a regular interaction with the senior program manager. Structural monitoring encompasses a wide range of tasks performed by specialists in different functional areas. All participants should have a general understanding of requirements for the complete evaluation process:

-general engineering for planning and monitoring requests, preparation/presentation of data and results, and quality assurance measures;
-surveying for data collection (in-house or contract requirements), data reduction, processing, network adjustment, quality assurance, and preparing survey reports;
-geotechnical and structural engineering for analysis and evaluation of results and preparation of findings and recommendations; and
-technical support for data management, archiving, computer resources, archiving final reports, and electronic information support.

Safety requires consideration of more than just technical factors. Systems should be in place so that any voice within the organization can be heard. Even experts can make mistakes and good ideas can come from any level within an organization. Meetings and/or site visits including all participants are held to ensure that information flows freely across internal boundaries. Integration of separate efforts should be ongoing and seamless rather than simply gluing together individual final products.

d. External Review. An organization must be willing to accept, and seek out, an independent review of its engineering practices. Structures require defensive engineering that considers a range of circumstances that might occur that threatens their safety. A contingency plan to efficiently examine and assess unexpected changes in the behavior of the structure should be in place. Outside experts should be consulted from time-to-time, especially if a project structure exhibits unusual behavior that warrants specialized measurement and analysis.

2-4. Professional Associations**.**

a. General. The development of new methods and techniques for monitoring and analysis of deformations and the development of methods for the optimal modeling and prediction of deformations have been the subject of intensive studies by many professional groups at national and international levels.

b. Organizations. Within the most active international organizations that are involved in deformation studies, one should list:

-International Federation of Surveyors (FIG) Commission 6, which has significantly contributed to the recent development of new methods for the design and geometrical analysis of integrated deformation surveys and new concepts for analyses and modeling of deformations;

-International Commission on Large Dams (ICOLD) with its Committee on Monitoring of Dams and their Foundations;
-International Association of Geodesy (IAG) Commission on Recent Crustal Movements, concerning geodynamics, tectonic plate movement, and modeling of regional earth crust deformation;
-International Society for Mine Surveying (ISM) Commission 4 on Ground Subsidence and Surface Protection in mining areas;
-International Society for Rock Mechanics (ISRM) with overall interest in rock stability and ground control; and
-International Association of Hydrological Sciences (IAHS), with work on ground subsidence due to the withdrawal of underground liquids (water, oil, etc.).

2-5. Causes of Dam Failure**.**

a. Concrete Structures. Deformation in concrete structures is mainly elastic, and for large dams, highly dependent on reservoir water pressure and temperature variations. Permanent deformation of the structure can sometimes occur as the subsoil adapts to new loads, concrete aging, or foundation rock fatigue. Such deformation is not considered unsafe if it does not go beyond a pre-determined critical value. Monitoring is typically configured to observing relatively long-term movement trends, including abnormal settlements, heaving, or lateral movements. Some ways concrete dams can fail are:

-uplift at the base leading to overturning and/or downstream creep,
-foundation failure or buttress collapse, and
-surrounding embankments that are susceptible to internal erosion.

(1) Concrete Deterioration. Chemical and physical factors can age concrete. Visible clues to the deterioration include expansion, cracking, gelatinous discharge, and chalky surfaces.

b. Embankment Structures. Deformation is largely inelastic with earthen dams characterized by permanent changes in shape. Self-weight of the embankment forces the fill material and the foundation to consolidate resulting in vertical settlement of the structure. Reservoir water pressure also causes permanent horizontal deformation mostly perpendicular to the embankment centerline. Some causes of damage to earthen dams are:

-differential settlement causing cracking of the embankment material, and
-internal erosion resulting the loss of material.

Often these changes are slow and not readily discerned by visual examination. Other well-known causes of failure in earthen dams are overtopping at extreme flood stage and liquefaction due to ground motion during earthquakes.

c. Structural Distress. Adverse conditions that deserve attention include: cracking in the core zone, cracking at zonal interfaces, soluble foundation rock, deteriorating impervious

structural membranes, inadequate foundation cutoffs, desiccation of clay fill, steep slopes vulnerable to sliding, blocky foundation rock susceptible to differential settlement, ineffective contact at adjoining structures and at abutments, pervious embankment strata, and vulnerability to conditions during an earthquake. The following warning signs are evidence for the potential failure of dam.

-Significant sloughs, settlement, or slides in embankments such as in earth or rock-fill dams
-Movement in levees, bridge abutments or slopes of spillway channels, locks, and abutments
-Unusual vertical or horizontal movement or cracking of embankments or abutments
-Sinkholes or localized subsidence in the foundation, embankments, and structures
-Excessive deflection, displacement, or vibration of concrete structures
-Tilting or sliding of intake towers, bridge piers, lock walls, and flood walls
-Erratic movement, binding, excessive deflection, or vibration of outlet and spillway gates
-Significant damage or changes in structures, foundations, reservoir levels, groundwater conditions, and adjacent terrain as a result of seismic events of local or regional areas
-Other indications of distress or potential failure that could inhibit the operation of a project or endanger life and property

2-6. Foundation Problems in Dams**.**

a. General. Differential settlement, sliding, high piezometric pressures, and uncontrolled seepage are common evidences of foundation distress. Cracks in the dam, even minor ones, can indicate a foundation problem. Clay or silt in weathered joints can preclude grouting and eventually swell the crack, enlarging it and causing further stress. Foundation seepage can cause internal erosion or solution. Potential erosion of the foundation must be considered as erosion can leave collapsible voids. Actual deterioration may be evidenced by increased seepage, by sediment in seepage water, or an increase in soluble materials disclosed by chemical analyses. Materials vulnerable to such erosion include dispersive clays, water reactive shales, gypsum, and limestone.

b. Settlement. Pumping from underground can cause foundation settlement as the supporting water pressure is removed and the gradient changes. Loading and wetting will also cause the pressure gradient to change, and may also cause settlement or shifting. The consequent cracking of the dam can create a dangerous condition, especially in earth-fill dams of low cohesive strength. Foundations with low shear strength or with extensive seams of weak materials may be vulnerable to sliding. Shear zones can also cause problems at dam sites where bedding plane zones in sedimentary rocks and foliation zones in metamorphics are two common problems. An embankment may be most vulnerable at its interface with rock abutments. Settlement in rock-fill dams can be significantly reduced if the rock-fill is mechanically compacted. In some ways, a compacted earth core is superior to a concrete slab as the impervious element of a rock-fill dam. If the core has sufficient plasticity, it can be flexible enough to sustain pressures without significant damage. Several dam failures have occurred during initial impoundment due to these reasons.

c. Seepage. Water movement through a dam or through its foundation is one of the important indicators of the condition of the structure and may be an indicator of a serious issue. Seeping water can chemically attack the components of the dam, and constant attention must be focused on any changes, such as in the rate of seepage, settlement, or in the character of the escaping water. Adequate measurements must be taken of the piezometric surface within the foundation and the embankment, as well as any horizontal or vertical deformation in the abutments and fill. Any leakage at an earth embankment is potentially dangerous, as rapid erosion may quickly enlarge an initially minor defect.

d. Erosion. Embankments may be susceptible to erosion unless protected from wave action on the upstream face and surface runoff on the downstream face. Riprap armor stone on the upstream slope of an earth-fill structure can protect against wave erosion, but can become dislodged over time. This phenomenon, known as creep, can usually be detected and corrected before serious damage occurs. In older embankment dams, the condition of materials may vary considerably. The location of areas of low strength must be a key objective of the evaluation of such dams. Soluble materials are sometimes used in construction, and instability in the embankment will develop as these materials are dissolved over time.

e. Liquefaction. Hydraulic fill dams and structures constructed on soluble materials are particularly susceptible to earthquake damage. Liquefaction is a potential problem for any embankment that has continuous layers of soil with uniform gradation and of fine grain size.

2-7. Navigation Locks**.**

a. Lock Wall Monoliths. Periodic monitoring is provided to assess the safety performance of lock structures. Instrumentation should be designed to monitor lateral, vertical, and rotational movement of the lock monoliths, although not all structural components of a lock complex (e.g., wall/monoliths, wing walls, gates, dams) may need to be monitored. Navigation locks (including access bridge piers) and their surroundings are monitored to determine the extent of any differential movements between wall monoliths, monolith tilt, sheet pile cell movement, cracking, or translation or rotation affecting sections of the lock structure.

(1) Foundation. Piezometers are used to monitor uplift pressures beneath the lock structure. Water level monitoring can be made through wells fitted with a vibrating wire pressure transducer or designed for manual measurement with a portable water level indicator. Inclinometer casings are anchored in stable zones under the structure and are used to monitor lateral movement of selected monoliths. Probe readings are made at 2 feet increments to measure the slope of the casing and determine the amount of deflection undergone. Foundation design concerns soil/structure interactions, pile or soil bearing strength, settlement, scour protection, stability for uplift, sliding, and overturning, slide activity below ground level, earthquake forces and liquefaction, horizontal stresses in underlying strata and residual strength, rock faults that penetrate foundation sedimentary materials, and evidence of movement in unconsolidated sediment along the rim and foundation of the structure.

(2) Expected Loads. Lock structures experience dynamic loads due to hydraulic forces, seismic and ice forces, earth pressures, and thermal stresses. Static loads include weight of the structure and equipment. Horizontal water pressure and uplift on lock walls vary due to fluctuating water levels, and horizontal earth pressures and vertical loading vary with drained, saturated, or submerged backfill and siltation. Seismic forces and impact loads from collisions are accounted for in dynamic analysis for design of the structure. Loads are generated by filling and emptying, system turbulence, barge mooring, ice and debris, wave pressure, wind loads, and differential water pressure on opposite sides of sheetpile cutoffs at the bottom of the lock monolith. Loads are generated by gate and bulkhead structures, machinery and appurtenant items, superstructure and bridge loads imparted to lock walls, temperature, and internal pore pressure in concrete. These loads can greatly affect deformation surveys; therefore, attention should be made to collect data under familiar loading cycles.

(3) Dewatering Maintenance. Locks often undergo temporary closures for dewatering the lock chamber during maintenance activities or emergencies. Lock wall monitoring is conducted at both gate monoliths and selected interior chamber monoliths to detect any potential movement due to changing loads as the water level is lowered during lock chamber dewatering. Monitoring wells placed in the landside embankment are checked regularly to determine ground water levels that exert pressures on the landside wall. Monitoring surveys are conducted for measuring the lateral displacement of the lock walls with respect to each other and to stable ground. These are made continuously, and at regular time intervals, through the dewatering process and until the chamber is completely rewatered.

b. Lock Miter Gates. Observations for distress in miter lock gates may include one or more of the following: top anchorage movement, elevation change, miter offset, bearing gaps, and downstream movement.

c. Sheet Pile Structures. Distress in sheet pile structures may include one or more of the following: misalignment, settlement, cavity formation, or interlock separation.

d. Rubble Breakwaters and Jetties. Observations for breakwaters and jetties include the seaside and leeside slopes and crest: seaside/leeside slope - protection side walls should be examined for armor loss, armor quality defects, lack of armor contact/interlock, core exposure/loss, and other slope defects. Crest/cap - peak or topmost surface areas should be examined for breaching, armor loss, core exposure/loss, and settlement. Any number of measurements may be needed to monitor the condition of breakwaters, jetties, or stone placement. These may involve either lower accuracy conventional surveying, photogrammetric, or hydrographic methods.

e. Scour Monitoring. Hydrographic surveys for scour monitoring employ equipment that will produce full coverage bathymetric mapping of the area under investigation. The procedures and specifications should conform to standards referenced in EM 1110-2-1003, Hydrographic Surveying. Scour monitoring surveys should specify accuracy requirements, boundaries of

coverage area, bathymetry contour interval, delivery file formats, and the required frequency of hydrographic surveying.

2-8. Deformation Parameters.

a. General. The main purpose for monitoring and analysis of structural deformations is:

-to check whether the behavior of the investigated structure and its environment follow the predicted pattern so that any unpredicted deformations could be detected at an early stage, and
-in the case of abnormal behavior, to determine the causative factors which trigger the deformation and to assist in further design.

Coordinate differencing and observation differencing are the two principal methods used to determine structural displacements from surveying data. Coordinate differencing methods are recommended for most applications that require long-term periodic monitoring. Observation differencing is mainly used for short-term monitoring projects or as a quick field check on the raw data as it is collected.

(1) Coordinate Differencing. Monitoring point positions from two independent surveys are required to determine displacements by coordinate differencing. The final adjusted Cartesian coordinates (i.e., the coordinate components) from these two surveys are arithmetically differenced to determine point displacements. A major advantage of the coordinate differencing method is that each survey campaign can be independently analyzed for blunders and for data adjustment quality. However, great care must be taken to remove any systematic errors in the measurements, for example, by applying all instrument calibration corrections, and by rigorously following standard data reduction procedures.

(2) Observation Differencing. The method of observation differencing involves tracking changes in measurements between two time epochs. Measurements are compared to previous surveys to reveal any observed change in the position of monitoring points. Although observation differencing is efficient, and does not rely on solving for station coordinates, it has the drawback that the surveyor must collect data in an identical configuration, and with the same instrument types each time a survey is conducted.

b. Absolute Displacements. Displacements of monumented points represent the behavior of the dam, its foundation, and abutments, with respect to a stable framework of points established by an external reference network.

(1) Horizontal Displacements. Two-dimensional (2D) displacements are measured in a critical direction, usually perpendicular to the longitudinal axis of the dam, at the crest, and other important points of embankments (abutments, toes, etc.) using conventional geodetic methods. Alignment techniques for alignment-offset measurements are made in relation to a pair of control points having well-known coordinates. Horizontal movement can also be determined with

respect to plumb lines having a stable anchor point (see EM 1110-2-4300, Instrumentation for Concrete Structures).

(2) Vertical Displacements. Vertical displacements are measured in relation to stable project benchmarks, such as deeply anchored vertical borehole extensometers, or alternatively, to deep benchmarks located near the dam using geodetic methods (differential leveling). Hydrostatic leveling is also sometimes used to determine settlements. Settlement gauges are used to detect settlements of the foundation, or of interior structural parts which are not readily accessible (core, foundation contact). Settlements of individual layers of embankments should be monitored through settlement gauges installed in the different layers (refer to EM 1110-2-2300, General Design and Construction Consideration for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams).

c. Relative Displacements. These measurements are intended to determine small differential movements of points representative of the behavior of the dam, its foundation, and abutments with respect to other points on the structure, or even on the same structural element.

(1) Deflections. Relative deflections (inclinations) of a concrete dam are measured by direct or inverted plumb lines. Alignment survey techniques are used in the interior galleries of dams to determine the relative movements between monoliths with respect to a horizontal reference line set along the longitudinal axis of the dam. Relative horizontal displacements of points inside embankments are detected by means of inclinometer probes sent through casings set in drilled shafts. Foundation subsidence and tilts are measured with geodetic leveling, hydrostatic leveling, and tiltmeters. The last two are usually permanently installed in galleries.

(2) Extensions. Combinations of geodetic leveling with suspended invar wires equipped with short reading scales at different levels of the dam and connected to borehole extensometers can supply information on the relative vertical movements as well as on the absolute vertical displacements and relative tilts. Extensometers have become important instruments for measuring differential foundation movements. Strain gauges are embedded in the concrete during construction, installed on the faces of the dam after completion, or embedded in foundation boreholes. Joint measurements are justified in the case of joints separation or to check grouting in dome or arch-gravity dams. Cracks are measured by the same methods with the instruments being installed on the surface.

2-9. Location of Monitoring Points**.**

a. Normal Conditions. Monitoring schemes include survey stations at the points where maximum deformations have been predicted plus a few observables at the points which, depending on previous experience, could signal any potential unpredictable behavior, particularly at the interface between the monitored structure and the surrounding material.

b. Unusual Conditions. Once any abnormal deformations are noticed, then additional observables are added at the locations indicated by the preliminary analysis of the monitoring surveys as being the most sensitive to identification of causative factors.

c. Long-Term Monitoring. The spatial distribution of survey monuments should provide complete coverage of the structure, extending to stable areas of the project if possible. A minimum of four (4) monitoring points are recommended to model behavior in a plane section (tilts, subsidence, etc.). For linear structures, monuments are placed at intervals that provide coverage along the structure's total length, and generally not more than 100 meters apart, when using conventional instruments, to allow for measurement check ties to nearby monuments. The following are suggested guidelines for the location of survey monuments for long-term monitoring applications listed per the type of structure. Refer also to the generalized monitoring schemes shown in Figures 2-2 through 2-6.

(1) Gravity and Concrete Dams. For gravity dams, each separate block should have at least one monitoring point. Tilts of the foundation should be measured at the center point for small structures, and at not less than three points for larger structures.

(2) Multiple-Arch and Buttress Dams. Monitoring points for multiple-arch and buttress dams should be located at the head and downstream toe of each buttress. For massive buttresses and large arches, special attention should be paid to the foundations of the buttresses. If buttresses are traversed by construction joints, the behavior of joints should be observed.

(3) Arch-Gravity Dams and Thick Arch Dams. Absolute displacements of dam toe and abutments are critical for arch-gravity dams and thick arch dams. For small structures, the deformation of the central block is to be monitored. For large structures the measurement of deformations in each block is required.

(4) Thin Arch Dams. Measurement of horizontal and vertical displacements are required along the crest for thin arch dams. Special attention should be given to the central cantilever, abutments, and abutment rock.

(5) Embankment and Earthen Dams. Measurement of horizontal and vertical displacements are required at the dam crest, and upstream and downstream toe locations for embankment dams. Surface displacement monuments should be located to provide coverage across the length of the dam extending to the adjacent stable areas. Provisions should be made to detect relative and absolute movement of armor on the dam face. Typically, the spacing of points near abutments and appurtenant structures are closer by about 50 percent than for the points at the midsection of the crest to provide denser movement data with respect to the surrounding sides, spillways, and foundation areas. New or temporary monitoring points may be concentrated in areas where significant movement is detected or repairs are underway.

(6) Navigation Lock Monoliths. Monitoring points are set on each lock chamber wall, typically with at least two alignment pins situated close to each monolith joint on each wall. The centerline of the alignment pins is placed in a longitudinal alignment between at least two major monumented control points to facilitate making deflection/offset alignment measurements—see Figures 2-4 and 2-5. Alignment pins are placed after proper curing of the structural concrete, and

set back about six (6) inches perpendicularly from the centerline of the monolith joint, with one bolt located on either side of the joint.

2-10. Design of Reference Networks**.**

a. General. Having multiple control stations in the reference network is critical for improving the reliability of deformation surveys, and for investigating the stability of reference monuments over time. Each control station in the reference network should be intervisible to a maximum number of structural monitoring points (placed on the structure) and to at least two other reference monuments. The number of reference points for vertical control should be not less than three (3), and preferably four (4) benchmarks. For horizontal control, the minimum number of reference points should be at least four (4), preferably six (6). Reference stations are usually located at both ends of the dam, along its longitudinal axis, at the elevation of the dam crest. Geometry and reliability of the reference network can be improved by adding control stations either upstream or downstream from the crest or on the structure itself.

b. Project Datum Selection. A project datum defines the relative positions and coordinates established on the reference network. Coordinates of monitoring points are also calculated with respect to the project datum. The project datum for large monitoring projects should be based on geodetic NAD83 (or WGS84) coordinates. A geodetic coordinate system is recommended because positioning can be directly related to a standard reference ellipsoid. Network adjustment processing software often requires definition of the project datum in geodetic coordinates. Geodetic coordinates are also compatible with standard formulas used to transform 3D positions into 2D plane projections, and can incorporate data from GPS surveys. See Figures 2-2 and 2-3.

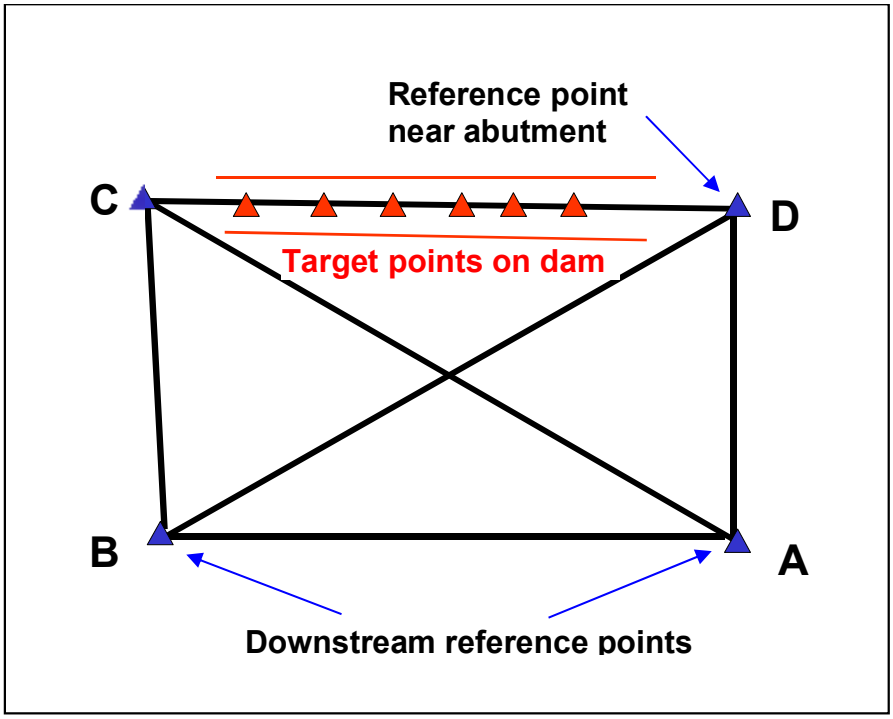


Figure 2-2. Strong monitoring scheme for a concrete or earth/rock-fill dam.

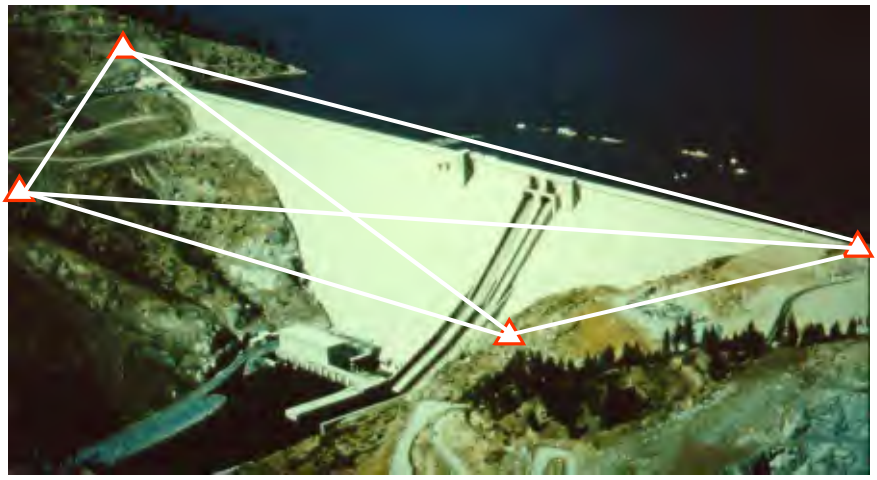


Figure 2-3. Reference network configuration for a concrete dam depicting reference points near abutments and at downstream locations.

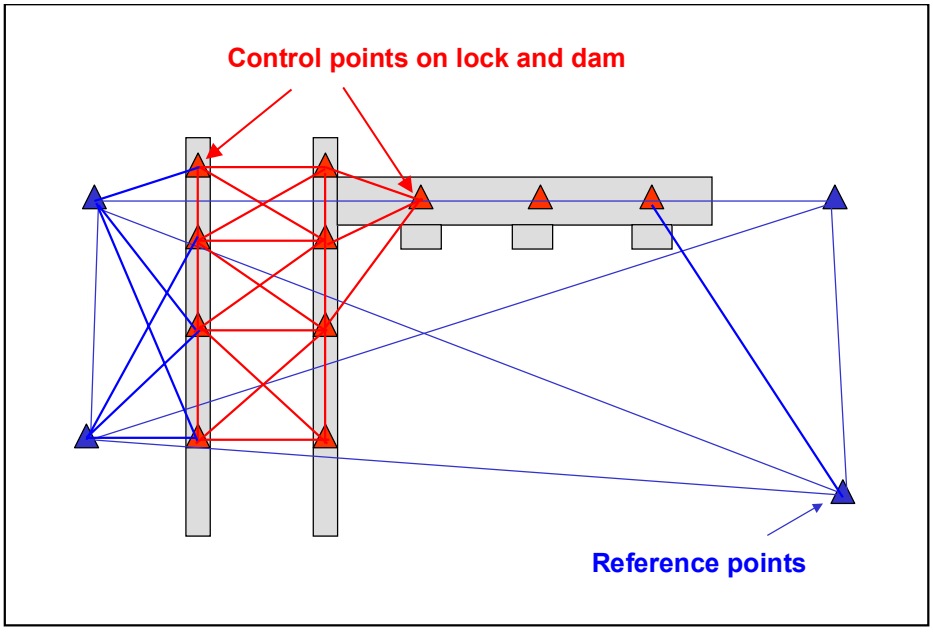


Figure 2-4. Strong monitoring scheme for a lock and dam.

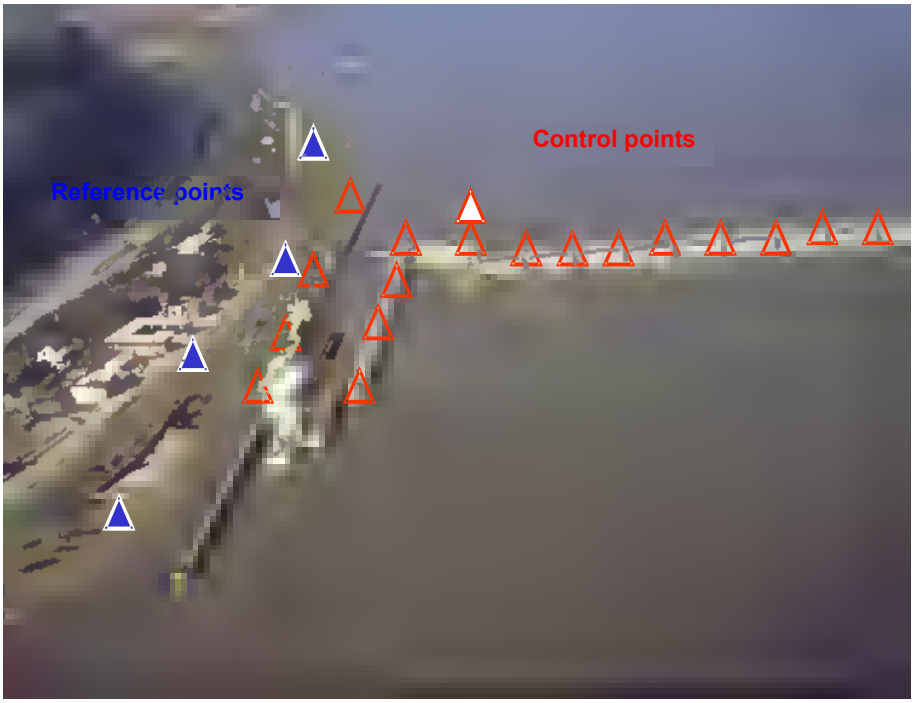


Figure 2-5. Idealized monitoring scheme for controlling target points on the lock and dam.

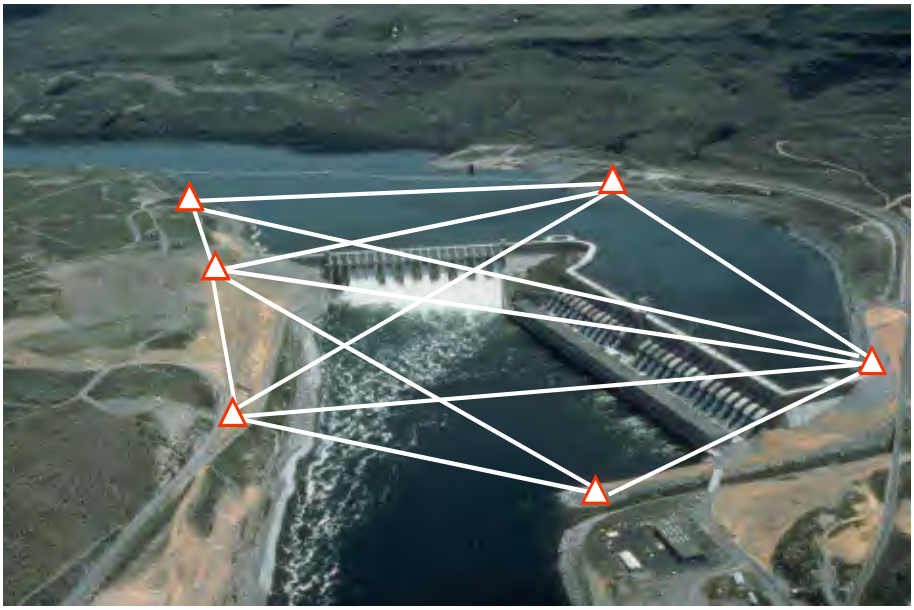


Figure 2-6. Idealized reference network surrounding a hydroelectric dam. External reference points are established at downstream points and on reservoir to provide strong geodetic network.

(1) Reference Station Coordinates. Coordinates are initially established on at least one station in the reference network from National Spatial Reference System (NSRS) control monuments available in the local area. Coordinates are then transferred by direct measurement to the remaining stations in the reference network before the first monitoring survey. 3D coordinates should be established on all structure control points and reference stations for projects that combine horizontal and vertical positioning surveys.

(2) Monitoring Point Coordinates. Geodetic or state plane coordinate systems are recommended for monitoring networks because standard mapping projection will provide consistency in coordinate transformations. Arbitrary coordinate systems based on a local project construction datum are more difficult to work with if there is a need for transforming from the local datum. Independent vertical positioning surveys are needed to augment 2D horizontal positioning networks. Vertical settlements are then computed apart from the horizontal displacement components.

c. Reference Network Stability. Reference network stations can be independently measured using higher precision survey methods than used for the general monitoring network. The reference network survey is also analyzed in a separate network adjustment to check for any change in reference station coordinates between monitoring campaigns. GPS technology alone, or GPS combined with high precision electronic distance measurements (EDM) distance measurements is suggested for reference network stability monitoring. Multiple EDM distance

ties provide additional network redundancy as an external check on the GPS results. Detection and analysis of unstable reference points in the reference network has been successfully implemented using the Iterative Weighted Similarity Transformation (IWST). This analysis indicates whether any particular reference station has experienced significant movement between monitoring surveys by transforming observed displacements independent of the network constraints.

2-11. Reference Point Monumentation.

a. General. A monument used for deformation monitoring is any structure or device that defines a point in the survey network. Monuments can be classified as either a reference point or a monitoring point. A reference point typically is located away from the structure and is to be "occupied" during the survey, while a monitoring (or object) point is located directly on the structure and is to be "monitored" during the survey. Each must have long-term stability of less than 0.5 mm both horizontally and vertically with respect to the surrounding area. A permanent one (1) mm diameter reference mark, or forced centering device, should be used for every monitoring point monument. All reference points should be described and maintained in the USACE Survey Monument Archival and Retrieval Tool. Further information on specific monument design and installation is provided in EM 1110-1-1002, Survey Markers and Monumentations.

Figure 2-7. Reference point monumentation. Concrete pier construction vicinity of a lock and dam. Forced centering plug set into concrete pier. (Little Rock District).

b. Reference Point Monuments. Reference points can be either a steel pipe pile or cast-in-place reinforced concrete pile—Figure 2-7. If a steel pipe pile is used, the nominal diameter will be no less than 20 centimeter (cm)m, while the wall thickness will be no less than that for standard weight pipe. If using a cast-in-place reinforced concrete pile, the nominal diameter will also be no less than 20 cm (see Figure 2-8).

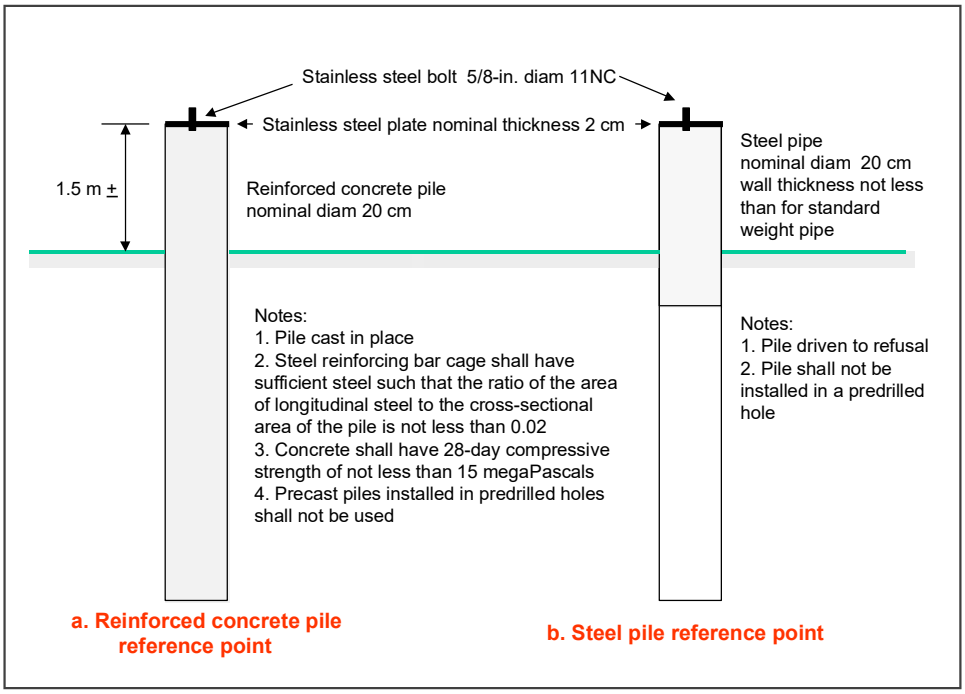


Figure 2-8. Reference point monumentation. Detail for reinforced concrete pile or steel pile construction.

c. Reference Point Installation. Reference points placed in the earth are installed to a depth equal to at least twice the depth of frost penetration in the project area. The reference point extends above ground level to a convenient height (e.g., 1.5 m) where the equipment can be force centered. Typically, at the top of such a reference point pile, a stainless-steel plate not less than 2 cm thick is cast into the top of the pile using a minimum of four steel reinforcing bar anchors welded to the underside of the plate. In the center of the plate, a 5/8-inch diameter 11NC steel bolt is welded to the plate to allow survey equipment to be attached.

(1) Steel Pipe Pile. A steel pipe pile is installed by driving it until refusal. If refusal occurs at a depth of less than twice the depth of frost penetration in the project area, the pile is removed and its installation attempted in another location. Steel pipes placed in oversized pre-drilled holes and backfilled will not be used as reference points. For pipe piles terminating at or slightly below ground level, a convex stainless steel plate and stub will be installed as described above. The plate will be convex as required for leveling observations and will have an etched cross at the highest point of the convex surface for horizontal observation. It is recommended that such piles also have a cylindrical rim and cover around it for protection. If a cylindrical rim and cover

is used, it is further recommended the cover be buried for easy recovery with a metal detector, as well as to minimize the chance of vandalism.

(2) Cast-in-Place Reinforced Concrete Pile. A cast-in-place reinforced concrete pile is installed by first drilling a hole to at least twice the depth of frost penetration in the project area. The cage of steel reinforcing bars used will have cross-sectional area of steel to concrete ratio of not less than 0.02. After the cage is formed, it is placed in the hole. Concrete with a 28-day compressive strength of not less than 15 megapascals is then poured into the form. Precast reinforced concrete piles driven into pre-drilled holes or placed in oversized pre-drilled holes and backfilled will not be used for reference points. Reference points installed in rock or concrete consist of a stainless-steel plate as described above, except with a steel reinforcing bar stub welded to the underside. For installation, a hole at least 50% larger than the stub is drilled into sound rock or concrete. The plate with the stub attached is secured to the rock or concrete using adequate epoxy adhesive to completely fill the void between the stub and the rock or concrete.

(3) Insulation. Projects subjected to cold weather conditions will have an insulation sleeve installed around the reference point pile that extends above the ground. The installation of a sleeve is to eliminate the possibility of temperature induced pile movements that may be the result of solar radiation (i.e., temperature variation due to time of day). When this is the case, the sleeve should have an R value of not less than 10.

(4) Stability. If possible, the reference points should be installed at least a year prior to their use to minimize the effects of pile rebound and shrinkage. If this is not practical, no less than a month prior to its use will suffice.

2-12. Monitoring Point Monumentation.

a. Monitoring Point Monuments. Monitoring points installed in earth consist of a nominal 3 m length of square steel hollow structural section with a nominal side length of 5 cm and a wall thickness not less than that for a standard weight square steel hollow structural section. The base of the section is sharpened by cutting it at a 45 degree angle. Welded approximately 15 cm from the base, is one length of 10 mm thick, 20 cm diameter circular helix, with a pitch of 7 cm. Welded to the top of the pipe, is a steel plate not less than 5 mm thick. In the center of the plate, a 5/8 inch, 11NC steel bolt, on which survey equipment is to be connected is drilled through and welded to the plate. Some method (e.g., through the use of a cap) should be used to protect the threads of the bolt during the time survey equipment is not attached.

b. Monitoring Point Installation. Monitoring points set directly in rock or concrete may be either a steel bolt or a steel insert into which survey equipment is force centered—see Figure 2-9. Installation of these types of monuments is as follows:

(1) Steel Bolt. The steel bolt is drilled through and welded to a 5-cm diameter, 1 cm thick steel plate. A steel reinforcing bar stub of suitable length is welded to the head of the bolt. A hole approximately 50% larger than the stub is drilled in sound rock or concrete. The plate with

the stub attached is secured to the rock or concrete using adequate epoxy adhesive to completely fill the void between the stub and the rock or concrete. The threads of the bolt should be protected during the time survey equipment is not attached (e.g., by use of a cap). upside down.

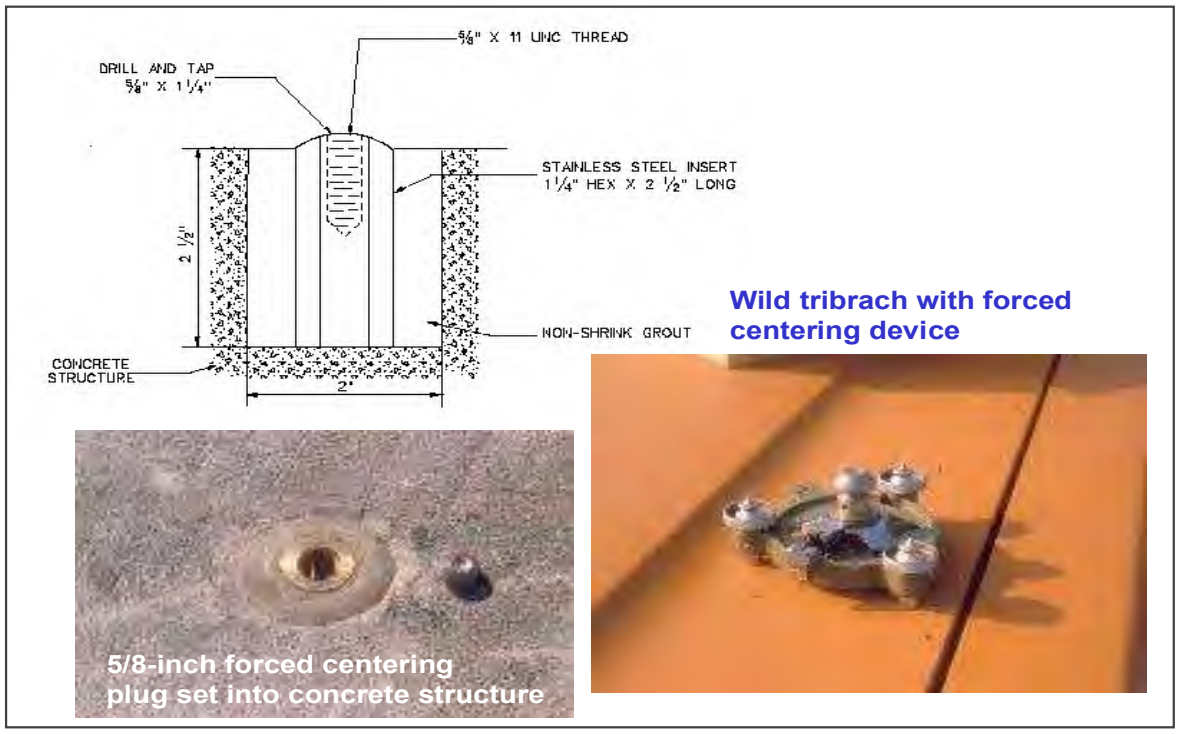


Figure 2-9. Target plug set on concrete structure. Forced centering device on tribrach shown upside down.

(2) Steel Insert. Steel inserts have been designed as commercial off-the-shelf (COTS) items. Manufacturer instructions for proper installation of the insert should be followed.

(3) Other Materials. Monitoring points on materials (e.g., steel, masonry, etc.) other than described in the previous paragraphs will be permanently affixed. For object points to be mounted on steel, a steel bolt welded to the steel may be suitable. For masonry, or other material, a steel bolt, plate, and rear stub or a steel insert may be suitable.

c. Monitoring Point Targets. A target is a device with a well-defined aiming point that is placed vertically over or attached to a monument. The purpose of a target is to connect the measurement to a physical object. A target is typically installed only for the period of the survey, in some cases, the monument may be a target itself.

(1) Optical Theodolites. Force-centered, standard target sets designed for one second theodolites, or the actual reference mark on the monument itself can be used as a target.

(2) Electronic Total Station. Force-centered, standard target set/prism combination used with a particular total station. Target set/prism combinations not matched to a particular total station will not be used. Target set/prism combinations for total stations which are non-coaxial, will be tilting target set/prism combinations that allow for alignment with the line of observation.

(3) EDM Prisms. EDM targets will be the reflectors included with the EDM unit. Prisms not matched to a particular EDM will not be used.

(4) Chaining Points. Targets for taped distances will be the monuments themselves.

(5) Leveling Points. Targets for leveled height difference measurements will be the monuments themselves. If the monuments are steel inserts, the targets will be stainless steel plugs designed for the purpose. If more than one plug is to be used on a project, the plugs will be of the same size. Standard vertical control benchmarks may also be used, as shown in Figure 2-10.

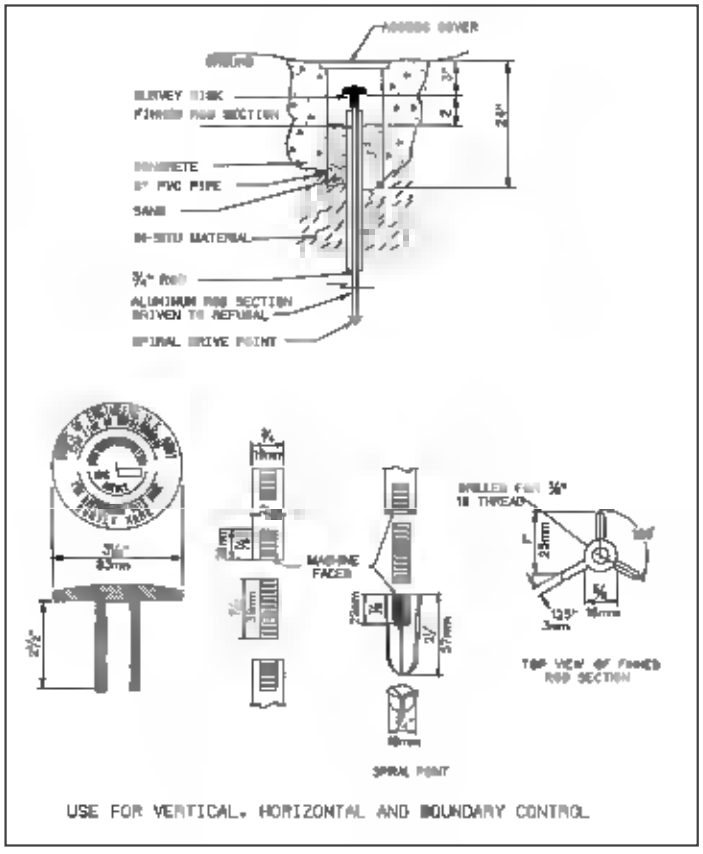


Figure 2-10. External deep-driven benchmark design—for vertical control only.

(6) Panel Points. Photogrammetric survey targets will consist of a high contrast, white dot on a black background. The diameter of the white dot is chosen so as to yield an average image

diameter of 60 microns. The black background typically is 5 times the diameter of the white target.

(7) GPS Reference Marks. Targets for GPS surveys must be the monuments themselves. Antenna offsets will be measured to relate the antenna phase center to the station marks.

d. Identification. A unique identifier (e.g., numeric or alphanumeric) will be stamped on the point as appropriate for all installed reference and monitoring points. Permanent records will be kept of the identifier, description, location, and condition of each reference and monitoring point.

2-13. Design of Measurement Schemes**.**

a. Optimal Design Methods. The optimization of geodetic positioning networks is concerned with accuracy, reliability, and economy of the survey scheme as the design criteria. Design of deformation monitoring schemes is more complex and differs in many respects from the design of simple positioning networks. Monitoring design is aimed at obtaining optimum accuracies for the deformation parameters (e.g., strain, shear, rotations, etc.), rather than for the coordinates of the monitoring stations. This allows using various types of (geodetic and non-geodetic) observables with allowable configuration defects. Multi-objective analytical design methodologies are known but not presently implemented within USACE because their practical application has not been demonstrated in any real-life examples. These techniques allow for a fully analytical, multi-objective optimal design of integrated deformation monitoring schemes with geodetic and geotechnical instrumentation. The method gives a simultaneous solution for the optimal configuration and accuracy of the monitoring scheme per the given criteria and restrictions concerning the locations of some observation stations and required accuracy of the deformation parameters.

b. Expected Movement Thresholds. The design of deformation surveys from simple positioning accuracy criteria requires knowledge of the maximum expected displacement for all monitoring points on the structure. The amount of expected deformation is predicted using either deterministic modeling (by finite or boundary element methods), or empirical (statistical) prediction models. For example, predicted displacements from an engineering analysis may be documented in design memorandums prepared for construction, or from displacement trends established by geotechnical instruments. Displacements predicted at specific monument locations are requested from design engineers and then documented in the Instrumentation Plan. When structures with known distress are planned to be monitored, or if monitoring is planned during extreme loading events, the Instrumentation Plan will include emergency notification thresholds from design engineers along with contact information and notification procedures.

c. Accuracy Requirements. Positioning accuracy required for each monitored point is directly related to the maximum expected displacement occurring under normal operating conditions. Accuracy requirements are computed by equating the maximum allowable positioning error to some portion of the total magnitude of movement that is expected at each

point. Specifically, the positioning accuracy (at the 95% probability level) should be equal to one fourth (0.25 times) the predicted value of the maximum displacement for the given span of time between the repeated measurements. Maximum possible accuracy is required once any abnormal deformations are noticed. With higher accuracy measurements, it is easier to determine the mechanism of any unpredicted deformations. Therefore, monitoring surveys may require updating of the initial measurement design over the duration of the monitoring project.

d. Survey Error Budget. The basis for computing the allowable survey error budget is as follows:

(1) Accuracy analysis should start with an error budget of less than one-third of the predicted value for the maximum expected displacement (D_{max}) over the given span of time between two surveys. This ensures that the total uncertainty in coordinates (plus and minus) is less than two-thirds of the total predicted movement as a minimum safety factor.

$$P_{error} < (1/3)\, D_{max} \qquad \text{(Eq 2-1)}$$

where

P_{error} = allowed positioning error
D_{max} = maximum expected displacement

(2) Displacements are calculated by differencing coordinates obtained from two monitoring surveys. Therefore, the total allowable displacement error (σ_d) must combine uncertainty in both the initial (σ_1) and final (σ_2) surveys:

$$\sigma_d = \text{sqrt}\,(\sigma_1^{\,2} + \sigma_2^{\,2}) \qquad \text{(Eq 2-2)}$$

where

σ_1 = positioning uncertainty of initial survey
σ_2 = positioning uncertainty of final survey

Positioning accuracy will be approximately equal (σ_0) if the same methods and instruments are used on each survey:

$$\sigma_0^{\,2} = \sigma_1^{\,2} = \sigma_2^{\,2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_d = \text{sqrt}\,(2) \cdot (\sigma_0) \qquad \text{(Eq 2-3)}$$

Therefore, the error budget should be divided by a factor of the square root of 2:

$$P_{error} = (\sigma_d) / \text{sqrt}\,(2)$$

(3) The developments above assume positioning uncertainty at the 95% confidence level:

$$P_{95\%} < [\ (1/3)\ D_{max}\ ] / \text{sqrt}\ (2) \qquad \text{(Eq 2-4)}$$

or approximately $P_{95\%} = (0.25)\ (D_{max})$. Expressed as a standard error (one-sigma value), it would need to be divided by the univariate confidence level expansion factor of 1.96, and changed to:

$$P_{one\text{-}sigma} < [\ (1/3)\ D_{max}\ ] / [\ \text{sqrt}\ (2)\cdot(1.96)\ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 2-5)}$$

or approximately $P_{one\text{-}sigma} = (0.12)\ (D_{max})$.

(4) Accuracy Requirement Example. To detect an expected displacement component of x mm from two independent monitoring surveys (same methods), it should be determined with an accuracy of:

(x / 3) / (1.41) ~ x / 4 mm, at the 95% confidence level, or
(x / 4) / (1.96) ~ x / 9 mm, at one standard error.

As a 'rule of thumb,' the measurements of a deformation component should be performed with a standard deviation (an error at one-sigma level) about nine (9) times smaller than the expected maximum value of the deformation. At the 95% confidence level this equates to approximately four (4) times smaller than the expected maximum value of the deformation.

e. Network Preanalysis. Two closely related techniques for processing survey data are preanalysis and adjustment of geodetic networks.

(1) Preanalysis is a measurement design technique used to statistically verify whether a proposed monitoring survey meets pre-set accuracy requirements. It requires the user to choose approximate coordinates for each survey point, plan a desired measurement configuration, and assign a standard deviation to each measurement based on instrument specifications. Preanalysis yields an expected precision for each monitoring station in the network for a given survey design.

(2) Adjustment requires the user to process actual survey data. Usually data is collected per the same measurement scheme developed from preanalysis. Survey adjustment yields best-fit coordinates and precision for each monitoring station in the network. Both preanalysis and adjustment use the same underlying mathematical model to produce results. Although the required computations are complex, this problem is always transparent to the user because processing is done by software applications. Preanalysis specifies the expected positioning uncertainty based on random error only, therefore, a weight is assigned to each survey measurement based on its predicted standard deviation, which is computed *a priori* using known variance estimation formulas. Measurement uncertainties are propagated mathematically into a predicted error value for each station coordinate. This error is reported graphically by a point confidence ellipse, or by a relative confidence ellipse between two points. Each point confidence

ellipse (error ellipse) encloses a region of maximum positioning uncertainty at a given statistical confidence level (usually 99% for preanalysis and 95% for adjustment). The corresponding vertical positioning error is reported by a point confidence interval for each point. Once accuracy requirements are specified for positioning the monitoring points, different survey designs can be proposed, tested, and modified until the coordinate error becomes small enough to detect a target level of movement based on accuracy requirements. Instruments used for each survey design are then selected based on the preanalysis results. Refinements to the survey design are made by judiciously adding or removing observations to create a finished measurement scheme. Once the accuracy performance of each survey design has been verified, the selected instruments, the number and type of measurements, and the survey network layout can be specified for field data collection.

2-14. Measurement Reliability**.**

a. General. Reliability addresses the geometric strength of the observation scheme, measurement redundancy, and techniques for minimizing measurement biases. Statistical methods can determine the maximum level of undetected systematic error using outlier detection. Some reliability factors are:

-redundant measurements,
-external checks on the validity of the data,
-instrument calibrations,
-reference network stability analysis,
-rigorous data processing techniques, and
-multiple connections between stations.

b. Redundancy. Multiple sources of monitoring data (instruments and observations) allow for checking the consistency of deformation surveying measurements. Redundancy on monitoring surveys provides a means to check results, such as by collecting twice as many measurements as unknown coordinates, and by keeping parallel but separate sets of instruments that use different measurement methods. For example, relative displacements can be obtained from tiltmeters and geodetic leveling. A properly designed monitoring scheme should have a sufficient connection of measurements using different measuring techniques and such geometry of the scheme that self-checking through closures would be possible. Redundancy is also a requirement for using least squares adjustment techniques in data processing.

c. Instrument Calibrations. Calibrations of surveying instruments are highly standardized and are essential for valid results when coordinate differencing is used to compute displacements. Major sources of systematic error and types of calibrations and procedures are presented in Chapter 4.

d. Stable Point Analysis. Accuracy in displacement measurements depends greatly on the stability of the network of reference stations. The reference network survey is analyzed

separately to detect unstable reference station in monitoring networks (see reference listed in Section A-2 of Appendix A.

e. Rigorous Data Processing. Most surveying observations will require post processing before being used in a network adjustment or in the calculation of final displacements, for example, for the elimination of nuisance parameters and the management of various data reductions and transformations. Some of the available reduction formulas are more accurate and complete than others. In general, the more rigorous version of a given formula is recommended for processing data on deformation networks.

f. Design of Complex Monitoring Schemes. Survey networks can be broken down into several sub-networks to obtain specialized deformation information where each small piece can be analyzed in separate network adjustment, or so that measurements made on an isolated structural element can be connected to the whole. Dividing the network into distinct parts makes it simpler to isolate and identify gross errors and provides for additional observations between each sub-network to strengthen the overall measurement scheme. Specialized sub-networks increase the reliability of the survey results.

(1) Cross-Sections. Surface monuments can be co-located with geotechnical instrumentation that are installed on the interior of the structure (e.g., service galleries of a dam). Geodetic monitoring points and fixed instrumentation placed on the same monolith provides the monitoring scheme with a high degree of redundancy.

(2) Survey Sub-Networks. Monitoring networks can be broken down into different types of smaller surveys (i.e., networks).

(a) Regional reference network is established by a few widely distributed, off-site, reference points to provide regional information in seismically or geologically active areas.

(b) Main reference network of project reference points, situated in stable areas surrounding the structure, are used as a base to survey the monitoring points on the structure. The reference network is surveyed independently to investigate the stability of the reference stations, and to obtain higher accuracy of the coordinates of the reference stations.

(c) Secondary network of control monuments, installed directly on the structure, provides for a system of measurement ties between each other (i.e., between other structure control points). Control points in the secondary network are inter-connected by measurements and are also directly connected by measurements to the main reference network. For example, on navigation locks, angles and distances could be observed between secondary control points on adjacent lock walls, to tie together the separate alignment sections that are installed on each lock wall.

(d) Localized networks consist of the major body of survey monitoring points, grouped between secondary control points, for example, sections of multiple alignment pins that are

placed between two control points on the structure. Such localized surveys provide monitoring coverage over the entire structure and in any critical areas. Alignment section surveys are examples of localized networks, as well as the point data gathered from localized instrumentation such as jointmeters or plumb line stations.

(3) Seismic Network Stations. Pre-surveyed positions can be established on any number of additional localized monitoring points (i.e., points not intended for routine observation) to determine the nature and extent of large displacements due to earthquakes. Continuous geodetic measurements also can be used for monitoring the consequences of seismic activity. One or more points on the structure are connected to a regional reference network, such as wide-area GPS arrays used for tectonic studies.

2-15. Frequency of Measurements**.**

a. General. Geodetic monitoring surveys (for periodic inspections) are conducted at regular time intervals rather than by continuous measurements that are more typical of automated structural or geotechnical instrumentation. The time interval between deformation surveys will vary per the purpose for monitoring, but is generally correlated to condition of the structure. Design factors such as the structure's age, hazard classification, safety regulations, and probability of failure determines an appropriate frequency for surveys. The need for establishing more frequent survey campaigns will be developed pending a risk-informed recommendation and decision per procedures outlined in ER 1110-2-1156 or as directed by the Dam Safety Officer in response to an incident.

b. Continuous Monitoring. With automatic data acquisition, such as by Differential GPS (DGPS) or robotic total stations, the frequency of measurements does not impose any problem because the data can be decoded at a pre-programmed time interval without difficulty and at practically no difference in cost of the monitoring process. Continuous monitoring systems with geodetic measurements are not yet commonly used and the frequency of measurements of individual observables must be carefully designed to compromise between the actual need and the cost.

c. Age-Based Criteria. Guidelines for the frequency for conducting monitoring surveys (e.g., International Committee on Large Dams) follow a time table based on the age of the structure.

(1) Pre-Construction. It would be useful to carry out some geodetic and piezometric measurements of the abutments and site before and during construction.

(2) Initial Filling. A complete set of measurements should be made before the first filling is started. The dates of successive measurements will depend on the level the water has reached in the reservoir. The closer the water is to the top level, the shorter will be the interval between measurements. For instance, one survey should be conducted when the water reaches 1/4 of the total height; another survey when the water reaches mid-height; one survey every tenth of the total height for the third quarter; and one survey every 6 feet of variation for the fourth quarter.

The interval between two successive surveys should never exceed a month until filling is completed.

(3) Stabilizing Phase. Measurements should be more frequent in the years immediately following the first filling when active deformation is in progress. Geodetic surveys can be carried out four times a year and other geotechnical measurements can be made once every 1 to 2 weeks.

(4) Normal Operation. After the structure is stable, which can take up to 5 to 10 years or more, the above frequencies can be reduced by half. The frequencies of measurement can be reduced further per what is learned during the first years of operation.

(5) Remedial Phase. Once a structure begins showing significant signs of stress or advanced deterioration, measurement frequencies based on the stabilizing phase can be resumed to track potential failure conditions. It should be possible to conduct intensive investigations in areas undergoing the most critical distress to determine the causes of the deformations and plan for repairs.

d. Technical Instructions and Scopes of Work. Appendix B contains a sample contract scope of work for performing periodic deformation monitoring surveys. As is outlined in the example scope, some of the specialized monitoring instrumentation is furnished by the Government. Not all Architect-Engineer firms can be expected to have monitoring equipment on hand due to the limited requirement for such work. Often, a Government representative may be required to accompany the survey team on site.

CHAPTER 3

Deformation Measurement and Alignment Instrumentation

3-1. General. This chapter describes the different techniques and equipment that are used in measuring external structural deformations. The objective of deformation surveys is to determine the position of object points on the monitored structure. Horizontal and vertical positions are usually determined by conventional surveying instruments (e.g., EDM, theodolite or total station, digital levels) or geodetic GPS receivers, depending on the required accuracy. Conventional surveys are established from a network of reference stations in stable areas nearby the project site. Distance, angle, and height difference measurements are made to object points on the structure. Work procedures consist of moving equipment from point-to-point and observing, recording, and checking field data on-site. Field data collection is designed for high-reliability by making repeated observations, obtaining check loop closures, conducting instrument calibrations, and collecting auxiliary data (if necessary). Extensive data processing is required to convert raw survey data into useful engineering values (via data cleaning, data reductions, final position determination, and displacement calculations). Final coordinates are based on a least squares adjustment of the survey observations using the fixed coordinates of the reference network. Position differences are observed over time at each object point. These define a specific displacement field valid for the time span between two surveys. The total set of point displacements are modeled as a geometric surface that analytically represents changes in the location, shape, and size of the structure (or its components). Deformation model parameters (linear strain, differential or block rotation, and translations) are used to solve for deformations at any desired part of the structure. The sensitivity and significance of these parameters depend on the number, spacing, and accuracy of the surveyed point positions.

a. Geodetic and Geotechnical Measurements. The measuring techniques and instrumentation for deformation monitoring have traditionally been categorized into two groups per the disciplines of professionals who use the techniques:

-geodetic surveys, which include conventional (terrestrial), photogrammetric, satellite, and some special techniques (interferometry, hydrostatic leveling, alignment, etc.); and
-geotechnical/structural measurements of local deformations using lasers, tiltmeters, strainmeters, extensometers, joint-meters, plumb lines, micrometers, etc.

b. Comparison of Measurement Methods. Each measurement type has its own advantages and drawbacks. Geodetic surveys, through a network of points interconnected by angle and/or distance measurements, usually supply a sufficient redundancy of observations for the statistical evaluation of their quality and for a detection of errors. They give global information on the behavior of the deformable structure while the geotechnical measurements give very localized and, often, locally disturbed information, in some cases without any check, unless compared with some other independent measurements. On the other hand, geotechnical instruments are easier to adapt for automatic and continuous monitoring than conventional geodetic instruments.

Conventional terrestrial surveys are labor intensive and require skillful observers, while geotechnical instruments, once installed, require only infrequent checks on their performance. Geodetic surveys have traditionally been used mainly for determining the absolute displacements of selected points on the surface of the object with respect to some reference points that are assumed to be stable. Geotechnical measurements have mainly been used for relative deformation measurements within the deformable object and its surroundings. However, with the technological progress of the last few years, the differences between the two techniques and their main applications are not as obvious as twenty years ago.

(1) For example, inverted plumb-lines and borehole extensometers, if anchored deeply enough in bedrock below the deformation zone, may serve the same way as, or even better than, geodetic surveys for determining the absolute displacements of the object points. Geodetic surveys with optical and electro-magnetic instruments (including satellite techniques) are always contaminated by atmospheric (tropospheric and ionospheric) refraction, which limits their positioning accuracy to about ±1 parts per million (ppm) to ±2 ppm (at the standard deviation level) of the distance. So, for instance, given a 500-m average distance between the object and reference points, the absolute displacements of the object points cannot be determined to an accuracy better than about ±2 mm at the 95% probability level. In some cases, this accuracy is not adequate. On the other hand, precision electro-optical geodetic instruments for EDM with their accuracies of ±0.8 mm over short distances may serve as extensometers in relative deformation surveys. Similarly, geodetic leveling, with an achievable accuracy of better than ±0.3 mm over short distances up to 20 m may provide better accuracy for the tilt determination (equivalent to ±1 second of arc) than any local measurements with electronic tiltmeters. Measurements of small concrete cracks can be made to a high degree of accuracy using micrometers—see Chapter 7 for micrometer observation procedures. In a highly controlled environment, electronic theodolites may provide relative positioning in almost real-time to an accuracy of ±0.5 mm over distances of several (2-3) meters. The satellite-based GPS, when used in a differential mode, offers a few millimeters accuracy over several kilometers. GPS has replaced conventional terrestrial surveys in many deformation studies and, particularly, in establishing the reference networks.

(2) From the point of view of the achievable instrumental accuracy, the distinction between geodetic and geotechnical techniques no longer applies. With the technological developments in both geodetic and geotechnical instrumentation, at a cost one may achieve almost any practical instrumental resolution and precision, full automation, and virtually real-time data processing. Thus, the user has an array of different types of instruments available for deformation studies. This creates a new challenge for the designers of the monitoring surveys: what instruments to choose, where to locate them, and how to combine them into one integrated monitoring scheme in which the geodetic and geotechnical/structural measurements would optimally complement each other.

3-2. Angle and Distance Measurements. Manually operated transits and theodolites have been traditionally used for angle measurement in structural deformation surveying. Distances were

measured using precise surveying chains (tapes) or manually operated EDM devices. Electronic total station devices, such as those shown in Figure 3-1, have largely replaced these older instruments and techniques.

Leica TS30

Trimble S9

Figure 3-1. Leica TS30 and Trimble S9 are example of electronic total stations that can be used for high precision machine alignment and deformation measurements. Accuracy specified at 1.0 mm (distance) and 0.5 sec (angular).

a. Electronic Theodolites. Technological progress in angle measurements has been mainly in the automation of the readout systems of the horizontal and vertical circles of the theodolites. The optical readout systems have been replaced by various, mainly photo-electronic, scanning systems of coded circles with an automatic digital display and transfer of the readout to electronic data collectors or computers. Some of the precision electronic theodolites are equipped with microprocessor controlled biaxial sensors (electronic tiltmeters), which can sense the inclination (misleveling) of the theodolite to an accuracy better than 0.5 arc seconds and automatically correct, not only vertical, but also horizontal, direction readouts. In optical theodolites in which the inclination is controlled only by a spirit level, errors of several seconds of arc in horizontal directions could be produced when observing along steeply inclined lines of sight. Atmospheric refraction is a particular danger to any optical measurements, particularly where the line of sight (LOS) lies close to obstructions. The gradient of air temperature in the direction perpendicular to the LOS is the main parameter of refraction. Therefore, when selecting an electronic theodolite for precision surveys, one should always choose one with the biaxial leveling compensator.

b. Three-Dimensional Coordinating Systems. Two or more electronic theodolites linked to a microcomputer create a three-dimensional (3D) coordinating (positioning) system with real-time

calculations of the coordinates. The systems are used for the highest precision positioning and deformation monitoring surveys over small areas. If standard deviations of simultaneously measured horizontal and vertical angles do not exceed 1 arc second, then positions (x, y, z) of targets at distances up to ten meters away may be determined with the standard deviations smaller than 0.05 millimeters. Usually short invar rods of known length are included in the measuring scheme to provide scale for the calculation of coordinates.

c. Electronic Distance Measurements (EDMs). Short-range (several kilometers), electro-optical EDM instruments with visible or near infrared (IR) continuous radiation are used widely in engineering surveys. The accuracy (standard deviation) of EDM instruments may be expressed in a general form as:

$$\sigma = \text{sqrt} (a^2 + b^2 x S^2) \qquad \text{(Eq 3-1)}$$

where "a" contains errors of the phase measurement and calibration errors of the so-called zero correction (additive constant of the instrument and of the reflector), while the value of "b" represents a scale error due to the aforementioned uncertainties in the determination of the refractive index and errors in the calibration of the modulation frequency and “S” is the measured distance. Typically, the value of "a" ranges from 3 mm to 5 mm. In the highest precision EDM instruments, the "a" value is 0.2 mm to 0.5 mm based on a high modulation frequency and high resolution of the phase measurements in those instruments. Over distances longer than a few hundred meters, however, the prevailing error in all EDM instruments is due to the difficulty in determining the refractive index.

d. Pulse Type Measurement. EDM instruments with a short pulse transmission and direct measurement of the propagation time are available. These instruments, having a high energy transmitted signal, may be used without reflectors to measure short distances (up to 200 m) directly to walls or natural flat surfaces with an accuracy of about 10 millimeters. Automated laser scanning instruments are also available that can be used to scan accurate (+/- 5 mm), real-time detailed models of structures and construction sites—see Figure 3-2.

Figure 3-2. Real-time laser scanner being set up to scan Libby Dam. (Army Geospatial Center, Leica Geosystems).

e. Total Stations. Any electronic theodolite linked to an EDM instrument and to a computer creates a total surveying station, which allows for a simultaneous measurement of the three basic positioning parameters, distance, horizontal direction, and vertical angle, from which relative horizontal and vertical positions of the observed points can be determined directly in the field. Several manufacturers of survey equipment produce integrated total stations in which the EDM and electronic angle measurement systems are incorporated into one compact instrument with common pointing optics, as illustrated in Figure 3-1. Different models of total stations vary in accuracy, range, sophistication of the automatic data collection, and possibilities for online data processing.

f. Automatic Target Recognition (ATR). Early automated vision systems were installed in precision theodolites by the 1980's. Its operating components consisted of an external video camera imaging system and a separate servomotor drive. Modern systems are more sophisticated, being packaged internally and having an active beam sensing capability. An emitted IR signal is transmitted to the prism that passively reflects the signal back to the instrument. The return spot is imaged on a high-resolution (500 x 500) pixel Charged Couple Device (CCD) array. The center of gravity (centroid) is located in relation to the current position

of the optical cross-hairs (reticule). An initial calibration process is carried out immediately after setting up the instrument, where a reference object is sighted so that the fixed orientation of the telescope is registered to the ATR image coordinates. To run the system after calibration, a series of targets are sighted so the instrument can be trained to their location at least once. With the approximate coordinates of each target prism stored in memory, the ATR system can then take over the pointing, reading, and measuring functions completely within the instrument. Target search radius, data rejection thresholds, and other controls can be programmed into the operating menus by the user. The search pattern is set by default to one-third of the telescope field of view, but this range can be narrowed to provide better search and recognition performance once the instrument has been trained to a given point. Factory reliability tests on the servomotor drive have proven continuous operation of the system over four consecutive years in a continuous measurement mode.

g. Survey Robots. For continuous or frequent deformation measurements, a fully automatic system based on computerized and motorized total stations has been developed. These systems can be programmed for sequential self-pointing to a set of prism targets at predetermined time intervals, can measure distances and horizontal and vertical angles, and can transmit the data to the office computer via a telemetry link. The robotic systems are used in many applications, particularly in monitoring high walls in open pit mining and in slope stability studies. Generally, the accuracy of direction measurements with the self-pointing computerized theodolites is worse than the measurements with manual pointing.

3-3. Differential Leveling.

a. General. Differential leveling provides height difference measurements between a series of benchmarks. Vertical positions are determined to very high accuracy (±1 mm) over short distances (10-100's of meters) using precision levels. Two major classes of precision levels commonly used for making deformation measurements are automatic levels and digital levels.

b. Automatic Levels. The old method of geometrical leveling with horizontal LOSs (using spirit or compensated levels) is still the most reliable and accurate, though slow, surveying method. With high magnification leveling instruments, equipped with the parallel glass plate micrometer and with invar graduated rods, a standard deviation smaller than 0.1 mm per setup may be achieved in height difference determination as long as the balanced LOSs do not exceed 20 m. In leveling over long distances (with a number of instrument setups) with the LOSs not exceeding 30 m, a standard deviation of 1 mm per kilometer may be achieved in flat terrain. The influence of atmospheric refraction and earth curvature is minimized by balancing the LOSs between the forward and backward leveling rods. A significant accumulation of refraction error, up to 15 mm for each 100-m difference in elevation, may take place along moderately inclined long routes due to unequal heights of the forward and backward horizontal lines above the terrain.

c. Digital Levels. The digital automatic leveling systems with height and distance readout from encoded leveling rods (Figure 3-3) has considerably increased the speed of leveling (by about 30%) and decreased the number of personnel needed on the survey crew.

Figure 3-3. Leica LS10 digital level and section from bar-coded invar level rod.

d. Tilt Measurements by Leveling. Monolith tilt on dams can be determined from leveling observations using the dimensions and tilting axis of the object. For example, a well-spaced (e.g., rectangular) four-point configuration of points provides the attitude of a plane that can be solved by least squares surface fitting to the measurements. The required survey data inputs are the height differences between the points and an absolute height tied to at least one point, either transferred or assumed from a given reference. The unknown two-axis tilt parameters (α_X and α_Y) are derived from the solution of the equation for the plane.

3-4. Total Station Trigonometric Elevations**.**

a. Zenith Angle Methods. High precision electronic theodolites and EDM equipment allow for the replacement of geodetic leveling with more economical trigonometric height measurements. An accuracy better than 1 mm may be achieved in height difference determination between two targets 200 m apart using precision electronic theodolites for vertical angle measurements and an EDM instrument. The measurements must be performed either reciprocally, with two theodolites simultaneously, or from an auxiliary station with equal distances to the two targets (similar methodology as in spirit leveling) to minimize atmospheric refraction effects.

b. Measurement Accuracy. Zenith angle heighting accuracy is practically independent of the height differences and is especially more economical than conventional leveling in hilly terrain, and in all situations where large height differences between survey stations are involved. Trigonometric height traversing (reciprocal or with balanced lines of sight) with precision theodolites and with the lines of sight not exceeding 250 m can give a standard deviation smaller than 2 mm per kilometer. For standard height transfer applications, with automatic data collection and online processing, measurements are achieved independent of the terrain configuration. The refraction error is still the major problem with increasing the accuracy of trigonometric leveling.

3-5. Global Positioning System (GPS).

a. General. The satellite based GPS (shown in Figures 3-4 and 3-5) offers advantages over conventional terrestrial methods. Intervisibility between stations is not strictly necessary, allowing greater flexibility in the selection of station locations than for terrestrial geodetic surveys. Measurements can be taken during night or day, under varying weather conditions, which makes GPS measurements economical, especially when multiple receivers can be deployed on the structure during the survey. Reference EM 1110-1-1003, NAVSTAR Global Positioning System Surveying.

Figure 3-4. GPS equipment setup on Racine Lock and Dam.

Figure 3-5. Standard GPS equipment for precise surveying. From left to right: graduated rods for antenna height measurement, GPS antenna with ground plane, tribrach, antenna/tribrach adapter, antenna cable, data download cable, surveyors tripod, GPS receiver, camcorder batteries, power cord for support module, 12V battery with attached cable, and support module for data downloading.

b. Measurement Accuracy. The accuracy of GPS relative positioning depends on the distribution (positional geometry) of the observed satellites and on the quality of the observations. Several major sources of error contaminating the GPS measurements are:

-signal propagation errors—tropospheric and ionospheric refraction, and signal multipath,
-receiver-related errors—antenna phase center variation, and receiver system noise, and
-satellite-related errors—such as orbit errors and accuracy of the ephemeris data.

GPS errors relative to deformation survey applications are discussed in detail in Chapter 8.

c. GPS Positioning Accuracy. Experience with the use of GPS in various deformation studies indicate that with the available technology the accuracy of GPS relative positioning over

areas of up to 50 km in diameter can be expressed in terms of the variance of the horizontal components of the GPS baselines over a distance (S):

$$\sigma^2 = (3mm)^2 + (10^{-6} \times S)^2 \qquad \text{(Eq 3-2)}$$

Systematic biases (rotations and change in scale of the network) are identified and eliminated through proper modeling at the stage of the deformation interpretation. The accuracy of vertical components of the baselines is 1.5 to 2.5 times worse than the horizontal components. Systematic measurement errors over short distances (up to a few hundred meters) are usually negligible and the horizontal components of the GPS baselines can be determined with a standard deviation of 3 mm or less. The use of Real Time Kinematic GPS data processing allows for the real-time determination of changes in the position of GPS observed stations.

d. Systematic GPS Errors. Different types of errors affect GPS relative positioning in different ways. Some of the errors may have a systematic effect on the measured baselines producing scale errors and rotations. Due to the changeable geometrical distribution of the satellites and the resulting changeable systematic effects of the observation errors, repeated GPS surveys for the purpose of monitoring deformations can affect derived deformation parameters (up to a few ppm). The solution for systematic parameters in a GPS network may be obtained by:

-combining GPS surveys of some baselines (with different orientation) with terrestrial surveys of a compatible or better accuracy, and
-Establishing several points outside the deformable area (fiducial stations) which would serve as reference points.

These aspects must be considered when designing GPS networks for any engineering project.

e. Automated GPS Surveys. USACE developed a fully automated system for high-precision deformation surveys with GPS. With the Continuous Deformation Monitoring System (CDMS), GPS antennas are located at multiple points on the structure. At least two other GPS antennas must be located over reference points that are considered stable. The GPS antennas are connected to computers using a data telemetry link. CDMS can give accuracies of 3 mm both horizontally and vertically over a 300-m baseline. Although GPS does not require the intervisibility between the observing stations, it requires an unobstructed view to the satellites, which limits the use of GPS only to reasonably open areas. One should also remember that there might be some additional sources of errors (e.g., multipath, etc.) in GPS measurements.

f. GPS Receiver Specifications. When performing GPS-based deformation surveys, the receiver used must be geodetic quality and capable of one second data sampling. The receiver should also be capable of recording the GPS carrier frequency, receiver clock time, and signal strength for each data sample. A GPS receiver is required for each reference station in the reference network. The same model receiver/antenna combination should be used for each

setup. Pre-processing of GPS survey data, at a minimum, must include determination of the 3D coordinate differences and associated variance-covariance matrix in the 3D coordinate system for all baselines observed, and data screening to eliminate possible outliers. When performing GPS-based deformation surveys, procedures should be done per the guidance in Chapter 8 of this manual.

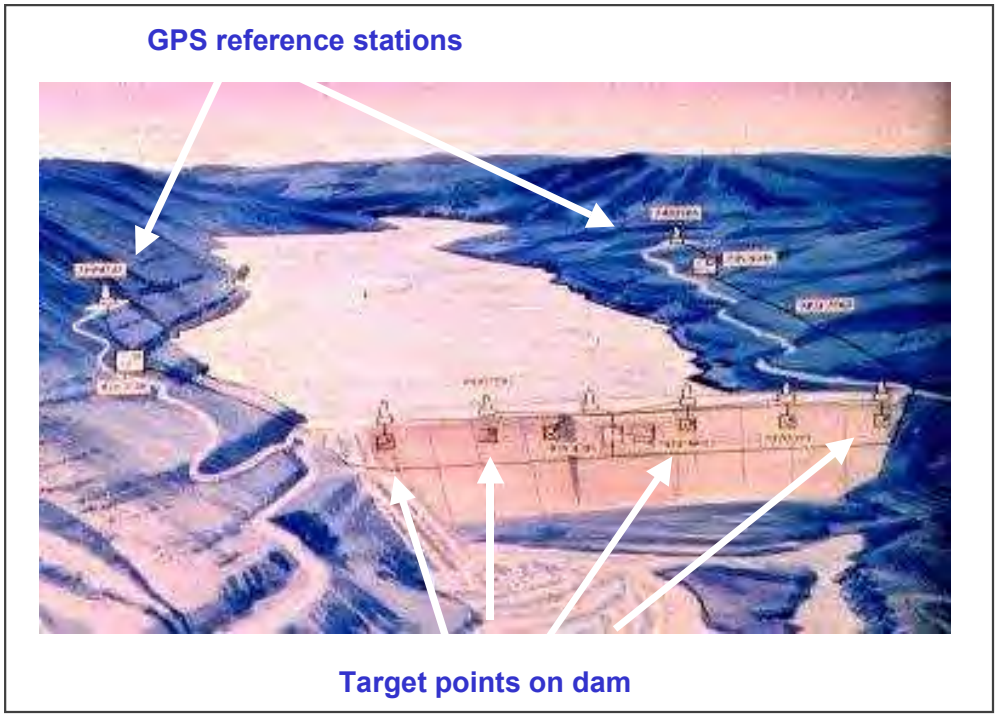


Figure 3-6. Concept sketch depicting GPS deformation monitoring surveys on a dam. The CDMS was first applied at Dworshak Dam, Idaho. (Walla Walla District).

3-6. Photogrammetric Techniques.

a. General. Aerial photogrammetry has been extensively used in determining ground movements in ground subsidence studies in mining areas, and terrestrial photogrammetry has been used in the monitoring of engineering structures. The main advantages of using photogrammetry are the reduced time of field work; simultaneous three dimensional coordinates; and in principle an unlimited number of points can be monitored.

b. Terrestrial Photogrammetry. Special cameras with minimized distortions must be used in precision photogrammetry. Cameras combined with theodolites (phototheodolites) or stereocameras (two cameras mounted on a bar of known length) have found many applications in terrestrial engineering surveys including mapping and volume determination of underground excavations and profiling of tunnels. The accuracy of photogrammetric positioning with special cameras depends mainly on the accuracy of the determination of the image coordinates and the

scale of the photographs. The image coordinates may, typically, be determined with an accuracy of about 10 µm, though 3 µm is achievable. The photo scale may be approximately expressed as:

$$\text{Photo Scale} = f / S \qquad \text{(Eq 3-3)}$$

where

f = the focal length of the camera lens
S = the distance of the camera from the object

Using a camera with f = 100 mm, at a distance S = 100 m, with the accuracy of the image coordinates of 10 µm, the coordinates of the object points can be determined with the accuracy of 10 mm.

c. Photogrammetric Standards. When performing photogrammetric-based deformation surveys, only metric cameras will be used. Typically, only one camera is necessary as it is moved from station to station. The instrument used for image coordinate measurement (e.g., monocomparator, stereocomparator, or analytical stereocomparator) will be capable of 1 micron or better resolution. EM 1110-1-1000, Photogrammetric and LiDAR Mapping, and photogrammetric product manufacturer guidelines should be referred to for more specifics on the photogrammetric process.

3-7. Alignment Measurements.

a. General. Alignment surveys cover an extremely wide spectrum of engineering applications from the tooling industry, through measurements of amplitude of vibrations of engineering structures, to deformation monitoring of nuclear accelerometers several kilometers long. Each application may require different specialized equipment. The methods used in practice may be classified per the method of establishing the reference line:

-mechanical method in which stretched wire (e.g., steel, nylon) establishes the reference line,
-direct optical method (collimation) with optical LOS or a laser beam to mark the line, and
-diffraction method where a reference line is created by projecting a pattern of diffraction slits.

b. Mechanical Methods. Mechanical alignment methods with tensioned wires used as the reference lines have found many applications, including dam deformation surveys. This is due to their simplicity, high accuracy, and easy adaptation to continuous monitoring of structural deformations using inductive sensors applicable over distances up to a few hundred meters. Accuracies of 0.1 mm are achievable using mechanical alignment methods.

c. Direct Optical Methods. Direct optical methods (Figure 3-7) utilize either an optical telescope and movable targets with micrometric sliding devices or a collimated laser beam (projected through the telescope) and movable photo-centering targets. Besides the aforementioned influence of atmospheric refraction, pointing and focusing are the main sources of error when using optical telescopes. Refer to Chapter 7 for details on performing micrometer alignment observations.

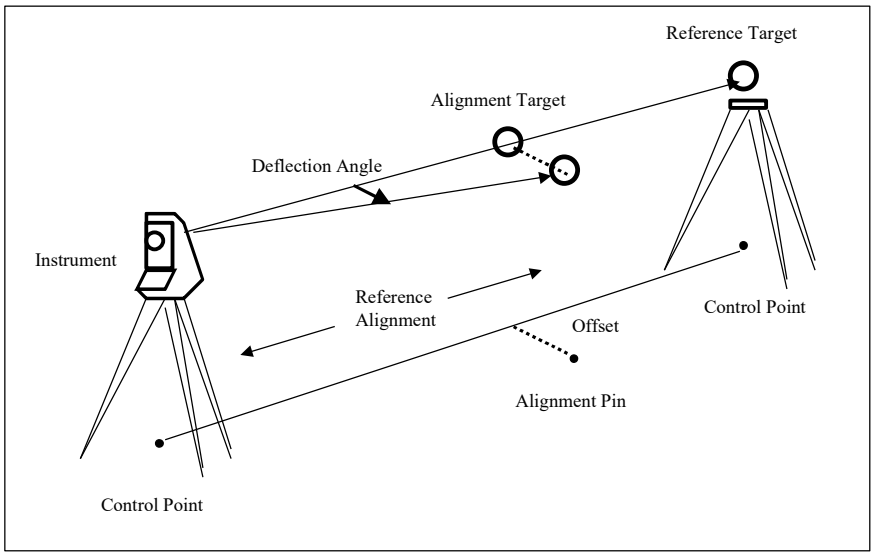


Figure 3-7. Direct optical alignment technique. Deflection angle method used to measure baseline offsets in conventional alignment surveys.

d. Aligning Telescopes. Special aligning telescopes with large magnification (up to 100×) are available. When the optical LOS is replaced by a collimated laser beam, then the accuracy of pointing may be considerably improved if special self-centering laser detectors with a time integration of the laser beam energy are used. The use of laser allows for automation of the alignment procedure and for continuous data acquisition. Attention must be paid to the stability of the laser cavity when using the laser beam directly as the reference line. A directional drift of the laser beam as high as 4 arc seconds per degree Celsius may occur due to thermal effects on the laser cavity. This effect is decreased by a factor of the magnification when projecting the laser through a telescope.

e. Diffraction Methods. In diffraction alignment methods, a pinhole source of monochromatic (laser) light, the center of a plate with diffraction slits, and the center of an optical or photoelectric sensor are the three basic points of the alignment line. If two of the three points are fixed in their position, then the third may be aligned by centering the reticule on the interference pattern created by the diffraction grating. It should be pointed out that movements of the laser and of its output do not influence the accuracy of this method of alignment because

the laser serves only as a source of monochromatic light placed behind the pinhole and not as the reference line. Therefore, any kind of laser may be employed in this method, even the simplest and least expensive ones, as long as the output power requirements are satisfied. Various patterns of diffraction slits are used in practice. The highest accuracy and the longest range are obtained with the so-called Fresnel zone plates that act as focusing lenses. For instance, rectangular Fresnel zone plates with an electro-optical centering device were used in alignment and deformation measurements of a 3 km long nuclear accelerator giving relative accuracy (in a vacuum) of 10^{-7} of the distance. In the open atmosphere, the thermal turbulence of air seems to have a smaller effect when using the Fresnel zone plates than in the case of direct optical alignment. The laser diffraction alignment methods have successfully been applied in monitoring both straight and curved (arch) dams using self-centering targets with automatic data recording.

f. Micrometer Translation Stages. Developments in the manufacture of translation stages for scientific and laboratory use (such as for laser and optical alignment work), as well as other specialized products used in the field of industrial metrology, include a broad array of alignment measurement tools (such as scales, precise micrometers, and right angle prisms). Modern linear translation stages can reliably provide extremely high resolution (1/1000 inch at one-sigma) with very stable material and mechanical properties. Translation stages with large travel ranges are available to adapt these off-the-shelf devices to monitoring applications, especially alignment surveys.

3-8. Extension and Strain Measurements.

a. Types of Extensometers. Various types of instruments, mainly mechanical and electro-mechanical, are used to measure changes in distance to determine compaction or upheaval of soil, convergence of walls in engineering structures and underground excavations, strain in rocks and in man-made materials, separation between rock layers around driven tunnels, slope stability, and movements of structures with respect to the foundation rocks. Depending on its particular application, the same instrument may be named an extensometer, strainmeter, convergencemeter, or fissuremeter. The various instruments differ from each other by the method of linking together the points between which the change in the distance is to be determined and the kind of sensor employed to measure the change. The links in most instruments are mechanical, such as wires, rods, or tubes. The sensors usually are mechanical, such as calipers or dial gauges. In order to adapt them to automatic and continuous data recording, electric transducers can be employed using, for instance, linear potentiometers, differential transformers, and self-inductance resonant circuits. In general, when choosing the kind of transducer for automatic data acquisition, one should consult with an electronics specialist on which kind would best suit the purpose of the measurements in the given environmental conditions. One should point out that the precision EDM instruments, as described earlier with their accuracy of 0.3 mm over short distances, may also be used as extensometers, particularly when the distances involved are several tens of meters long.

If an extensometer is installed in the material with a homogeneous strain field, then the measured change (δl) of the distance (l) gives directly the strain component (ε):

$$\varepsilon = \delta l / l \qquad \text{(Eq 3-4)}$$

in the direction of the measurements. To determine the total strain tensor in a plane (two normal strains and one shearing), a minimum of three extensometers must be installed in three different directions.

Figure 3-8. Assortment of Starrett micrometers and calipers that can be used for measuring short distances in concrete structures to an accuracy of 0.0005 inch or better.

b. Wire and Tape Extensometers. Maintaining a constant tension throughout the use of the wire or tape extensometer is very important. In some portable extensometers, the constant tensioning weight has been replaced by precision tensioning springs. One should be careful because there are several models of spring tensioned extensometers on the market which do not provide any means of tension calibration. As the spring ages, these instruments may indicate false expansion results unless they are carefully calibrated on a baseline of constant length before and after each measuring campaign.

(1) Invar Wire Strain Gauge. Among the most precise wire extensometers are the Kern Distometer (discontinued production) and the European Organization for Nuclear Research

(CERN) Distinvar (Switzerland). Both instruments use invar wires and special constant tensioning devices which, if properly calibrated and used, can give accuracies of 0.05 mm or better in measurements of changes of distances over lengths from about 1 m to about 20 meters. Invar is a capricious alloy and must be handled very carefully to avoid sudden changes in the length of the wire. When only small changes in temperature are expected or a smaller precision (0.1 mm to 1 mm) is required, steel wires or steel tapes are more appropriate.

(2) Vibrating Wire Strain Gauge. Special high precision strainmeters of a short length (up to a few decimeters) are available for strain measurements in structural material and in homogeneous rocks. These instruments employ a thin steel wire in which the changeable resonant frequency is measured. In one particular model of extensometers, an accuracy of one microstrain (10^{-6}) is claimed in the strain measurements which corresponds to 0.15 μm relative displacements of points over a distance of 150 mm.

c. Rod, Tube, and Torpedo Extensometers. Steel, invar, aluminum, or fiberglass rods of various lengths, together with sensors of their movements, may be used depending on the application. Multiple point measurements in boreholes or in trenches may be made using either a parallel arrangement of rods anchored at different distances from the sensing head, or a string (in series) arrangement with intermediate sensors of the relative movements of the rods. A typical accuracy of 0.1 mm to 0.5 mm may be achieved up to a total length of 200 m (usually in segments of 3 m to 6 m). The actual accuracy depends on the temperature corrections and on the quality of the installation of the extensometer. When installing rods in plastic conduit (usually when installing in boreholes), the friction between the rod and the conduit may significantly distort the extensometer indications if the length of the extensometer exceeds a few tens of meters. The dial indicator readout may be replaced by potentiometric or other transducers with digital readout systems. Telescopic tubes may replace rods in some simple applications, for instance, in measurements of convergence between the roof and floor of openings in underground mining. Several models of torpedo borehole extensometers and sliding micrometers are available from different companies. Reference rings on the casing are spaced within the length of the torpedo. The sensors and reference rings form the inductance oscillating circuits. The torpedo is lowered in the borehole and stopped between the successive rings recording changes in distances between the pairs of rings with a claimed accuracy of 0.1 millimeter. Boreholes up to several hundreds of meters long can be scanned.

d. Interferometric Measurements of Linear Displacements. Various kinds of interferometers using lasers as a source of monochromatic radiation are becoming common tools in precision displacement measurements. A linear resolution of 0.01 μm, or better, is achievable. One has to remember, however, that interferometric distance measurements are affected by atmospheric refractivity in the same way as all EDM systems. Therefore, even if temperature and barometric pressure corrections are applied, the practical accuracy limit is about 10^{-6}S (equivalent to 1 μm per meter). Thermal turbulence of air limits the range of interferometric measurements in the open atmosphere to about 60 meters. The laser interferometer has found many industrial and

laboratory applications in the measurement of small displacements and the calibration of surveying instruments.

e. Use of Optical Fiber Sensors. The measurements of extensions and changes in crack-width employs a fully automatic extensometer that utilizes the principle of electro-optical distance measurements within fiber optic conduits. The change in length of the fiber optic sensors are sensed electro-optically and are computer controlled.

f. Precise Concrete Crack Measurements. Distances between crack plug pins in concrete structures are typically measured using precision micrometers or calipers as well as using automated vibrating wire crackmeters, such as those as shown in Figure 3-8. Details on micrometer crack observing procedures are covered in Chapter 7.

3-9. Tilt and Inclination Measurements**.**

a. Methods of Tilt Measurement. The measurement of tilt is usually understood as the determination of a deviation from the horizontal plane, while inclination is interpreted as a deviation from the vertical. Instruments that measures tilt at a point are known as either a tiltmeter or an inclinometer. Geodetic leveling techniques can achieve an accuracy of 0.1 mm over a distance of 20 m, which would be equivalent to about 1 arc second of angular tilt. This accuracy is more than sufficient in most engineering deformation measurements. Various in-situ instruments are used when higher accuracy or continuous or very frequent collection of data on the tilt changes is necessary:

-engineering tiltmeters and inclinometers,
-suspended and inverted plumb lines, and
-hydrostatic levels.

Other specialized instruments such as mercury/laser levels have been developed but are not commonly used in practice.

b. Tiltmeters and Inclinometers. There are many reasonably priced models of various liquid, electrolytic, vibrating wire, and pendulum type tiltmeters that satisfy most of the needs of engineering surveys. Particularly popular are servo-accelerometer tiltmeters with a small horizontal pendulum. They offer ruggedness, durability, and low temperature operation. The output signal (volts) is proportional to the sine of the angle of tilt. The typical output voltage range for tiltmeters is ±5 V, which corresponds to the maximum range of the tilt. Angular resolution depends on the tilt range of the selected model of tiltmeter and the resolution of the voltmeter (e.g., 1 mV). There are many factors affecting the accuracy of tilt sensing. A temperature change produces dimensional changes of the mechanical components, changes in the viscosity of the liquid in the electrolytic tiltmeters, and of the damping oil in the pendulum tiltmeters. Drifts of tilt indications and fluctuations of the readout may also occur. Thorough testing and calibration are required even when accuracy requirements are not very high. Tiltmeters have a wide range of applications. A series of tiltmeters, if arranged along a terrain

profile, may replace geodetic leveling in the determination of ground subsidence. Similarly, deformation profiles of tall structures may be determined by placing a series of tiltmeters at different levels of the structure. A popular application of tiltmeters in geomechanical engineering is in slope stability studies and in monitoring embankment dams using the torpedo (scanning) type borehole inclinometers (usually the servo-accelerometer type tiltmeters). The biaxial inclinometers are used to scan boreholes drilled to the depth of an expected stable strata in the slope. By lowering the inclinometer on a cable with marked intervals and taking readings of the inclinometer at those intervals, a full profile of the borehole and its changes may be determined through repeated surveys. Usually the servo-accelerometer inclinometers are used with various ranges of inclination measurements, for instance, ±6 degrees, ±54 degrees, or even ±90 degrees. If a 40-m deep borehole is measured every 50 cm with an inclinometer of only 10 arc seconds accuracy, then the linear lateral displacement of the collar of the borehole could be determined with an accuracy of 2 millimeters. Fully automatic (computerized) borehole scanning inclinometer systems with a telemetric data acquisition have been designed for monitoring slope stability.

c. Suspended and Inverted Plumb Lines. Two kinds of mechanical plumbing are used in controlling the stability of vertical structures:

-suspended plumb lines, and
-floating or inverted plumb lines.

Inverted plumb lines have an advantage over suspended plumb lines in the possibility of monitoring absolute displacements of structures with respect to deeply anchored points in the foundation rocks that may be considered as stable. In the case of power dams, the depth of the anchors must be 50 m or even more below the foundation in order to obtain absolute displacements of the surface points. If invar wire is used for the inverted plumb line, vertical movements of the investigated structure with respect to the bedrock can also be determined. Caution must be used in installing plumb lines. If the plumb line is installed outside the dam, a vertical pipe of a proper inner diameter should be used to protect the wire from the wind. The main concern with floating plumb lines is to ensure verticality of the boreholes so that the wire of the plumb line has freedom of motion. The tank containing the float is generally filled with oil or with water to which some anti-freeze can be added. The volume of the float should be such as to exert sufficient tension on the wire. Thermal convection displacements in a float tank may easily develop from thermal gradients that may affect measurements—requiring the whole tank to be thermally insulated. Several types of recording devices that measure displacements of structural points with respect to the vertical plumb lines are produced by different companies. The simplest are mechanical or electromechanical micrometers. With these, the plumb wire can be positioned with respect to reference lines of a recording (coordinating) table to an accuracy of ±0.1 mm or better. Traveling microscopes may give the same accuracy. Automatic sensing and recording is possible. Automated vision systems use CCD video cameras to image the plumb line with a resolution of about 3 micrometers over a range of 75 mm. Two sources of error that may sometimes be underestimated by users are the influence of air currents and the spiral shape

of wires. The plumb line should be protected within a pipe (e.g., PVC tube) with openings only at the reading tables to reduce the influence of the air pressure.

d. Optical Plummets. High precision optical plummets [e.g., Leica ZL (zenith) and NL (nadir) plummets] offer accuracy of up to 1:200,000 for precise centering, and both can be equipped with a laser. Atmospheric refraction remains as a major source of error for optical instruments.

e. Hydrostatic Leveling. If two connected containers are partially filled with a liquid, then the heights h_1 and h_2 of the liquid in the containers are related through the hydrostatic equation:

$$h_1 + P_1 / (g_1 r_1) = h_2 + P_2 / (g_2 r_2) = \text{constant} \qquad \text{(Eq 3-5)}$$

where P is the barometric pressure, g is gravity, and r is the density of the liquid, which is a function of temperature. The above relationship has been employed in hydrostatic leveling. Hydrostatic leveling is frequently used in the form of a network of permanently installed instruments filled with a liquid and connected by hose-pipes to monitor change in height differences of large structures. The height differences of the liquid levels are automatically recorded. The accuracy ranges from 0.1 mm to 0.01 mm over a few tens of meters depending on the types of instruments. The main factor limiting the survey accuracy is the temperature effect. To reduce this effect, the instrument must either be installed in a place with small temperature variations, or the temperature along the pipes must be measured and corrections applied, or a double liquid (e.g., water and mercury) is employed to derive the correction for this effect. Water of a constant temperature is pumped into the system just before taking the readings for the highest accuracy applications. The instruments with direct measurement of the liquid levels are limited in the vertical range by the height of the containers. This problem may be overcome if liquid pressures are measured instead of the changes in elevation of the water levels, where pneumatic pressure cells or pressure transducer cells may be used.

3-10. Non-Geodetic Measurements**.**

a. General. Deformation of large structures (e.g., dams) is caused mainly by reservoir loads, temperature, self-weight of the dam, and earth pressure. A monitoring system should therefore include regular measurements of the reservoir level and temperature and pressure data.

b. Reservoir Level Measurement. Historically reservoir levels were measured with pressure balances, where double checking the measurements must be done and can be facilitated by installing a manometer on either an existing or new pipe connected to the reservoir. The measurement range should extend at least as far as the dam crest allowing observation and judgment of the flood risk and assessment of peak inflows. Current common practice involves the use of pressure transducers and air acoustic measurement devices.

c. Temperature Measurement. Temperature measurements are required to determine the impact of temperature variations on the structure itself, as well as whether precipitation consists of rain or snow and, if applicable, whether the snow melt period has begun. Temperature measurements should be done at least daily. The thermometers should be placed at various locations within the dam, either embedded in the structure itself or within drill holes. Redundancy should be provided for by using a greater number of thermometers than otherwise would be required.

d. Precipitation Measurement. Precipitation measurement should be done by using a precipitation gauge. Daily readings are recommended. The gauging station does not need to be located at the dam site, but should not be too far away so as to not be representative of the precipitation level at the structure itself. Every large structure has some form of seepage through the structure itself or its foundation, even with a grout curtain. In concrete dams, seepage typically is small and limited to permeable areas of the concrete, joints, and contact between rock and concrete. Any abnormal seepage is an immediate warning that something may be wrong with the structure or foundation. In embankment (i.e., earthen) dams, seepage flow through the structure itself is similar to that observed in its foundation. Monitoring local precipitation will help to determine potential sources of seepage.

e. Seepage Rate. The total seepage rate is the seepage at the face of the structure taken as a whole. Seepage rate can be measured volumetrically by using a calibrated container and a stopwatch or a gauging weir or flume. Partial seepage rates are taken in isolated zones of the structure found to be representative for the area examined. Such rates should be monitored periodically. In the course of monitoring seepage, if an abnormality (i.e., a change in normal seepage rate) is detected, the critical zone and cause of the seepage is easier to identify.

f. Chemical Property Analysis. If the structure is constructed of soluble or easily erodible material, the seepage should be monitored for turbidity and chemical content also. Doing so will permit the assessment of the overall stability of the embankment and foundation materials.

g. Pore-Water Pressure Measurement. Structures are usually designed with specific pore-water pressure values that should not be exceeded. Pressure cells typically are designed or built into the structure themselves to measure pore-water pressure. The linking together of several cells forms a profile for the structure. The greater the number of measurement profiles and number of cells per profile, the more useful the data obtained will be. Even though pressure cells can be installed in structures themselves, rehabilitation of existing ones is not always practicable. Where pressure cells cannot be used to monitor pore-water pressure, the phreatic line in selected points will be monitored. Standpipe piezometers mounted in the embankment at several cross sections should be used to monitor the phreatic surface.

h. Uplift Pressure. Seepage underneath a structure causes uplift pressure that can alter the stabilizing effect of the structure's self-weight. Uplift pressure can be reasonably controlled by cutoffs and controlled drainage, but uplift pressure and the physical effectiveness of these control

measures should be carefully monitored. Piezometers are a reliable means to measure the uplift pressure in cross-sections and several points on the upstream and downstream face of the structure.

i. Discharge Measurement. If the foundation is being drained, drainage discharge should be monitored by either volumetric gauging or gauging weir. Any change in flow rate may be indicative of clogging in the drainage system. If possible, the discharge of any spring, river, stream, or flood control structure downstream of the structure should be monitored.

3-11. Optical Tooling Technology.

a. General. This section discusses modern optical metrology. A set of methods known in industry as optical tooling is used to create precise lines and planes in space from which measurements are made using light.

b. Definition of Optical Tooling. Optical tooling is a means for establishing and utilizing a LOS to obtain precise reference lines and reference planes from which accurate measurements are made with position sensitive targets (see Williams, 1989). Measurements are made by a person interpreting a scale or optical micrometer by looking through an alignment telescope, or the lines and planes are created by a laser with digital measurements. Optical tooling uses the principle that light travels in straight lines so as to enable precise measurements and level lines with every point is perpendicular to the force of gravity (e.g., plumb lines can be set to a given level datum). Right angles also can be produced quickly and precisely with auxiliary equipment components. In the assembly, maintenance, and calibration of industrial equipment, or alignment of precision systems, up to four basic alignment elements are used:

-straightness,
-flatness,
-squareness, and
-plumb.

A number of techniques have been developed to make these measurements, and in some cases, it is no longer necessary to interpret readings or to make constant adjustments and calculations to produce accurate results. For example, in laser alignment applications, direct precision measurements are made rapidly and consistently based on existing technology.

(1) Straightness. In aligning several points, a tight wire is often used as a reference line. This technique has some drawbacks and can introduce inaccuracy. Wire has weight, which causes it to sag, and over long distances this sag can become considerable. Wire can vibrate, bend, or kink when stretched in the area to be measured and equipment cannot be moved around for fear of disturbing the wire reference line. Even a gentle breeze can cause the wire to move a considerable amount because of the relatively large aerodynamic drag on a thin wire. In laser alignment, the LOS is established by a laser beam instead of a tight wire. The laser LOS reference has no weight, cannot sag, kink, or be disturbed, nor is it a safety hazard. It constitutes

a precise reference for determining straightness to within thousandths of an inch. Straightness applications are employed for establishing an alignment survey reference line.

(2) Flatness. A shop level and/or a straightedge are traditionally employed to determine flatness. The shop level must be moved from part to part over large horizontal areas to measure the degree of flatness of each individual surface upon which the level is place. Flatness over a considerable area must be assured in the erection of large machinery, surface tables, and large machine tools. Conventional bubble levels and "laser levels," offer a way to produce a level datum over a wide area. Laser technology has overcome the many disadvantages of bubble levels and assures levelness to within a few thousandths of an inch over hundreds of feet. This high degree of levelness is accomplished by horizontally sweeping the laser beam manually or via a motor driven rotary stage. This revolving line of laser light becomes a horizontal "plane of sight," giving a precise horizontal reference datum, sometimes called a waterline.

(3) Squareness. Perfect squareness implies that one plane forms a 90 degree angle with another intersecting plane. When a steel square is used to test for this condition, measurements rely upon the trueness of the steel square, which can vary from square to square with time. Steel squares have a definite limit in their physical dimensions and consequently the testing of very large surface becomes less accurate and slower. Laser alignment methods use a transparent penta prism in conjunction with a simple alignment laser. This optical element will split the beam from the laser into two parts; one beam passes through the prism undeviated, and the other beam is reflected at a 90 degree angle. Other systems use three independently mounted lasers that are orthogonal to each other.

(4) Plumb. A plumb line and pendulum are used to establish a single vertical reference line. As vertical distances increase, settling time, vibration, air currents, and other disturbances will have increased effects on the measurements. In the laser alignment method, there are several ways to produce a plumb reference; it can be a plane or a line. To form a plumb line, an alignment laser with auto-collimating capability is used with a pool of almost any liquid. Autocollimation senses the angle of an external mirror by reflecting its beam back into the laser head. A position sensor, beamsplitter, and lens measure the angle of the reflected beam. When the laser is adjusted such that the internal sensor reads zero in both axes, then the laser is producing a plumb line. If the laser beam is emitted from a manual or motor driver rotary base whose rotary axis is level, then the swept plane of light is a vertical plane. Position detectors in this plane will give an indication of how far to one side or other they are with respect to the plane.

3-12. Laser Tooling Methods**.**

a. Straightness Alignment. Before lasers and electronic targets came into use, alignment consisted of sighting through two points, near and far, and deciding if an object placed in-between them was to the left or right, or up or down with respect to this LOS. The choice of the two reference points is still the most important selection process of a straightness survey. For example, if a heavy machine tool is being surveyed, the two reference points that determine the

LOS should be located off of the machine. If for any reason the machine were to move or to deflect, then all measurements would be in error. The two reference points should be located close enough to be convenient to use and/or out of the way of other people working in the area. Transits and alignment telescopes were the first instruments used to make these types of measurements. The use of transits and telescopes require one person to interpret a reading scale placed on the object of interest; and usually a second person is holding the scale against the object. It is a two-person job that takes time and much training to accomplish. This type of alignment measurement, commonly called straightness, is the most basic of all alignment applications.

b. Alignment Transfer. Another common requirement is to establish a second LOS perpendicular or parallel to an original LOS. To establish a perpendicular LOS with lasers, a special prism is used called a penta prism or optical squares as they are often called. Prisms have the property that rotation around its axis does not deviate the reflected beam at all, and therefore it does not have to be critically mounted. Tooling bars are also used to establish a parallel LOS with respect to an existing LOS, especially if the distance is relatively short, for example a meter or less. These bars are made of steel and hold electronic targets at a precise distance from a center point. Using two bars from the original LOS establishes a parallel LOS. If the distance between the two LOS is large, then transfer can be done using the penta prism twice; the first time to turn the beam 90 degrees, followed by a certain distance, and concluded by turning the beam back 90 degrees. Care must be taken that two LOSs are truly parallel, which is usually confirmed from a level reference datum.

c. Oriented Alignment. The next alignment application involves measuring the alignment error between two different LOS datums. A typical application is to determine the lateral offset and angular error between two shafts (alignment segments). The shafts essentially define the two LOSs. The measurement is made by setting up a laser source parallel to one shaft. Targets are placed on the second shaft and surveyed in. Then the shafts are rotated 180 degrees and surveyed in again. The measured survey difference is equal to twice the shaft offset. If the target is placed at two axial locations and measured for offset, then the difference in the offsets divided by twice the axial separation is the angular error in radians.

d. Alignment Plane. A more sophisticated alignment application is to quickly sweep a laser beam to generate a plane of light. The advantage of this is that many targets can be aligned using one laser source. In simple straightness applications, the target location is restricted to the active area of the position sensor. In swept plane alignment, the targets are sensitive in only one dimension. A typical application to establish a level plane is to put three or more targets at the same (desired) waterline location and adjust the structure to the targets until all targets read the same. The targets for a swept plane alignment can be static, meaning they require the laser beam to be constantly directed in to them. Usually the laser beam is swept by hand by rotating a knob on the laser source. If the laser plane is moving at high speed, say once a second or faster, then the targets must capture and hold the position of the laser beam as the beam sweeps by. The problem becomes harder to accomplish at longer distance because the beam is on the detector for

such short periods of time. Physical high and low spots can be discovered and measured by moving the targets around the surface.

CHAPTER 4

Sources of Measurement Error and Instrument Calibrations

4-1. General. This chapter describes the various sources of measurement error that need to be considered in deformation monitoring. These errors come from the tools and processes used during data collection and monitoring. Instrument calibrations are discussed in this chapter since this is a contribution to errors.

4-2. Theory of Measurements and Surveying Measurement Errors.

a. Random Variables. Survey measurements are geometrical quantities with numerical values assigned to them with a certain accuracy. The 'observable' is a term used to indicate the type of surveying measurement, such as direction, distance, azimuth, coordinate difference, and height difference. An 'observation' refers to the specific number assigned to the observable. Surveying observations always contain random deviations where each observation error is called an instance of a random variable. Random variables have a well-known expected frequency distribution (Gaussian or normal) that can be rigorously described by simple parameters.

b. Measures of Central Tendency. The influence of random error is minimized by computing the mean value of a series of observations, which is also the most probable estimate of the unknown true value. The mean value of a sample can be computed as follows:

$$x = \sum (x_i) \; / \; n \qquad \text{(Eq 4-1)}$$

where

x	=	sample mean
x_i	=	observations (where i = 1 through n)
n	=	number of observations

The accuracy of the sample mean is very sensitive to bias or systematic error in the measurements. An incorrect value for the sample mean, due to measurement bias, is shifted away from the true population mean.

c. Measures of Dispersion. The variance of a sample of measurements is an estimator of precision or repeatability. The variance describes how closely the measurements are grouped around the sample mean. The sample variance is computed from the average of the squares of the measurement deviations about the mean. A large variance implies lower precision and greater dispersion. The standard deviation or unbiased root mean square (RMS) error is the positive square root of the variance. The sample variance (s^2), or population variance (σ^2), are calculated as follows:

Sample Variance:

$$s^2 = (\sum (x_i - x)^2) / (n - 1) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-2)}$$

Population Variance:

$$\sigma^2 = (\sum (x_i - \mu)^2) / N \qquad \text{(Eq 4-3)}$$

where

x = observations (where i = 1 through n)

s^2 = sample variance
x = sample mean = $(\sum x_i) / n$
n = number of observations

σ^2 = population variance
μ = population mean = $(\sum x_i) / N$
N = number of elements within the population

When the population mean (μ) is unknown, the sample variance (s^2) is computed using the sample mean (x). Another measure of dispersion is the range (R) of a data sample:

$$R = | x_{MAX} - x_{MIN} | \qquad \text{(Eq 4-4)}$$

where

R = range
x_{MAX} = maximum value
x_{MIN} = minimum value

The range R is the absolute value of the difference between the minimum and maximum value.

d. Blunders. Blunders are the result of mistakes by the user or inadvertent equipment failure. For example, an observer may misread a level rod by a tenth of a foot or a malfunctioning data recorder may cause erroneous data storage. Blunders are minimized by adopting consistent measurement procedures that contain self-checks. Blunders must be detected and removed before a final usable set of data can be compiled. Techniques used to identify blunders in the data include:

-calculation of loop and traverse closures to check whether the misclosure is within tolerances,

-standard deviation of a series of measurements to check if the spread is within tolerance, and
-comparison of misclosures to a well-determined or to an assumed true position.

e. Systematic Error. Systematic error is the result of an inadequate mathematical model that omits some necessary physical or mathematical parameter that is necessary to exactly describe the relationship between measurements and coordinates. For example, using a tape that is 0.1 m off or a fixed height tripod that has not been calibrated can result in a systematic error in the measurements. Systematic error is removed through calibrations and data reductions that are made before entering the data into the network adjustment software. Unremoved systematic errors are detected statistically by an examination of the observation residuals and using the Chi-square Goodness-of-Fit test. Systematic error is caused by deficiencies in the physical or computation model used to process the measurements. Systematic error can produce a biased value for the estimated mean (i.e., it is significantly different than the desired true value). For example, systematic errors in EDM instruments include:

-EDM/prism zero error,
-EDM scale error,
-EDM signal refraction error, and
-EDM cyclic error.

Corrections to these systematic errors are determined by various instrument calibration techniques. Error is minimized from the data during post-processing by applying the resulting correction values to the measurements. Where systematic errors cannot be adequately determined, sometimes their effects can be randomized with specialized observation procedures. For example, if the surveying measurements are repeated under different field conditions such as at different times of the day, under different weather conditions, and even on different days.

f. Random Error. Random error is an inherent result of the measurement process. Least squares processing requires the assumption that only random errors exist within the data. If all systematic errors and blunders have been removed, then observations will contain only random error. Random error is broadly characterized as small, uncontrolled deviations in an observed measurement value. The expected range of uncertainty in measurements due to random error is known as precision, and is described by the standard deviation (σ) of the distribution of observations about their mean value. Measurement precision can be estimated by standard statistical analysis or predicted *a priori* from error propagation formulas. Error sources in geodetic measurements with conventional instruments (e.g., theodolites) are:

-pointing error,
-centering error,
-leveling error, and
-reading error.

An expected variance can be calculated for each type of error component. These are added together to estimate the measurement standard deviation. Measurement precision is critical information for analyzing positioning accuracy through survey preanalysis and for assigning appropriate weights to measurements in a least squares network adjustment.

g. Instrument Calibrations. Measuring equipment used for deformation monitoring surveys must be maintained in adjustment and undergo periodic calibration so as to minimize systematic error. Manufacturer specifications and recommendations will be used as the basis for any internal instrument adjustments. EDM instruments must be calibrated for the instrument/prism zero correction and for scale error, as these may change with time. EDMs should be calibrated at least once a year for engineering projects of high precision, or before and after an important project. The calibration for zero error must account for all actual combinations of EDM-reflector pairings that are used on the survey since each reflector may produce a different error value (i.e., there is a different constant for each pairing).

4-3. Optical Pointing Error.

a. Optical Pointing. All measurements with optical theodolites are subject to pointing error due to such factors as: target design, prevailing atmospheric conditions, operator bias, and focusing. The approximate magnitude of a single-direction pointing error (i.e., standard deviation) is directly related to the magnification of the theodolite telescope.

$$\sigma_p = 45'' / M \qquad \text{(Eq 4-5)}$$

where

σ_p = instrument pointing error (arc seconds)
M = objective lens magnification

For example, an objective lens with 30 times magnification would have a pointing error (σ_p) of approximately 1.5 arc seconds (one-sigma) for a single direction. Taking repeated measurements from the same setup reduces the standard deviation by a factor of 1/sqrt (n), with n being the number of repetitions (see Figure 4.1). The standard deviation (due to pointing error) of a single direction measured by repetition in (n) sets can be determined from the following formula:

$$\sigma_\delta = \sigma_p / \text{sqrt}(n) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-6)}$$

where

σ_δ = single direction pointing error (arc seconds)
σ_p = instrument pointing error
n = number of repeated sets

This result assumes that each pointing to the backsight and foresight has the same precision.

b. Empirical Determination of Pointing Error. Pointing error can be determined for a given instrument by making direct observations to a target point (for use with an optical theodolite with micrometer scales). First, the operator sets and levels the instrument and target per standard techniques. Next, the operator points the theodolite crosshairs to the target and records the direction reading. Repeat the pointing procedure at least twenty times to gather a sufficient number of direction readings for calculating a mean error value from the data. Then compute the standard deviation of the resulting test data (in arc seconds). The result is an empirical pointing uncertainty for the instrument. The reading error component must be subtracted from the combined pointing and reading error.

$$\sigma_p = \text{sqrt}\left[(\sigma_p + \sigma_r)^2 - (\sigma_r)^2 \right] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-7)}$$

where

σ_p	=	instrument pointing error (arc seconds)
$(\sigma_p + \sigma_r)$	=	combined pointing and reading error
σ_r	=	instrument reading error (arc seconds)

Reading error (σ_r) is determined independently from either the standard deviation of a series of twenty readings of the theodolite scales with the instrument's motion locked, or from the instrument specifications.

c. Minimization of Pointing Error. Instrument pointing error degrades the precision of horizontal and vertical angle measurements to a greater degree on long baselines. It can be minimized by observing survey targets under high magnification. Some instruments are equipped with interchangeable eyepieces that provide higher magnification then when focused to infinity with a standard eyepiece. The technique of averaging repeated sets of angles is used to reduce instrument pointing error when greater lens magnification is not available.

d. Atmospheric Disturbance. Air turbulence can greatly interfere with instrument pointing accuracy. This is especially true on structures exposed to direct sunlight (e.g., dams, concrete lock walls). Very little can be done to eliminate these effects except to observe under more favorable conditions, such as in the early morning hours, on overcast days, and during cooler seasons. Repeated sets of angles will again reduce instrument pointing error with poor observing conditions. The spread of repeated measurements (final standard deviation after repetitions) should be checked to see whether it exceeds the required measurement accuracy.

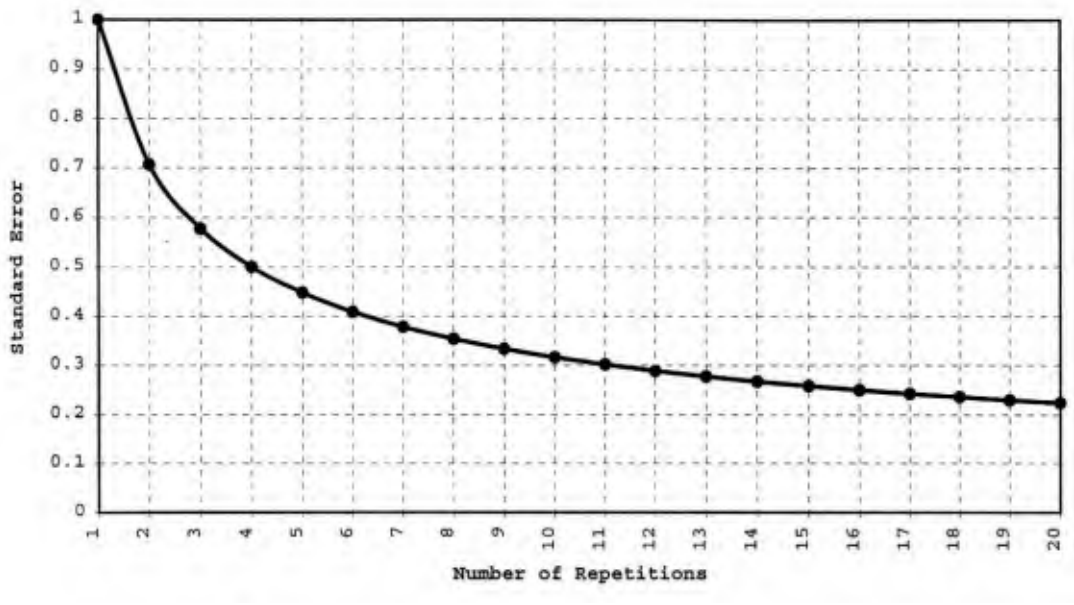


Figure 4-1. Standard error decreases as repeated number of directions increases.

e. Electronic Pointing. Precision EDM instruments use electronic pointing instead of optical pointing to retrieve the EDM signal. Electronic pointing is a trial-and-error targeting procedure used to find the peak reading of the EDM signal strength indicator as the instrument fine motion screws are adjusted. A stronger signal return produces more accurate distance measurements and minimizes the use of anomalous phase patterns near the return signal beam edges. This is especially critical when making measurements over short distances (i.e., less than 20 m), where the EDM 'phase inhomogeneity' effect will be most pronounced.

f. Minimization of Electrical Pointing Error. The modulation wave front issuing from a properly designed and operating instrument is at all points equidistant from the center of the instrument. However, the wave front may be distorted in passing through the modulator, and then a portion of the wave may be ahead or behind the remainder. An instrument senses both reflectors as equidistant because the phase of the modulated wave is the same for both. If the instrument is moved in azimuth slightly, the distance that it reads would change. This type of error may be detected simply by multiple pointings at a reflector. If different pointings yield different results, it may be necessary to take several readings in the field, swinging off the target and then back until two or three sets of readings agree well. Practice in the field may help eliminate this problem as an experienced operator tends to point and adjust an instrument in the same way for each measurement.

4-4. Instrument Leveling Error.

a. General. Even when exercising great care in setting up the instrument, there is a definite limit to the ability to level the instrument due to the sensitivity of the plate level bubble. Therefore, at least some inclination of the instrument's vertical axis with respect to the plumb line is unavoidable. Theodolite inclination error is computed (for the purpose of measurement design) as:

$$\sigma_I = (0.2)\ (\text{bubble sensitivity per division})$$

or at five times less than the level bubble sensitivity of the instrument (e.g., for a thirty-second bubble, one gets approximately 30"/5 = 6" leveling error). The effect of vertical axis inclination error (σ_I) on the measured horizontal angle, is computed as:

$$\sigma_L = (\sigma_I) / [\tan(Z)] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-8)}$$

where

σ_L	=	leveling error (arc seconds)
σ_I	=	inclination error
Z	=	measured zenith angle

Leveling errors affect the accuracy of horizontal angle measurements mainly when observing over steep vertical angles. This situation is common in monitoring embankment dams where reference monuments set on the crest of the dam are used to observe monuments set at the toe of the structure (or vice-versa). As a result, the measurements between the backsight and foresight stations will be subject to 'standing axis' error causing incorrect horizontal circle readings.

b. Standing Axis Correction. The inclination of the instrument's vertical axis can be measured and corrected for with a special observing technique. First, with the instrument properly leveled and centered, the inclined target (above or below) is directly sighted through the scope. With the theodolite vertical circle clamp locked, the vertical angle (V_{TAR}) is read and recorded, then the horizontal clamp is loosened. Next, the instrument is turned 90 degrees to the right of the LOS and the vertical circle (still locked) is again read and recorded (V_R). Next, the instrument is rotated 90 degrees to the left of the LOS and the vertical circle reading (still locked) in its new position is also recorded (V_L). The maximum value of the leveling error correction for a single pointing is half the difference of the right and left vertical circle readings multiplied by the tangent of the vertical angle initially measured to the inclined target.

$$LC = [\ (V_R - V_L) / 2\ ]\ \tan(V_{TAR}) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-9)}$$

where

LC	=	leveling correction (arc seconds)
V_R	=	recorded vertical angle right
V_L	=	recorded vertical angle left
V_{TAR}	=	vertical angle to target

The horizontal circle reading is corrected by this amount right or left per its sign (i.e., with a positive inclination value, the correction is added as a right deflection).

c. Predetermined Tolerance. Not every horizontal direction will need to be corrected for leveling error. The standing axis correction needs to be computed only for steep lines of sight. A vertical angle threshold value can be pre-determined from the leveling sensitivity of the instrument to decide if the correction needs to be applied on a given target sighting. This tolerance angle is found by solving the above correction equation for the V_{TAR} term with a known inclination error for the instrument. For example, with an instrument plate bubble sensitivity of 30 arc seconds (taken from manufacturer's instrument specifications), and a maximum allowable tolerance for the final correction value of 1 arc second; vertical angles greater than 10 degrees from horizontal would require the correction. On embankment dams, toe monument stations observed from reference stations on the dam crest at the opposite end of the structure will typically have vertical angles less than 10 degrees.

d. Internal Biaxial Compensator. Modern instruments can correct horizontal angle readings for slight mis-levelment error by employing a biaxial compensator. The compensator senses the degree of non-verticality of the vertical axis using two liquid sensors mounted along perpendicular horizontal axes within the instrument. Some instruments equipped with a biaxial compensator will automatically compute and apply corrections to the horizontal circle reading.

4-5. Instrument Centering Error.

a. General. Either forced centering or an optical plummet built into the tribrach are standard means for centering during instrument/target setups. Centering errors are caused when the vertical axis of the instrument (or target/prism) is not coincident with (i.e., collimated above) the reference mark on the control point monument.

b. Short Baselines. The uncertainty (standard deviation) of an angle measurement due to centering error can be approximated for the case where centering methods and distances between backsight and foresight stations are similar:

$$\sigma_b = \text{sqrt} [(\sigma_c^2) (\rho^2) (4 / D^2)] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-10)}$$

where

σ_b	=	angle uncertainty due to centering error
σ_c	=	centering standard deviation

ρ = 206264.8
D = distance between stations (mm)

The centering standard deviation (σ_c) is computed as:

$$\sigma_c = (0.5mm) (HI)$$

for tribrach optical plummets, and:

$$\sigma_c = (0.1mm) (HI)$$

for forced centering.

In each case the height of instrument (HI) is measured in meters. For example, a measurement made over a distance of 100 m using standard tripods and tribrachs (with optical plummet), can introduce as much as 3.1 arc seconds error in the horizontal angle. Therefore, taking repeated sets of angles (re-centering between sets) is recommended to reduce the effects of centering error. As the distance increases between the instrument and target stations, the influence of centering error is reduced. Therefore, centering errors will be significant for horizontal angle measurements that are made over very short baselines.

c. Optical Plummets. Nadir and zenith plummet surveying instruments (Figure 4-2) are specially designed for precise centering and collimation. These types of instruments are available commercially for geodetic, deformation monitoring, and mining surveying applications. Their use has been recommended for deformation surveys because high centering tolerances are required to ensure survey repeatability.

d. Reference Marks. Ground-based survey control monuments should be designed with a well-defined reference mark—see Figure 4-3. This visual feature will minimize difficulty in re-establishing an instrument or target over the reference point, thus, ensuring greater repeatability in centering. Further information on monuments and targets for deformation surveys can be found in Chapter 2 and in the references listed in Appendix A.

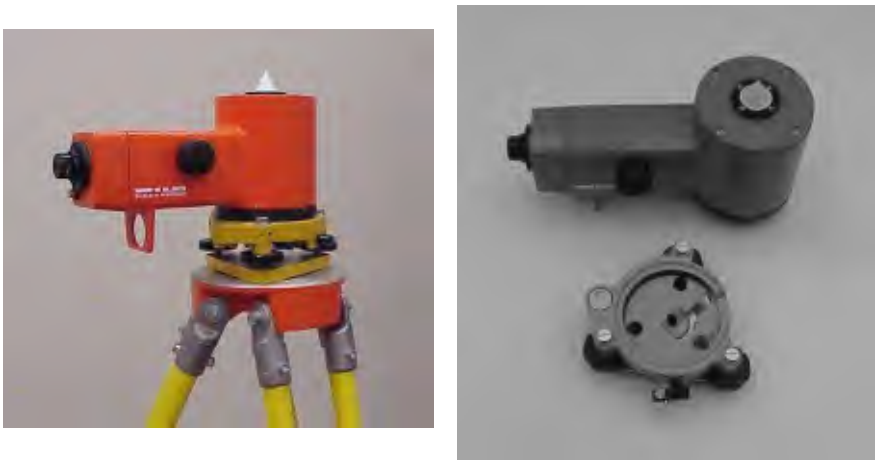


Figure 4-2. Nadir plummet instrument from Leica Co. Nadir plummets operate like an automatic level but establish a vertical LOS. The tribrach is centered over the surveyor's mark using the nadir plummet. Then a theodolite or a GPS antenna is placed in the tribrach by forced centering.

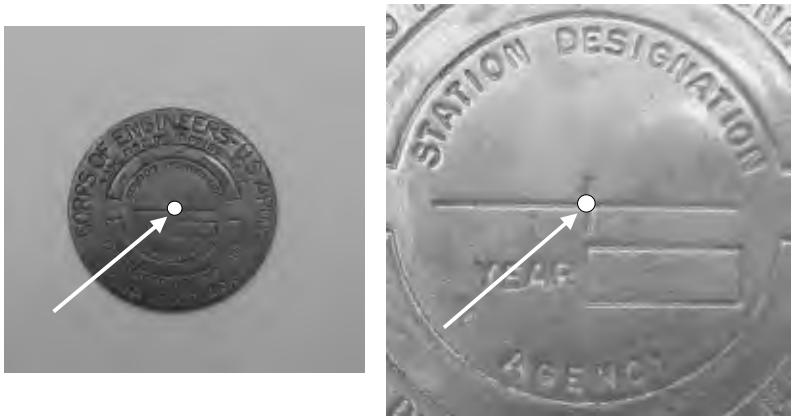


Figure 4-3. Comparison of optical plummet centering devices. The left-hand image shows the field-of-view and centering circle for a standard optical plummet fixed-mounted in a tribrach. The right-hand image shows the greater magnification and centering ability provided by a nadir plummet instrument. Both images show the same brass disk at an instrument height of approximately 1.5 m.

4-6. Horizontal Angle Measurement Error**.**

a. General. The precision (standard deviation) of horizontal angle measurements made with a theodolite can be predicted by a summation of variances as follows:

$$\sigma_{angl} = \text{sqrt}\,[\ \sigma^2_p + \sigma^2_r + \sigma^2_b + \sigma^2_L\ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-11)}$$

where

σ_{angl}	=	horizontal angle error (arc seconds)
σ_p	=	pointing error
σ_r	=	reading error
σ_b	=	centering error
σ_L	=	leveling error

The above variance components can be determined from the formulas presented in Sections 4-2 through 4-4.

b. Example Horizontal Angle Error. Using the above formulas, for an objective lens magnification equal to 30 times, and centering with a tribrach optical plummet with a 1.5 m HI, and a level bubble sensitivity of 20"/2 mm with a zenith angle of 85 degrees, and a 100-meter slope distance to the backsight and foresight stations, the precision of the horizontal angle is estimated to be approximately 3.5 arc seconds. Using this same example with two independent sets of repeated measurements, the standard deviation of the angle measurement is approximately 2.4 arc seconds (at the one-sigma level). Using an electronic theodolite equipped with biaxial compensator, leveling and reading error are negligible.

4-7. Electronic Distance Measurement Error**.**

a. General. The precision (standard deviation) of distance measurements made with EDM instruments may be expressed in a general form as:

$$\sigma = \text{sqrt}\,[\ a^2 + b^2 \cdot S^2\ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-12)}$$

where

a	=	errors of the phase measurement, centering, and calibration errors
b	=	scale error due to uncertainties in the determination of the refractive index and the calibration of the modulation frequency
S	=	measured distance

The standard deviation for near infrared (NIR) and lightwave carrier EDM instruments can be determined by the following summation of variance components:

$$\sigma_S = \text{sqrt}\ [\ \sigma^2_{res} + \sigma^2_c\ + \sigma^2_{cal} + \sigma^2_{ref}\ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-13)}$$

where

σ_S	=	slope distance measurement error
σ_{res}	=	resolution of instrument
σ_c	=	centering error
σ_{cal}	=	calibration error
σ_{ref}	=	refractive index correction error

(1) Resolution (σ_{res}). EDM Measurement resolution varies per each specific type of instrument, but is generally a function of both the modulated wavelength and its sensitivity to detecting signal phase difference. The constant value used for EDM resolution (σ_{res}) is normally given in the manufacturer's equipment specifications.

(2) Refraction Correction Error (σ_{ref}). The accuracy of the computed refractive index correction depends on the accuracy of the temperature and pressure values input into the refraction correction formula. To compute the effect of inaccurate temperature and pressure on the corrected distance, the following approximation can be used:

$$\sigma_{ref} = \text{sqrt}\ [\ [\ (\ \sigma^2_N\ )\ /\ N^2\ ]\cdot\ (S^2)\ \ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-14)}$$

where

σ_{ref}	=	error in refraction correction determination
σ_N	=	error in refractive index determination
N	=	estimated refractive index
S	=	slope distance

For a simplified estimate of the refraction correction error, an approximate formula for the above quantities can be used. The following refraction correction error equations neglect the partial water vapor pressure without creating an extreme distortion to the distance error estimation:

$$N = 1 + [\ (\ N_G\ )\ (\ P\ )\ ]\ /\ [\ (3.709)\ (\ T\ )\ ]\ /\ (1\times10^6) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-15)}$$

$$\sigma_N = \text{sqrt}\ [\ (A^2\ )\ (\sigma^2_{Temp}\ )\ +\ (\ B^2\ )\ (\sigma^2_{Press}\ )\ ]\ /\ [\ 1\times10^{12}\ ] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-16)}$$

where

N_G	=	$(287.604) + [(4.8864) / (\lambda^2)] + [(0.068) / (\lambda^4)]$
λ	=	EDM carrier frequency wavelength (micrometers)
T	=	273.15 + t
t	=	temperature in °C (std. = 15°C)

P	=	pressure in mbar (std. = 1013.25 mb)
A	=	$[(-N_G / 3.709) (P / T^2)]^2$
B	=	$[(N_G / 3.709) / (T)]^2$
σ_{Temp}	=	temperature measurement uncertainty
σ_{Press}	=	pressure measurement uncertainty

Relative humidity is the least critical parameter for determination of refractive index for light and NIR source EDM instruments. Temperature differences between stations can be substituted for temperature measurement uncertainty to give more conservative estimates of the refraction correction error. The error also can be determined sufficiently by simply multiplying the distance by 1 ppm for every °C of temperature measurement error to roughly obtain the standard deviation of the refraction correction term.

(3) Centering Error (σ_c). The estimated centering error for distance measurements (σ_c) can be calculated per formulas presented earlier in this chapter. For distance measurements, the centering error from both the instrument and target are combined:

$$\sigma_c = \text{sqrt} (\sigma^2_{inst} + \sigma^2_{tar}) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-17)}$$

where

σ_{inst}	=	instrument centering error
σ_{tar}	=	target centering error

(4) Calibration Error (σ_{cal}). Calibration error refers to the precision (standard deviation) of the correction constants determined from instrument calibrations. These are standard outputs of statistical tests performed during the calibration data reduction process (typically less than instrument resolution).

(5) Slope-to-Horizontal Distance Error. Uncertainty in horizontal distances stem from both the precision of the height difference determination and the precision of the slope distance measurement.

$$\sigma_{horz} = (S / H) \ \text{sqrt} (\sigma_s^2 + \sigma^2_{hdiff}) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-18)}$$

where

σ_{horz}	=	horizontal distance error
σ_S	=	slope distance error
σ_{hdiff}	=	height difference error
S	=	slope distance
H	=	horizontal distance

b. Example EDM Distance Error. With an EDM instrument resolution of 3.0 mm, carrier wavelength of 0.850 micrometer, and centering with a tribrach optical plummet with a 1.5 m HI for both the instrument and target stations, the resulting distance determination will have an uncertainty of approximately 3.2 mm (one-sigma level, at 15°C, 1013 mb, over a distance of 200 m), assuming temperature and pressure were measured to 1°C and 3 mb, respectively. If a temperature difference of 7°C is substituted for temperature error, the distance error estimate increases to 3.5 mm. Using the example values above and a height difference uncertainty of 3 mm, station height difference reductions add approximately 1 mm (one-sigma error) to the horizontal distance over a 20 m height difference.

4-8. Zenith Angle Measurement Error.

a. General. Zenith angle measurements are determined by the difference of two direction measurements, with one direction defined by the vertical axis of the theodolite. Theodolite-based zenith angle measurement precision can be predicted as follows:

$$\sigma_{zen} = \text{sqrt} (\sigma^2_p + \sigma^2_r + \sigma^2_I + \sigma_{ref}) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-19)}$$

where

σ_{zen}	=	zenith angle error (arc seconds)
σ_p	=	pointing error
σ_I	=	inclination error
σ_r	=	reading error
σ_{ref}	=	refraction error

The above variance components can be determined from the formulas presented in Sections 4-2 through 4-3. One of the main sources of systematic error in zenith angle measurement is due to atmospheric refraction. Zenith angle error can be roughly determined as a function of the slope distance:

$$\sigma_{ref} = \text{sqrt} [(S^2) / (4 \ R^2) (\rho^2) (4)] \qquad \text{(Eq 4-20)}$$

where

σ_{ref}	=	refraction error (arc seconds)
S	=	measured slope distance (m)
R	=	mean radius of the earth (~ 6374000 m)
ρ	=	206264.8

For example, over a distance of 100 m, the expected error due to refraction would be approximately 3 arc seconds.

b. Trigonometric Height Traversing. Station height differences determined from zenith angle and horizontal or slope distance measurements are not always as accurate as differential leveling. Methods of trigonometric heighting are warranted where differential leveling would accumulate excessive random error. If differential leveling is attempted over steep slopes between crest and toe stations on a dam, then most of the total error in the height difference is introduced during the numerous instrument setups. In cases like this, trigonometric height traversing can directly substitute for differential leveling methods.

4-9. Refraction of Optical Lines of Sight.

a. General. All types of measurements with optical instruments are affected by atmospheric refraction. The line is refracted when the air temperature is not homogeneous but varies across the LOS with a temperature gradient of dT/dy. Refraction effects are most pronounced in leveling and zenith angle measurements when the LOS is near the ground surface (e.g., 2 meters or less), and has a significantly different temperature than the layers of air above the surface. The horizontal effects of refraction may also be significant if the LOS of the observed horizontal direction runs parallel and very close to prolonged objects of a different temperature, such as walls in tunnels, galleries of long dams, or rows of transformers or turbines at a different temperature than air flowing in the center of the gallery.

b. Refraction Effects. If the temperature gradient (dT/dy) across the LOS is constant at all points of the line, then the line is refracted along a circular curve (Figure 4-4) producing an error ('e') of pointing to a survey target.

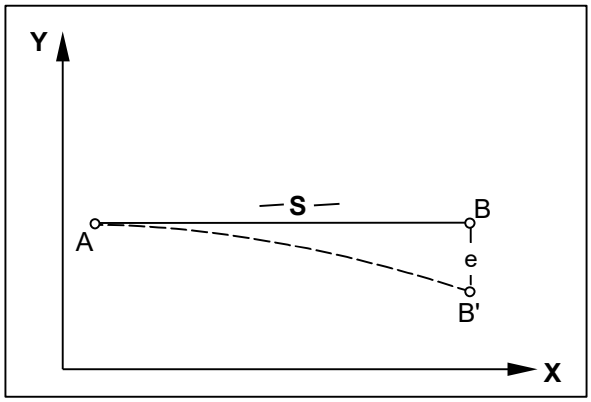


Figure 4-4. Refracted LOS.

The value of 'e' can be estimated from:

$$e = (k)(S^2) / (2R) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-21)}$$

where

k is a coefficient of refraction,
S is the distance to the target, and
R is the earth radius.

The coefficient of refraction (k) is a function of temperature gradient (dT/dy) and it can be approximated (for the average wavelength of the optical spectrum) by:

$$k = 508.8\ (P/T^2)(dT/dy) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-22)}$$

where

P is barometric pressure [in mb],
T is the average (absolute) air temperature in Kelvin, and
t in °C and T in Kelvin are related by T = 273.15 + t.

By taking the average radius of earth (R = 6371 km), and substituting (Eq 4-21) into (Eq 4-22), the pointing error may be expressed as a function of the gradient of temperature:

$$e = 3.9 \cdot (PS^2/T^2)(dT/dy) \cdot 10^{-5} \qquad \text{(Eq 4-23)}$$

For example, given a line of sight S = 200 m; temperature of air t = +30° C (i.e., T = 303.15 Kelvin); barometric pressure 1000 mb, and a constant gradient of temperature across the LOS, dT/dy = 0.5° C/m. From (Eq 4-23) above, we have:

k = 2.8 and e = 8.5 mm

Usually, the temperature gradient differs from one point to another, producing an irregular shape of the refracted LOS (Figure 4-5). In this case, the gradient of temperature and the coefficient of refraction also change along the LOS (x direction) and k is a function of position [k(x)]. The pointing error should be calculated from:

$$e = (1/R) \text{ integral } [\ k(S-x)\ dx\ ];\ \text{ from 0 to S} \qquad \text{(Eq 4-24)}$$

If gradients of temperature are measured at discrete points, say in the middle of each segment s_i in Figure 4-5, then the integral (Eq 4-24) can be solved using, for example, Simpson's rule, to obtain:

$$e = 1/2R\ \{s_i\ [k_1S+k_2(S-s_i)]+s_2\ [k_2(S-s_1)+k_3(S-s_i-s_2)]+\ldots$$
$$\ldots s_{n-1}\ [k_n\text{-}1(S-s_1-s_2\ldots s_{n-2})+k_n(S-s_1-s_2\ldots s_{n-2})]+s_{n-1}[k_n(S-s_1\ldots s_{n-1})]\} \qquad \text{(Eq 4-25)}$$

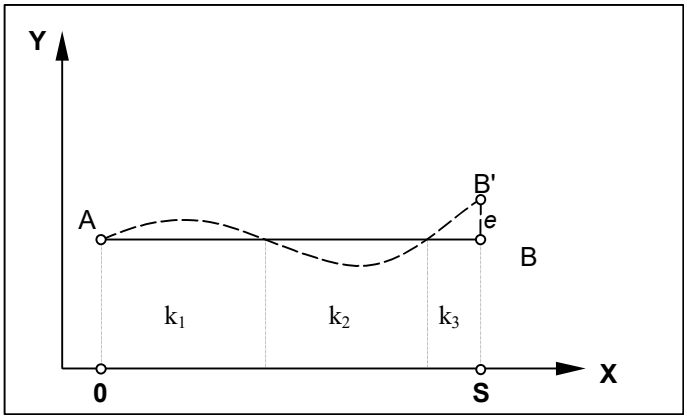


Figure 4-5. Effects of changeable gradients of temperature.

For example, let us take S = 200 m divided into four segments of s_i = 50 m each, and consider two cases:

(I) For $k_1 = 2.8$ (same as previous example)

where $k_2 = k_3 = k_4 = 0$.

In this first case, we assume that the refraction takes place only within the first 50 m from the instrument, while there is no refraction (dT/dy = 0) over the rest of the line.

(II) For $k_4 = 2.8$

where $k_1 = k_2 = k_3 = 0$.

In this second case, the refraction takes place only in the last segment, near the survey target.

For both cases:

t	=	30° C
P	=	1000 mb
R	=	6371 km.

From Eq 4-21 we have:

For Case I:	e	=	3.8 mm
For Case II:	e	=	1.9 mm

The effects of refraction are more significant near the instrument than near the target (see Figure 4-6). Thus, instruments should be located as far away as possible from any surfaces having different temperature than the surrounding air.

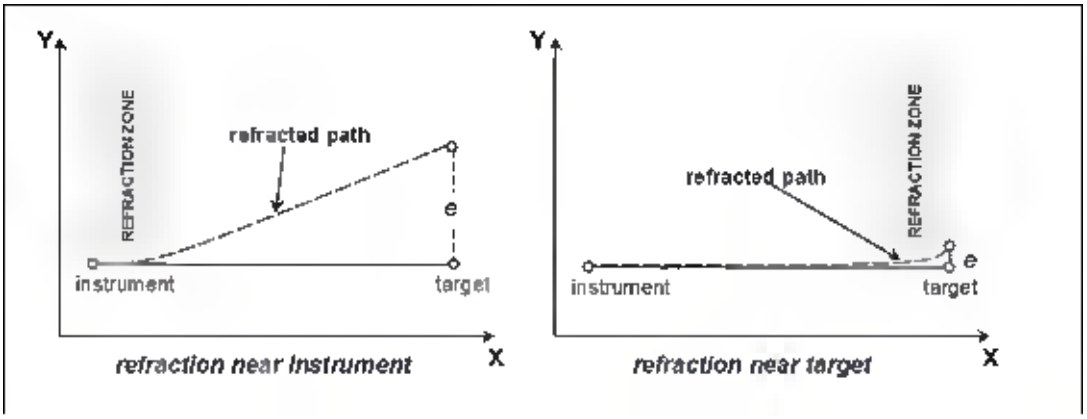


Figure 4-6. Effects of refraction near instrument vs. near target.

c. Effects on Alignment Measurements. In alignment surveys between two fixed stations A and B (Figure 4-7), the LOS from A is constrained to point to a target at B. If the gradient of temperature across the LOS is constant between A and B, then the alignment reference line will be refracted along a circular path with the largest error of alignment being in the middle between A and B. Even when the alignment surveys would be performed in segments (i.e., resetting the alignment telescope or laser in steps between A and B), the whole survey will follow the same refracted circular curve. For example, when using a HeNe laser ($\lambda = 0.63$ μm) the maximum error (Δy) in the center of the refracted path can be calculated from:

$$\Delta y = [(PS^2)/(101760\ T^2)](dT/dy) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-26)}$$

where

P is barometric pressure in [mb],
T is temperature in Kelvin, and
S is total length of the alignment line.

With example values of S = 500 m, T = 300 K, P = 1000 mb, and dT/dy = 0.2 C. The error of alignment is $\Delta y = 5.4$ mm.

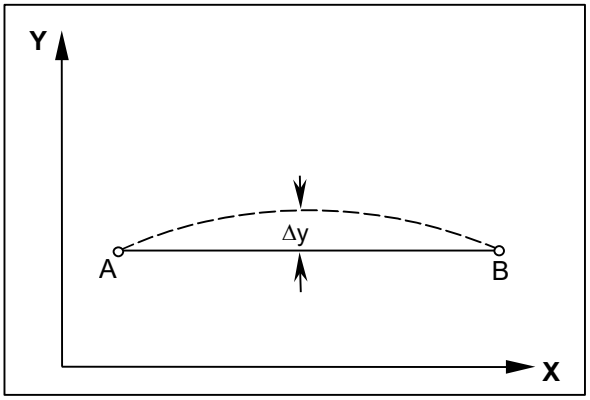


Figure 4-7. Refraction effects on alignment survey.

d. Methods of Reducing Refraction Effects. The effects of refraction can be reduced by:

(1) Avoiding LOSs running closer than 1 m from any prolonged surface that may have a different temperature than the surrounding air,

(2) Measuring the gradients of temperature with several temperature sensors of high precision (resolution of at least 0.05 degrees C) and calculating the refraction correction, or

(3) Using two sources of radiation of a different wavelength (i.e., dispersion method).

The first method is the most practical, but it does not assure a refraction-free LOS. The second method, though applicable in practice, requires special instrumentation and tedious measurements. The third method requires very expensive and difficult-to-acquire instrumentation and it is applicable only in scientific measurements of the highest precision (e.g., in industrial metrology). In deformation surveys, only the first method seems to be feasible. If both walls in narrow galleries are exposed to different temperature, for example, one wall being exposed to water and another to the sun radiation, even placing the alignment line in the center of the gallery may not sufficiently reduce the refraction effect. In the latter case, non-optical methods may be used in the displacement measurements.

e. Effects on Direction Measurements. Refraction occurs in deflection angle and direction measurements with optical theodolites. With a uniform temperature gradient over the length (S) of the LOS, the refraction error (e_{ref}) in arc seconds of the observed direction may be approximated by:

$$e_{ref} = (8'') [(S) (P) / (T^2)] (dT/dy) \quad \text{(Eq 4-27)}$$

where

S = distance between stations (m)

P	=	barometric pressure (mb)
T	=	temperature in Kelvin (T = 273.15 + t° C)
dT/dy	=	temperature gradient

For example, if a gradient of only 0.1°C/m persists over a distance of 500 m at P = 1000 mb and t = 27°C, it will cause a directional error of 4.4 arc seconds.

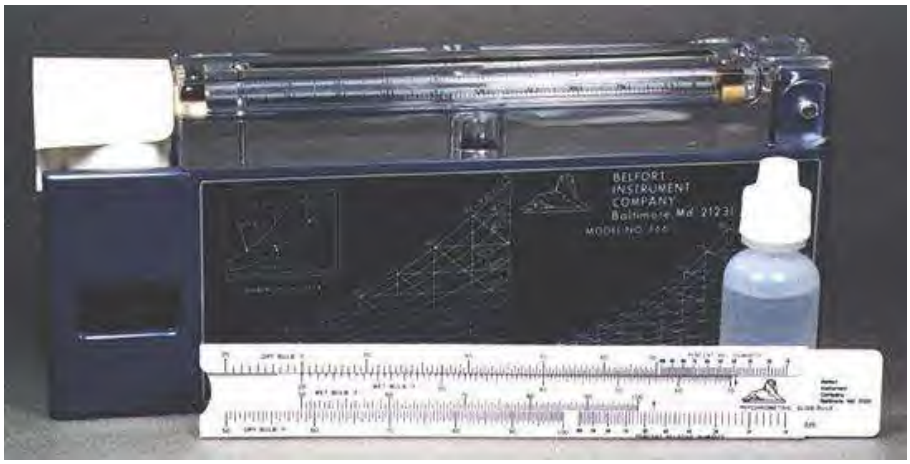


Figure 4-8. Aspirating Psychrometer from Belfort Instrument Co. Psychrometers are equipped with two thermometers, one with a wet bulb and one with a dry bulb. The wet bulb is covered with a wick that must be saturated with distilled water. A battery-operated fan in the aspirating psychrometer draws air over the bulbs. The cooling effect of evaporation produces a lower reading on the wet bulb, which is then used to determine the relative humidity. The dry bulb is read directly from the dry thermometer. These readings are used to compute the refractive index correction for the atmosphere in precise distance measurement.

4-10. Theodolite System Error.

a. General. Theodolite instruments used for angle measurement can have small misalignments in the system attributed to its manufacturing or normal wear from repeated use and handling. Theodolite mis-adjustments produce systematic error in angle measurements. For example:

-Trunnion axis not perpendicular to LOS
-Horizontal axis not perpendicular to vertical axis
-Vertical circle index error
-Inclined cross-hairs
-Plate eccentric to rotation axis

b. Elimination of Instrument Errors. The main technique used to eliminate the above instrument biases is to observe the target in both the direct and reverse positions of the theodolite at all times. All of the systematic errors noted above will cancel when measurements are made in two positions of the theodolite (e.g., double centering).

4-11. Reflector Alignment Error**.**

a. General. Older model reflector prisms can introduce small errors in both distance and direction measurements due to mis-orientation. The magnitude of the error is based on factors such as the EDM wavelength, the prism dimensions, the refractive index of the prism glass, and the horizontal and vertical misalignment angle (non-perpendicular to the LOS). It has been determined for older prism designs that less than 0.5 mm error in distance will be caused by a misalignment angle under 10 degrees from the LOS, which is well within the normal ability to point the reflector toward the EDM. With directions (horizontal and vertical), the error can be limited to less than 1 arc second (over 500 m) with a misalignment of less than 10 degrees. The angular error is highly dependent on the distance from the instrument in that shorter distances will produce larger errors.

b. Reflector Design. Reflector prisms in use today have been specifically re-designed to minimize the influence of misalignments on distance measurement accuracy. With standard prisms, the resulting distance errors are negligible for small misalignments. However, attention to consistent and accurate pointing of the prism toward the instrument is still recommended practice.

4-12. EDM Scale Error**.**

a. Temperature Frequency Drift. Short-term drift of the oscillator frequency in EDM instruments is most likely to occur during the warm-up of its internal electronic components. If a frequency drift persists throughout the course of a survey, then the measurements will contain a time dependent bias that can reach a maximum drift value of up to 3 ppm (depending on the instrument and environment).

b. Frequency Drift Due to Aging. Frequency drift can also occur as a result of mechanical aging of the oscillator crystal over time, so that the EDM develops a bias in its internal measuring scale (in some instruments less than 1 ppm per year). This can be a critical factor in deformation surveys when the same EDM instrument is used for repeated surveys and the resulting observations are compared over time.

c. Scale Error Calibration. For precise surveying applications, it is recommended that the EDM be calibrated for scale error at least once a year. The most common method for EDM scale factor calibration is from measurements made over a certified calibration baseline. Scale error is determined by comparing a series of distances measured along a linear array of stations where the station coordinates are precisely known. The known distances between stations are

differenced from the product of the measured distance and an unknown scale factor, as shown in the following linear equation:

$$[(k) (S)] - (D) = 0 \qquad \text{(Eq 4-28)}$$

where

k	=	unknown scale factor
S	=	measured distance
D	=	fixed distance (known)

The horizontal distance measurements (S) are processed together in a linear least squares adjustment to solve for the unknown scale factor parameter (k). Once the scale error has been determined, all subsequently measured distances are multiplied by the constant scale factor (k) to yield a corrected distance.

d. Frequency Counter Methods. An alternative to using a baseline for EDM scale calibration is to send the instrument back to the manufacturer for a direct reading of its oscillator frequency. This laboratory procedure uses a high grade electronic frequency counter to compare the actual and reference frequencies of the EDM under controlled conditions. The instrument must have a built-in port connector so that the frequency may be sampled to solve for the instrument scale factor.

4-13. EDM Prism Zero Error**.**

a. Additive Constant or Zero Error. The additive constant is an unknown systematic bias that is present in all distance measurements made with a particular EDM instrument-prism combination. The bias is usually small for instruments using light waves. The bias is an absolute constant offset that exists between the optical and mechanical centers of the reflector prism and the electrical center of the EDM instrument when centered over the setup station. Distances uncorrected for zero error will produce discrepancies in the final station coordinates of survey points. These can be detected from check measurements; such as multiple observations made over a network of points or when more than two distance intersections are compared as a check on the monument positions.

b. Correction Determination. Measured distances can be corrected for zero error by a determination of the additive constant of the instrument-prism combination on a calibration baseline. The calibration process relies on comparing distances that are measured over a set of fixed stations. The four-station baseline and observing configuration shown in Figure 4-9 allows each of the six *measured* distances (m_i) to be written as the sum of each true distance (d_i) and one unknown constant bias term (z).

$$m_i = (d_i + z) \quad \text{for } i = 1 \text{ through } 6$$

This basic equation is repeated for each observed station-pair (p_i) along the baseline and the method of parametric linear least squares is used to solve for the constant term (z). For example, each measured and true distance can be expressed using station coordinates as:

$$
\begin{aligned}
m_1 &= (p_2 - p_1) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_1 = p_2 - p_1 \\
m_2 &= (p_3 - p_1) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_2 = p_3 - p_1 \\
m_3 &= (p_4 - p_1) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_3 = p_4 - p_1 \\
m_4 &= (p_3 - p_2) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_4 = p_3 - p_2 \\
m_5 &= (p_4 - p_2) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_5 = p_4 - p_2 \\
m_6 &= (p_4 - p_3) + z \qquad \text{i.e., } d_6 = p_4 - p_3
\end{aligned}
$$

since

$$
\begin{aligned}
m_1 &= -p_1 + p_2 + 0 + 0 + z \\
m_2 &= -p_1 + 0 + p_3 + 0 + z \\
m_3 &= -p_1 + 0 + 0 + p_4 + z \\
m_4 &= 0 - p_2 + p_3 + 0 + z \\
m_5 &= 0 - p_2 + 0 + p_4 + z \\
m_6 &= 0 + 0 - p_3 + p_4 + z
\end{aligned}
$$

By setting the coordinate of the initial point (p_1) to zero, leaving three unknown coordinates (p_2, p_3, and p4) and one unknown constant (z), this system of equations can be represented in matrix form as:

$$A\,x = b$$

where

$$
A = \begin{vmatrix}
+1 & 0 & 0 & +1 \\
0 & +1 & 0 & +1 \\
0 & 0 & +1 & +1 \\
-1 & +1 & 0 & +1 \\
-1 & 0 & +1 & +1 \\
0 & -1 & +1 & +1
\end{vmatrix}
$$

$$x = [p_2 \quad p_3 \quad p_4 \quad z]^T$$

$$b = [m_1 \quad m_2 \quad m_3 \quad m_4 \quad m_5 \quad m_6]^T$$

The unknown parameter (z) is common to each measurement so an over determined set of measurements is used to detect the discrepancy it causes between measurements. The least squares solution:

$$x = (A^T P A)^{-1} A^T P b$$

uses a diagonal weight matrix (P) populated with the inverse of the variances computed for each distance measurement. In practice, 5 to 7 fixed points are needed, which adds to the observing time, but also provides sufficient redundancy for statistically testing the significance of the additive constant parameter. National Geodetic Survey (NGS) standards for baseline calibration recommend a four-station baseline to simultaneously solve for both the scale factor and the additive constant, but this requires measurements both forward and backward from each station and uses *known* distances between stations. In either case, standard data reductions must be applied to the measurements (e.g., refractive index and slope distance reductions) before solving for the additive constant. Software applications are available from NGS that cover all aspects of EDM baseline calibration including data collection and associated least squares computations. The residuals from the data adjustment should be plotted and examined visually for any obvious trends that would indicate there are systematic errors remaining in the measurements. The resulting calibration constant is added to each measured distance, with an opposite algebraic sign, to obtain the corrected distance. The accuracy of the correction itself will depend on the number of observations made and their precision.

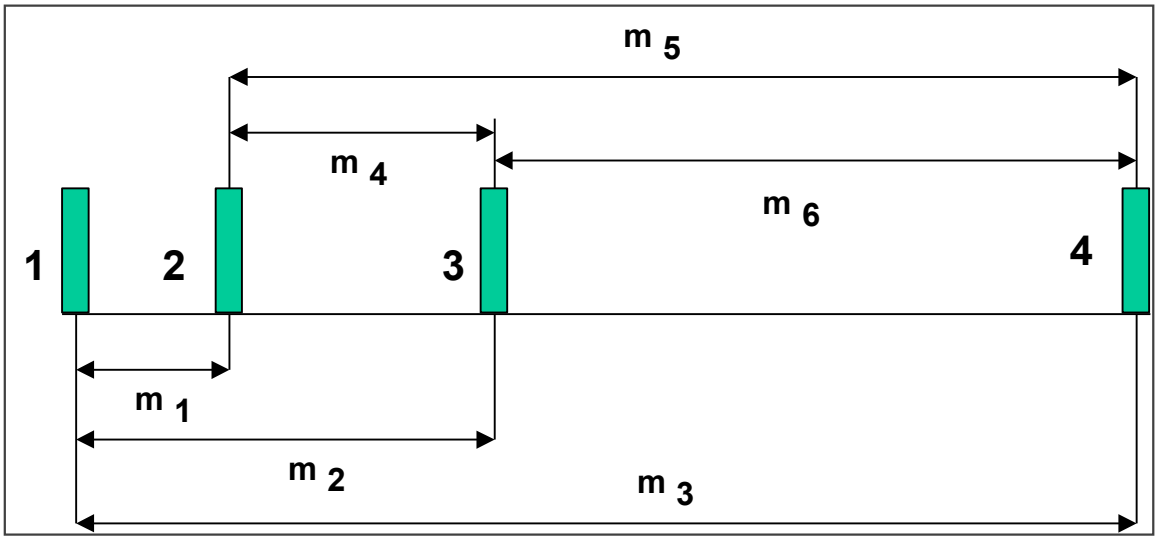


Figure 4-9. Zero error calibration baseline concept.

4-14. EDM Cyclic Error**.** Stray radiation and signal interference inside the EDM unit can occur at the same phase as the internal reference signal. A sinusoidal pattern of deviations in the measured phase can systematically change the distance measurements. The stability of the EDM internal electronics can also vary with age, therefore, the cyclic error can change significantly over time. Cyclic error is inversely proportional to the strength of the returned signal, so its effects will increase with increasing distance (i.e., low signal return strength). Calibration procedures exist to determine the EDM cyclic error that consist of taking bench measurements through one full EDM modulation wavelength, and then comparing these values to known distances and modeling any cyclic trends found in the discrepancies. This procedure requires a

specialized calibration baseline designed to detect the presence of cyclic error from the spacing of the measurement intervals.

4-15. Calibration Baselines.

a. General. Construction of an EDM calibration baseline requires preparation for the design, layout, monumentation, and proposed calibration techniques. It should be noted that establishing a calibration baseline and keeping it in good order can be expensive and time consuming when maintenance is considered. Use of an established baseline that is available within the local area would be far more economical than to build a new facility.

b. Standard Baselines. A standard baseline design recommended by the NGS should be used for EDM instrument calibrations. Guidance is provided on EDM calibrations and baselines in the following publications:

- National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) Technical Memorandum
- National Ocean Service (NOS) NGS-8, Establishment of Calibration Base Lines, and
- NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NGS-10, Use of Calibration Base Lines

These documents must be consulted before building a new calibration baseline and for conducting EDM instrument calibrations following NGS methods.

c. Specialized Baselines. NGS calibration baselines have at least four monuments set in an alignment that deviates no more than 5 degrees of arc, which provides 12 measured distances in a complete calibration session—see Figure 4-9. NGS conventions for baseline design have monuments set out at 0, 150, 400-430, and 1,000-1,400 m along a straight line. If this spacing is not convenient to the local terrain, it is recommended to place the intermediate monuments at an even multiple of the unit wavelength of the EDM instrument to be calibrated (e.g., multiples of 10 m). This 'multiple of 10' rule of thumb is meant to ensure that the EDM phase detector will sample the return signal at the same point along the carrier wave for each measurement (i.e., resolve the partial wavelength at the same point along the carrier wave to avoid the effects of cyclic error in the calibration process). Alternative designs for calibration baselines can be developed for special purposes (see Rueger, 1990). A determination of monument spacing for specialized calibration baselines is made using baseline design formulas with the following input parameters:

-total length of baseline,
-EDM instrument reference wavelength, and
-total number of baseline monuments.

Trial and error combinations of different values for the above design parameters can be tested and the results examined to evaluate each baseline configuration. Designing a specialized baseline is warranted where unique EDM resolution, signal frequency, and range limits are

encountered. A baseline design should provide distance combinations that evenly span the working range of the EDM, and the length of the baseline should be optimized at the minimum range of the EDM when operating under poor atmospheric conditions with a single reflector prism.

d. Tripod Method. The EDM/prism calibration process (i.e., additive constant determination) can be made using a very short (30-50 m) alignment of at least five tripods instead of on a permanent baseline. Good results have been obtained by this method; however, forced centering on tripods is less stable than on pillars. For longer baselines, the stations should be no more than four minutes of arc out of line, and the tops of the tripods should be set in as straight a vertical alignment as possible relative to each other (within a few cm or less). Accurate tripod arrangement minimizes deviations in the LOS from any single instrument setup station and will speed up the field observations. Precise leveling is used to determine the elevation of each ground point (monument) and fixed height offset measurements are made to each (tripod mounted) prism. Elevation and offset measurements are made to reduce the slope distances to horizontal distances.

e. Stability. If pillars are selected as monuments, it should be recognized that their stability can be influenced by various types of movements, namely, those due to external forces, settlement and tilt, dry shrinkage of concrete, swelling, and thermal expansion. The horizontal instability of concrete pillars due to thermal expansion is based on the operating height, width, and temperature change. Pillars should be set below the frost line and insulated in cold regions. The initial observation of baseline distances is delayed until the concrete has set through at least one freeze-thaw cycle.

f. Site Selection. Permanent baselines should be easily accessible allowing transport and setup of the instrument and prisms. A roadway alongside the baseline will speed-up the movement of equipment and personnel between stations. Stations should have about 20 feet clearance on either side, and should be set back 1/4 mile from high voltage lines and transmitters, and 100 feet from metal fences. Reconnaissance of the proposed baseline location (site visit, aerial photographs, topographic, geologic maps, etc.) is recommended to investigate soil type, relief, atmospheric conditions (avoid completely unvegetated areas with no shade). Once a suitable location has been found, a preliminary survey and stake out of temporary points can be made at the proposed distances.

4-16. Equipment for Baseline Calibration. A list of the equipment required for establishing a calibration baseline is provided below. Excluding the first two items (theodolite and EDM) these are also recommended for conducting calibration sessions.

-1 Theodolite (Total Station)
-2 Electronic Distance Meter
-Computer
-NGS calibration software

-1 Nadir Plummet instrument
-1 Calibrated prism and mounting bracket
-Tribrachs and tripods for each station
-2 Communication radios
-2 Psychrometers
-2 Barometers
-2 Thermistors (fan driven)
-2 Tripods and poles for thermistors
-2 Thermistor recording and reading units
-12-volt battery power supply
-1 Fixed height measuring rods or hand tape measure
-2 Shade umbrellas

Calibration baselines are established with an instrument that has a higher precision than the instruments that are intended for calibration (ideally by an order of magnitude), however this is not always feasible for modern EDM instruments because of their extremely high precision.

4-17. Procedures for Baseline Calibration**.**

a. General. Procedures for conducting measurements on a calibration baseline consist of setting the instrument at the baseline initial station and recording the distances to all of the others in sequence. The instrument is then moved up to the next pillar in line and the process is repeated until all of the baseline stations have been occupied (all distance combinations forward and backward are usually observed from each instrument setup). With a four-monument baseline, a total of 12 distances are used to solve four unknown baseline coordinates and each calibration parameter. Refer to Section 4-15 b.

b. Preparation. First, set up the tripods and tribrachs over each station on the baseline. The tripods should be close to the same elevation (i.e., in an alignment or with a slightly up-sloping tilt away from the zero station to maintain visibility throughout the length of the baseline). The tripod is leveled by eye so that the tripod head on which the tribrach is mounted is as near level as possible. The tripod head is further leveled by mounting a calibrated Wild type target (with precise level bubble) into the tribrach, and then adjusting the legs to the position where the bubble is level in four positions under rotation.

c. Collimation. Accurate centering is critical for the measurement of baseline distances. After the tripod head is level, the target is replaced by a precision Nadir Plummet having an internal level compensator. The tribrach and Nadir Plummet assembly is then translated (without rotation) until it is centered. The collimation is then checked in four positions (90 degree rotations) around the center point. If the centering is not well-established, then slight adjustments are made to the centering and leveling of the tribrach until it is collimated. The leveling screws of the tribrach should be moved as little as possible because the offset from the tripod head to the top of the tribrach mounting plate needs to be measured and recorded, so if it is

kept constant, a pre-calibrated value for the prism height above the tripod head can be used (reference marks are sometimes painted on the leveling screws and on the upper tribrach housing to verify the offset is correct for the setup). The height of the tripod head is measured in four positions using the hand tape measure and a mean value is added to the constant height offset value between the theodolite optical center and the base of the tribrach (known beforehand), giving the height of instrument above the monument. This value is then added to the known elevation of the baseline monument.

d. Calibration Procedures. The procedures for the baseline calibration presented below are to be repeated for each instrument setup. The observing procedures used to establish coordinates on a new baseline follow the same basic methodology used for actual instrument calibration.

(1) The instrument is placed at the baseline initial point and powered on while the prism is set up at the next station along the baseline. Thermistors are mounted on a vertical 3 m pole, one at the top, and one at the level of the instrument, perpendicular to the direction of the sun, and oriented so that the front end faces into the prevailing wind. The two thermistors measure the temperature gradient, and are capable of reading to a tenth of a degree Celsius. A barometer is placed near the instrument and is capable of reading to one hundredth of an inch of mercury (Hg). A similar thermistor and barometer arrangement is set up at the prism station. A psychrometer reading (Figure 4-8) is initially recorded, and thereafter, repeated only when the instrument is moved to the next setup. The top/bottom thermistor and barometer readings are recorded on both ends of the measured line at the start and finish of the measurements for each EDM setup (two different EDM instruments are used at each station when establishing a new baseline).

(2) Mount the first EDM to the theodolite and point it in the direct position at the center of the forward target (Note: it is important that the EDM ppm value is set to zero). Obtain adequate return signal strength and then measure five consecutive distances to the forward target. The values are recorded to the tenth of a millimeter. Reverse the scope and read five more distances. At the conclusion of the set, read and record the temperatures and pressure at both the instrument and prism stations, (the exact same procedure is then followed for the second EDM instrument when establishing a new baseline).

(3) Once the measurements for one baseline distance segment are finished (i.e., one station pair), the instrument stays at the same station and the prism moves to the next point along the baseline.

(4) At each instrument setup distances are measured to every other monument forward and back.

(5) If computed values for the instrument-prism constant exceed instrument tolerances, then the measurements must be repeated.

e. Calibration Results. Field book records should include the following information:

-distance measurements,
-from station name,
-to station name,
-instrument serial number,
-prism serial number,
-date and time of observation,
-height of instrument/prism,
-meteorological observations,
-units of measurement,
-geometrical reductions, and
-calculation of calibration parameters.

This information is compiled into a calibration report for use in data reductions.

4-18. Sources of Error in GPS Measurements.

a. General. The observation equation for the GPS carrier phase can be written in length units as:

$$\Phi = \rho + c\,(dT - dt) + \lambda N - d_{ion} + d_{trop} + d_{mp} + noise \qquad \text{(Eq 4-29)}$$

where ρ represents the geometric range between the satellite and receiver, c represents the speed of light in a vacuum, dT and dt represent the receiver and satellite clock errors respectively, λ represents the signal wavelength, N represents the integer cycle ambiguity, d_{ion} represents the phase advance due to the ionosphere, d_{trop} represents the delay due to the neutral atmosphere (predominantly the troposphere), and d_{mp} represents the delay due to multipath in the antenna environment, and noise in the signal. Additional small terms such as satellite and receiver hardware delays have been ignored. By differencing observations recorded simultaneously at two receivers from two satellites, any common mode errors at either the satellites or the receivers should cancel. The error terms left in the double difference observable are d_{ion}, d_{trop}, and d_{mp}— as the effect of receiver error, satellite clock error, and satellite position error are almost completely removed. A differential ambiguity term (DN) is retained in the double difference equation. The noise component has been amplified in the double difference, by assuming that noise is equal for the raw observations at two receivers, and the noise of the double difference observation is then approximately twice as large. This increase is the trade-off accepted for greatly reducing the impact of the clock errors. Over very short baselines with negligible height difference, the trade-off is even more worthwhile, since atmospheric effects almost completely cancel.

b. Cycle Slips. Correctly fixing ambiguities requires continuous carrier phase observations with no cycle discontinuities over the observation time series. Any cycle slips must be removed

prior to estimating the station coordinates. The data sets from each occupied station are pre-processed individually to scan the carrier phase observation time series for large jumps and excessively noisy data. An output file of the pseudorange and carrier phases is produced that is free of large cycle slips. Cycle slips of a small magnitude (at the level of several tens of cycles) are best detected from the time series of double difference observations, where many of the potential biases have canceled. Cycle-slip detection is generally implemented as an automated data cleaning process that depends on high quality data and sufficient redundancy to allow lots of data to be rejected (sometimes unnecessarily).

c. Baseline Length. A simple expression for relating common mode GPS range error (Δ r) to baseline error (Δ b) uses the ratio of baseline length (b) to satellite range (R):

$$(\Delta b / b) = (\Delta r / R) \qquad \text{(Eq 4-30)}$$

For satellite range of 20,000 km and baseline length of 1 km, a common mode error of 20 m is necessary to produce 1 mm of baseline error. This relationship emphasizes the advantage to maintaining short baselines on high precision networks. Short baselines should limit common GPS errors to less than 20 m and permit cancellation of highly correlated errors.

d. Atmospheric Delay. Ionosphere and troposphere delays are expected to be highly correlated over short baselines, although small residual effects may persist depending on atmospheric differences between receiver stations. For this error to increase to harmful levels would require baselines over 1 km, or very substantial station height differences (which may occur on some dam sites). Uncorrelated delay bias is modeled and removed from the data on medium range baselines (10-100 km). However, these correction schemes are not accurate enough to determine slight differential biases at short baseline noise levels.

e. L1/L2 Data Combinations. GPS software will allow the user to process data in combinations of L1 and L2 carrier frequencies, each having different levels of observation noise. Any combination of these two observables (e.g., ionosphere-free L1/L2) will increase noise levels due to error propagation. Over short baselines the ionospheric effect is expected to cancel so there is no advantage to be gained by using anything other than the L1 observations for positioning purposes. L2 observations however, could be useful for cycle slip detection and data quality control. The L2 residuals are approximately 1.5 times noisier (RMS 6.6 mm) than the L1 residuals (RMS 4.4 mm), and the L3 residuals are approximately 3 times noisier (RMS 12.8 mm). Figure 4-10 shows how some of the structure in the L1 residuals is magnified by the L3 combination. The symmetric pattern of the residuals is due to the particular formulation of the double difference observations.

f. Satellite Geometry. The spatial distribution of satellites in the sky will influence how random error propagates into the final position. Since GPS satellites are not uniformly distributed, certain areas of the sky will have less satellite coverage at a given time. If GPS satellites are evenly and widely spread out, then stronger geometric intersections are possible for

code range positioning and carrier phase measurements. Because there is total lack of sky coverage below the GPS antenna, vertical Dilution of Precision (DOP) values and GPS height errors can be 1.5–2 times greater, respectively, than Horizontal DOP (HDOP) and horizontal position errors.

g. Blunders. Operator mistakes produce large discrepancies in processed GPS data. Only system redundancy built into the observing scheme can detect blunders—see Section IV. Two common survey blunders are incorrect antenna height measurements and incorrect filenames entered into the receiver.

h. Multipath. GPS signal interference is a major source of systematic error in GPS monitoring surveys. Multipath signals are a predominant cause of interference in GPS carrier phase measurements over short baselines. See Chapter 8 for more information on GPS multipath.

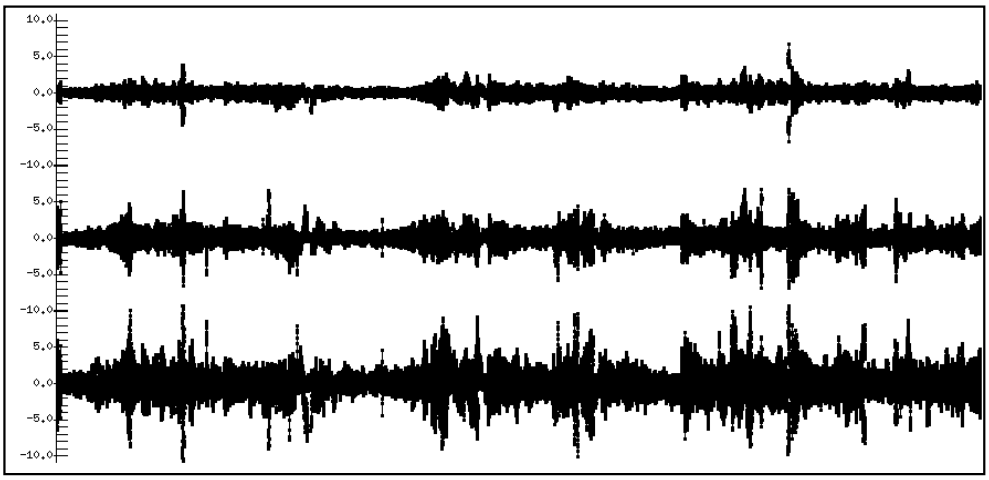


Figure 4-10. Typical carrier phase residual noise levels from double difference processing; from top to bottom, (a) GPS L1 frequency, (b) GPS L2 frequency, and (c) GPS L1/L2 widelane. combination.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 5

Angle and Distance Observations: Theodolites, Total Stations, and EDM

5-1. Scope**.** This chapter describes the field procedures for measuring angles with precision theodolites and measuring distances using electronic distance measurement (EDM) systems. Both these operations are combined when using electronic total stations.

Figure 5-1. Total Station set up to collect data on Libby Dam (from USACE AGC).

5-2. Instrument and Reflector Centering Procedures**.** Accurate centering of instruments, reflectors, or tribrachs, over the monument reference marks (as illustrated in Figure 5-1) is a critical procedure for collecting deformation measurements. Specifications for instrument/prism centering are presented below for tribrach optical plummets, nadir plummets, and forced centering.

a. Built-in optical plummet. Tribrach centering procedures apply to equipment with an optical plummet incorporated in the instrument or with a detachable tribrach that will rigidly attach to the instrument.

(1) Calibration. Tribrach optical plummets must be calibrated at the beginning of each project using the procedures outlined in the manufacturer's manual. Failure to perform, certify, and record this calibration process can be grounds for rejecting all subsequent data obtained with an uncalibrated tribrach.

(2) Tolerances. Tribrachs must be collimated over the object point mark to an accuracy of ±1mm using the built-in optical plummet. Tripod heads must be aligned as nearly horizontal as is possible prior to final centering procedures.

(3) Leveling. Final tribrach leveling and centering must be performed using a level vial from either a mounted theodolite or a standard Wild target. The built-in circular level bubble is not considered accurate enough for this process and should only be used for rough tripod head alignment. All centering leveling vials should be calibrated at the beginning of each project and this fact recorded.

(4) Equipment mounting. Once the tripods and tribrachs have been accurately centered over each end of the line, then the instrument and reflector may be inserted into the tribrachs without further adjustment. Extreme care must be taken to avoid disturbing the tribrach during the insertion and measurement process.

(5) Check observations. Upon completion of all observations from a particular tripod, a final level and centering check must be performed to insure no movement has occurred during this process. If significant movement is detected during this final check, then the entire observation process must be repeated.

b. Nadir plummet. A nadir plummet (Figure 4-2) can be used for centering instead of the tribrach optical plummet. A nadir plummet is a precision centering device with a built-in automatic level for use in vertical sighting and collimation. Some models have the capability to define the plumb line to 1 part in 200,000. These plummets have up to five (5) times greater magnification than the optical plummet supplied with the standard tribrach. The station reference mark (no larger than 1 mm in diameter), may need to be artificially illuminated under low light conditions for optimal viewing under this increased magnification. Nadir plummet centering should be conducted as follows.

(1) After the tripod is set up over the reference mark, the tripod head is leveled as closely as possible in two perpendicular directions using a tribrach with a target and its sensitive level bubble.

(2) Once the tribrach is leveled, the nadir plummet is exchanged with the target in the tribrach and then precisely centered over the mark by a series of fine translation adjustments of the tribrach.

(3) Final collimation is confirmed by observing the mark under rotation in four perpendicular directions about the plummet axis and by re-observing the tribrach level in two perpendicular directions with the target level vial.

c. Forced centering. The highest centering accuracies can be achieved using forced centering techniques. A centering uncertainty of 0.1 mm/m can be expected for trivet/pillar plate combinations, permanent threaded pins, and machined sleeve-type insert pins. If possible, both the instrument and reflector should be mounted by forced-centering.

(1) Forced centering pins. Threaded pins on pillars will be used in forced centering mode. Tribrachs with standard target level vials may be used to level tribrachs directly on threaded pins or over plugs.

(2) Tribrach and tripod combinations. With tripods, standard tribrachs should be used as a forced centering mount. Interchangeable tribrachs will be used such that the instrument or reflector may be readily exchanged without affecting centering of the tripod/tribrach mount.

(3) Reflector rods. Threaded aluminum rods for direct insert in monitoring plugs may be used to support reflectors. When reflector rods are screwed directly into grouted plugs, the same rod will be used for each successive project survey. Therefore, the rod number should be recorded so that the same rod is always used at a particular plug. Reflector HI should be kept as low as possible to minimize the effects of potential non-verticality of the rods.

d. Instrument stability. In precise surveys, towers, stands, and tripods must be substantial. The use of driven stakes or some type of quick setting cement or dental plaster for tripod leg support may be required. Catwalks that provide support away from tripod legs may be necessary under some soil or platform conditions to ensure that the instrument/reflector is unaffected by nearby motion. Use of fixed pillars is always preferred over less-rigid tripods, if possible.

5-3. Angle and Direction Observations**.**

a. General. When using an optical or electronic theodolite for angle measurement, it will be accurately plumbed over the occupied point by either forced centering, attaching the theodolite to the point with a tribrach, or using a tripod and tribrach with an optical plummet, as applicable.

b. Specifications. The following specifications are provided for angle and direction observations:

(1) Repetitions. Both horizontal and zenith angles will be observed in at least four sets. The instrument will be re-centered and re-leveled between each set. With well-designed targets and proper methodology, an angle measurement accuracy of 1" is possible with precision electronic theodolites if four sets of observations are taken in two positions of the telescope.

(2) Double centering. Face left and face right (direct and reverse) point and reads will be made for all targets in all theodolite work. The requirement of two positions must always be followed to eliminate errors caused by mechanical misalignment of the theodolite's axial system.

(3) Reading precision. All horizontal and vertical circle readings will be recorded to 0.1 arc second.

(4) Horizon closure. For each station pair (i.e., angle between the backsight and foresight), the method of observing independent angles will be used. A full set will consist of a direct angle measurement and a separate horizon closure angle measurement. Their sum will be taken to find the closure to 360 degrees.

(5) Parallax. Sighting parallax must be minimized during each pointing operation. The reticule should be focused first and then the objective lens.

(6) Magnification. The theodolite must have a minimum telescope magnification of 30 times or better.

(7) Leveling sensitivity. Theodolites must have a plate level vial with a sensitivity of 20 seconds per 2 mm graduation or better. Once measurements are made, the level of the instrument will be checked. If found to be greater than 10 seconds, the measurements will be repeated with a leveled instrument. When using an electronic theodolite and biaxial compensator, the instrument will be leveled within 2 minutes of arc.

(8) Observing conditions. Avoid measurements close to any surface that has a different temperature than the surrounding air (walls of structures or soil exposed to the sun's radiation, walls of deep tunnels, etc.). If any suspicion of refraction influence arises, the surveys should be repeated in different conditions to randomize its effect. Ideally, observations should be limited to days when the weather conditions are fairly neutral (e.g., cloudy day with a light breeze). Days with temperature extremes should be avoided. If the instrument must be used when the temperature is hot, then it should be protected from the sun by an umbrella.

c. Data Reduction Procedures. Angles collected by the method of repeated sets will be reduced to a mean value using the station adjustment technique (see example below).

(1) Mean value. For each sighted direction in the set, determine the face-left and face-right mean direction value, starting with the backsight observation.

(2) Reduced value. Subtract the initial or backsight circle reading from the mean direction value of the foresight in the measurement set (backsight value will then be reduced to zero).

(3) Independent sets. Repeat the above procedures for each of the four, independent, direct angle sets and calculate the mean value for each direction,

(4) Horizon closure. Repeat each of the above steps for each corresponding horizon closure angle set.

(5) Closure correction. Difference the sum of the means of the direct and closure sets from 360 degrees. Distribute the misclosure equally to correct the final mean reduced value from each set. The general form for the misclosure is expressed as:

$$W = 360° - (\beta_d + \beta_c) \qquad \text{(Eq 5-1)}$$

where

W	=	horizon misclosure
β_d	=	mean direct angle
β_c	=	mean closure angle

and the correction value is determined as:

$$C = W / 2$$

where

C	=	correction value
W	=	horizon misclosure

d. Example data reductions. The station adjustment procedure for reduction of horizontal angles is demonstrated in the following example.

SET 1: Direct

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
1	0-0-30.0	0-0-38.6	0-0-34.3	0-0-00.0
2	3-0-36.6	3-0-40.8	3-0-38.7	3-0-04.4

Reduced Mean Value = 3-0-04.4

SET 1: Closure

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
2	0-0-30.0	0-0-38.6	0-0-34.3	0-0-00.0
1	357-0-25.4	357-0-27.2	357-0-26.3	356-59-52.0

Reduced Mean Value = 356-59-52.0

SET 2: Direct

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced

SET 2: Closure

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced

1	0-0-30.0	0-0-34.4	0-0-32.2	0-0-00.0
2	3-0-38.4	3-0-40.8	3-0-39.6	3-0-07.4

Reduced Mean Value = 3-0-07.4

2	0-0-30.0	0-0-34.4	0-0-32.2	0-0-00.0
1	357-0-26.4	357-0-26.8	357-0-26.6	356-59-54.4

Reduced Mean Value = 356-59-54.4

SET 3: Direct

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
1	0-0-30.0	0-0-37.4	0-0-33.7	0-0-00.0
2	3-0-40.6	3-0-43.0	3-0-41.8	3-0-08.1

Reduced Mean Value = 3-0-08.1

SET 3: Closure

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
2	0-0-30.0	0-0-34.2	0-0-32.1	0-0-00.0
1	357-0-23.3	357-0-26.5	357-0-24.9	356-59-52.8

Reduced Mean Value = 356-59-52.8

SET 4: Direct

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
1	0-0-30.0	0-0-32.2	0-0-31.1	0-0-00.0
2	3-0-36.3	3-0-38.5	3-0-37.4	3-0-06.3

Reduced Mean Value = 3-0-06.3

SET 4: Closure

PT	FL	FR	Mean	Reduced
2	0-0-30.0	0-0-35.2	0-0-32.6	0-0-00.0
1	357-0-24.2	357-0-25.8	357-0-25.0	356-59-52.4

Reduced Mean Value = 356-59-52.4

Resulting in the following reduced values:

Direct Mean value = 3-0-06.6
Closure Mean value = 356-59-52.9

Misclosure = 360 - (359-59-59.5)
Horizon Closure value = + 0.5"
Correction value = + 0.25"

Final Direct Angle value: 3-0-06.9
Final Close Angle value: 356-59-53.1

5-4. Distance Observations.

a. General. Distances of 10 m or less can be measured with a steel or invar tape. Distances of 30 m or less can be measured with a tensioned steel tape, invar tape (or invar wire that can be attached to the steel bolt or insert directly), subtense bar, or an EDM. An EDM is the preferred instrument for distances beyond 30 m. Microwave-based EDM systems must not be used.

b. Distance measurement with a tape. Distances measured between monuments will be made point-to-point whenever possible. If unable to measure point-to-point, a tripod and theodolite will be plumbed and leveled over the points and the distance measured between the trunnion axis of the setup. If tensioned equipment is used, the uncorrected distance should be measured to 0.01 mm. Distance measurements by tape will be independently made at least two times by repeating the required setup. When a mean uncorrected distance is determined using a steel tape, invar tape, or invar wire measuring unit, the following corrections will be applied, when appropriate, to determine true distance.

(1) Temperature correction. The correction for thermal expansion of steel tapes between the observed and standardized tape distance (ignore if using an invar tape) will be:

$$dL = k_a \cdot L \cdot (T - T_o) \qquad \text{(Eq 5-2)}$$

where

k_a	=	0.0000116
L	=	measured length (m)
T	=	measured ambient temperature (°C)
T_o	=	standardized temperature (°C)

(2) Tension correction. The tension correction between the observed and standardized tape distance will be:

$$dL = (P - P_o) (L) / (a) (E) \qquad \text{(Eq 5-3)}$$

where

P	=	applied tension (kg)
P_o	=	standardized tension (kg)
L	=	measured length (m)
a	=	cross-sectional area of tape (cm^2)
E	=	$2.1 \cdot 10^{-6}$

(3) Sag correction. The correction due to the unsupported length(s) of the tape will be:

$$dL = (w^2) (L^2) / (24) (P^2) \qquad \text{(Eq 5-4)}$$

where

w	=	weight of tape per unit length (kg/m)
L	=	distance between supports (m)
P	=	applied tension (kg)

(4) Slope correction. The slope distance and height difference correction if applicable will be:

$$H = \text{sqrt} (S^2 - dH^2) \qquad \text{(Eq 5-5)}$$

where

H	=	horizontal distance
S	=	slope distance
dH	=	height difference

(5) Standardized tape. The correction due to calibrated standardization error will be:

dL = true length - nominal length

c. Distance measurement with a subtense bar. If measuring the distance with a subtense bar, the subtense bar and theodolite will be plumbed and leveled over the points defining each end of the line of observation as described in the previous paragraphs. The optical sight will be used to set the subtense bar perpendicular to the line of observation. The angle subtended by the subtense bar will be measured with four independent sets by the theodolite. Record the height of the instrument and height of the target to at least one (1) mm for later reduction of the point-to-point distance. Procedures for angle and direction setups will be followed for optical theodolites.

5-5. Electro-Optical Distance Measurement.

a. General. If measuring the distance with an EDM, including those incorporated within total stations, the instrument will be accurately plumbed and leveled over the point, as shown in Figure 5-2, or force-centered in a monument.

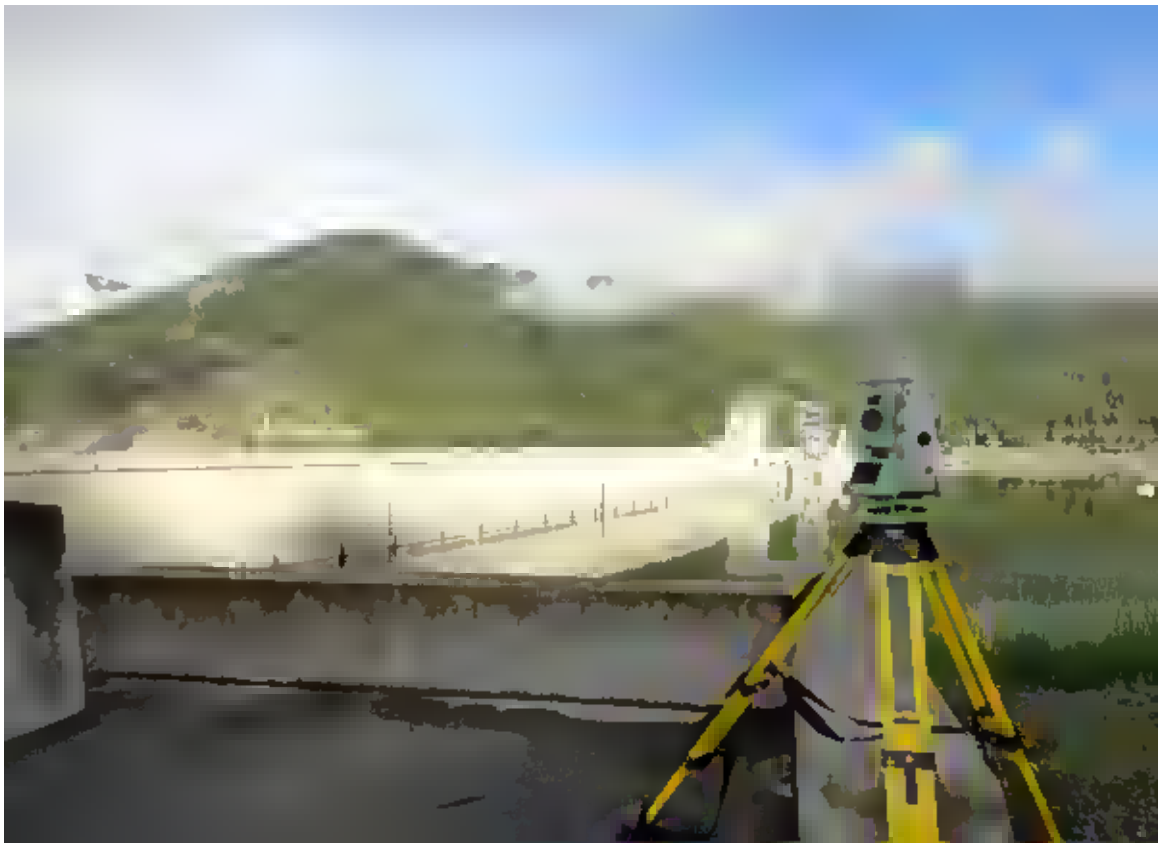


Figure 5-2. EDM observations with a total station at Libby Dam. (from USACE AGC).

b. Specifications. The following specifications are provided for making EDM distance observations:

(1) Warm-up period. Prior to its use, an EDM should be allowed to "warm up" per manufacturer specifications. An EDM should be operated with fully charged batteries in the manufacturer recommended range of operating temperatures.

(2) Signal strength. Prior to measurements with the EDM, the target prism will be set perpendicular to within 10 degrees of the LOS. Distances will be measured after electronic pointing has yielded a maximum signal strength return. If necessary, the prism will be adjusted to maximize the strength of the signal.

(3) Repetitions. EDM measurements made to target point reflectors will be repeated at least three (3) times by re-setting and re-pointing the EDM instrument and performing the observation. Five separate distance readings for each pointing will be recorded to determine their mean value. Modern instruments will usually make these redundant readings automatically to obtain their mean value.

(4) Reading precision. Repeated observations will be recorded to the least count on the EDM or to the nearest 0.001 or 0.0001 m. The mean result will be recorded to the same degree of precision.

(5) Forward distances. Distances will be observed in one direction when the instrument is set up on positive centered concrete instrument stands. If required, measurements in both directions will be made between fixed instrument stands or when using tripod supports if the one-way distance deviated over 5 mm from previous survey observations.

(6) Meteorological data. Barometric pressure, dry bulb temperature, and wet bulb temperature should be measured at the instrument stations and at the target station.

(a) Temperature and pressure will be measured in a location shaded from the sun, exposed to any wind, at least 5 feet above the ground, and away from the observer and instrument.

(b) Barometers must be capable of 2 mm mercury precision or better (record pressure to 1 mbar). Total Station instruments that contain a built-in barometer should periodically be independently verified.

(c) Thermometers and psychrometers will be capable of 1 degree Celsius precision or better (record temperature to nearest 1°C).

(d) When refractive index corrections are calculated using the formulas listed in Section 5–7, a zero (0) ppm value for refraction should be entered into the EDM instrument.

(7) Instrument-Reflector combinations. An EDM instrument must be paired with a specific (numbered) reflector. Only one instrument/reflector combination will be used for a particular line. The serial numbers of the instrument and reflector will be recorded for each observation to verify this fact.

(8) Eccentricity observations. These offset measurements will be made for each EDM distance.

(a) The height of EDM and height of prism will be measured to 1 mm, and similarly for the theodolite and target if used—see Figure 5-3. A vertical height is measured between the ground control point (CP) and the top surface of the tripod base plate. The distance between the bottom of the tribrach and the center of the target is added to the height of the tripod base plate to determine the height of target. Some prism assemblies may be adjusted for lateral eccentricities, as shown in Figure 5-4.

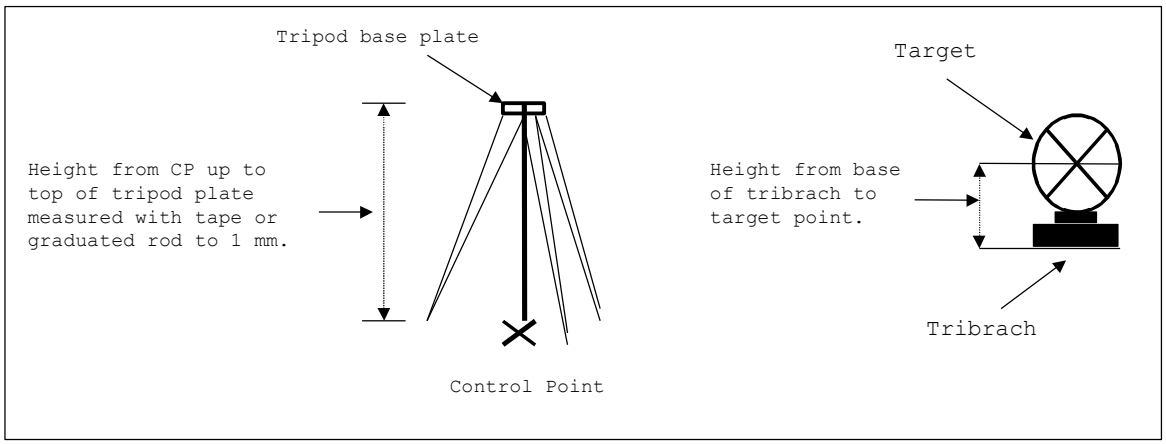


Figure 5-3. Reference points to measure height of target or GPS antenna height.

(b) Engineer scales or pocket tape is used for measuring instrument/reflector heights over base.

(c) Instrument stands with elevations determined relative to domed plugs must be corrected when height of instrument (HI) measurements are relative to the plug base.

(d) The EDM instrument must have the mechanical center marked such that accurate instrument heights may be determined for each observation. The center of the reflector must be similarly marked.

(9) Instrument/prism constant. For each EDM/prism combination used, the calibration constant must be recorded in the field book for each observation. Accordingly, the instrument

and reflector serial numbers also must be noted in the field book. Incorrect instrument/reflector serial numbers or constants will result in rejection of all data. Use of a Nodal Prism, a reflector having the optical and mechanical centered aligned at the reflector pivot point, allows the manufacture to specify a constant prism offset removing the need for a separate calibration.

(10) Instrument scale factor. The constant scale factor for EDM distances must be recorded in the field book for each survey. Accordingly, the instrument serial number must be noted in the field book.

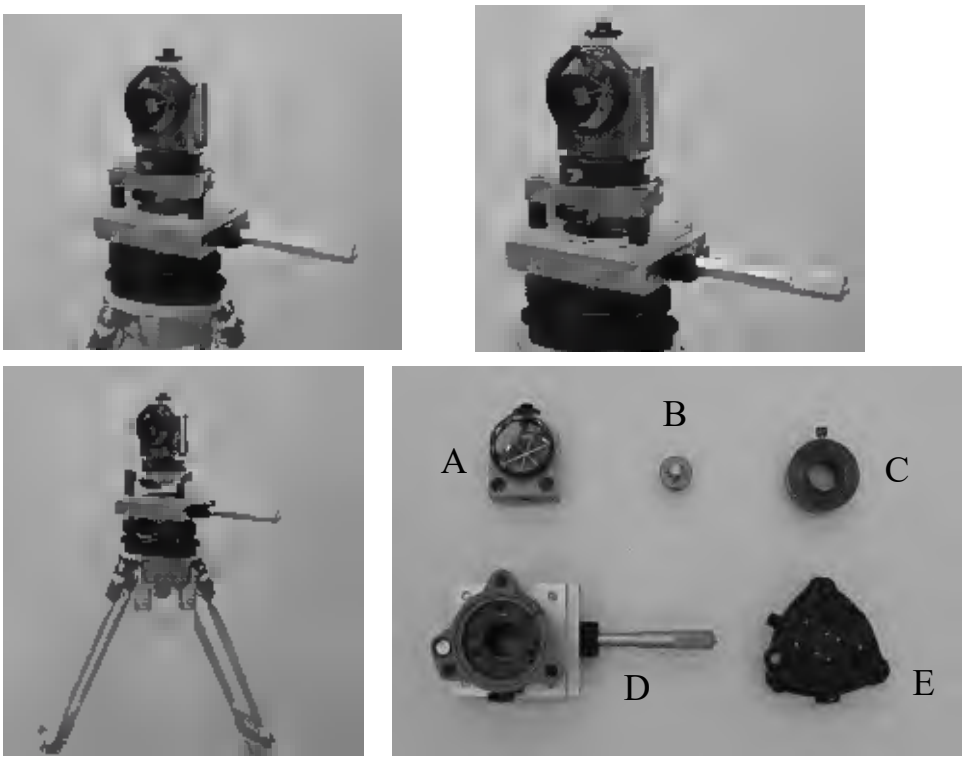


Figure 5-4. Typical EDM reflector mounted in precision adjustable tribrach. Reflector (A), 5/8–11 Adapter (B), Adapter ring (C), Translation Stage (D), and Tribrach (E) used for alignment-offset measurements.

5-6. EDM Reductions.

a. Field corrections. Horizontal distances will be computed and verified/checked in the field against previously surveyed values with the application of the following corrections and constants.

(1) Instrument/Prism Constant
(2) Horizontal and Vertical Eccentricities

(3) Slope-to-Horizontal Correction
(4) Scale Factor
(5) Refraction correction

No corrections to sea level need be applied in projects involving short lines (i.e., less than 1,000 m) or projects near sea level. For horizontal distances, slope distances must be reduced using the elevation differences determined from differential or trigonometric levels. Field notes and computation/reduction recording forms must show the application and/or consideration of all the correction factors described above.

b. Tolerances. The spread from the mean of the observations (3 sets of 5 readings each) must not exceed 0.002 meters, or else re-observe the series. Measurements taken in both directions should agree to 0.002 m after measurements are corrected for slope and atmospheric refraction, as required. If the distances are not rejected, a single uncorrected distance will be computed as the mean of the three independent distance measurements.

c. Distance reductions. 3D mark-to-mark spatial straight line distances will be computed for use in network adjustments based on the following corrections.

(1) Refraction correction. EDM distances will be corrected for atmospheric refraction using standard reduction formulas. A determination of the refractive index correction for ambient atmospheric conditions will be made based on meteorological data collected on-site.

(2) Additive constant. Zero error corrections determined from instrument/reflector calibration will be applied to distances measured with a particular EDM and prism combination.

(3) Scale error. Correction for EDM frequency scale error will be applied to the EDM distances.

(4) Geometric corrections. Instrument to station eccentricities will be eliminated for both stations using corrections for EDM, prism, theodolite, and target heights.

5-7. Atmospheric Refraction Correction**.**

a. General. EDM distances must be corrected for the actual refractive index of air along the measured line. Measurement of atmospheric conditions at several points along the optical path must be performed with well calibrated thermometers and barometers to achieve the 1 ppm accuracy. If the meteorological conditions are measured only at the instrument station (usual practice), then errors of a few parts per million (ppm) may occur, particularly in diversified topographic conditions. In order to achieve the accuracy better than 1 ppm, one must measure meteorological conditions every few hundred meters (200m–300m) along the optical path.

b. Field ppm corrections. Distance reductions that employ a ppm correction for atmospheric refraction are useful for preliminary checks on the distance data—see example at Figure 5-5. The effective ppm value can be dialed into the instrument, but it is not recommended because final reductions for atmospheric refraction should be made using rigorous formulas, which requires a zero (0) value for ppm to be entered during measurement. A field check can still be made by finding the appropriate ppm correction value and applying this numerically to the distance recorded in the field book (instead of within the instrument).

$$D_{CORR} = [\ (ppm / 1 \cdot 10^{6}\ )\ (D_{MEAS})\ ] + D_{MEAS} \qquad \text{(Eq 5-6)}$$

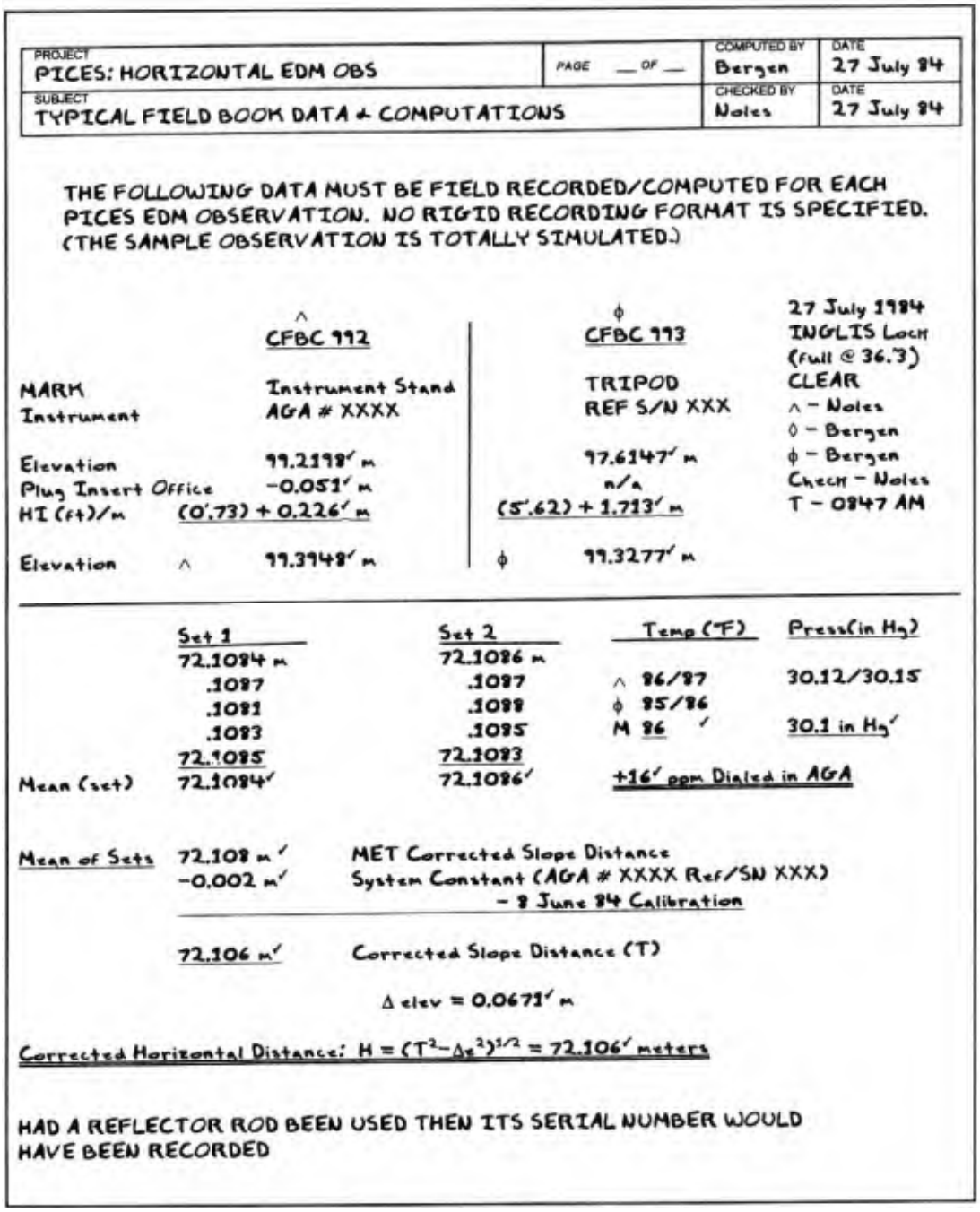
where

D_{CORR}	=	field corrected distance
ppm	=	ppm term
D_{MEAS}	=	measured distance set with zero ppm

Distance checks in the field are made by comparing the ppm corrected measurements to the corrected results from previous observation campaigns. Ppm correction values are supplied by look-up tables or simple nomogram type graphs that are specific to each instrument. Ppm methods only give approximate refraction correction values based on local temperature and pressure measurements.

c. Measurement of Temperature and Pressure. When greater accuracy in distance measurement is required, temperature, pressure, and relative humidity measurements are critical for calculating a rigorous refractive index correction. One should always use rigorous formulas to calculate the refractive index correction rather than diagrams or simplified calculation methods supplied by the manufacturers.

(1) Pressure. Pressure should be measured with a barometer at both ends of the line. The mean of the two values is used in the refractive index correction equation. If it is not possible to place barometers at both ends of the line, place a barometer at the instrument end, and use the elevations of the two ends together with the pressure measured at the instrument to calculate the pressure at the other end.



PROJECT: PICES: HORIZONTAL EDM OBS | PAGE __ OF __ | COMPUTED BY: Bergen | DATE: 27 July 84
SUBJECT: TYPICAL FIELD BOOK DATA & COMPUTATIONS | CHECKED BY: Noles | DATE: 27 July 84

THE FOLLOWING DATA MUST BE FIELD RECORDED/COMPUTED FOR EACH PICES EDM OBSERVATION. NO RIGID RECORDING FORMAT IS SPECIFIED. (THE SAMPLE OBSERVATION IS TOTALLY SIMULATED.)

	^ CFBC 992	ϕ CFBC 993
MARK	Instrument Stand	TRIPOD
Instrument	AGA # XXXX	REF S/N XXX
Elevation	99.2198′ m	97.6147′ m
Plug Insert Office	−0.051′ m	n/a
HI (ft)/m	(0′.73) + 0.226′ m	(5′.62) + 1.713′ m
Elevation	^ 99.3948′ m	ϕ 99.3277′ m

27 July 1984
INGLIS Lock
(Full @ 36.3)
CLEAR
^ – Noles
◊ – Bergen
ϕ – Bergen
Check – Noles
T – 0847 AM

	Set 1	Set 2	Temp (°F)	Press (in Hg)
	72.1084 m	72.1086 m		
	.1087	.1087	^ 86/87	30.12/30.15
	.1081	.1088	ϕ 85/86	
	.1083	.1095	M 86 ✓	30.1 in Hg✓
	72.1085	72.1083		
Mean (set)	72.1084✓	72.1086✓	+16✓ ppm Dialed in AGA	

Mean of Sets: 72.108 m✓ — MET Corrected Slope Distance
−0.002 m✓ — System Constant (AGA # XXXX Ref/SN XXX) − 9 June 84 Calibration

72.106 m✓ — Corrected Slope Distance (T)

Δ elev = 0.0671′ m

Corrected Horizontal Distance: $H = (T^2 - \Delta e^2)^{1/2} = 72.106'$ meters

HAD A REFLECTOR ROD BEEN USED THEN ITS SERIAL NUMBER WOULD HAVE BEEN RECORDED

Figure 5-5. Typical field EDM recording form—Inglis Lock, Cross Florida Barge Canal (Jacksonville District).

(2) Temperature. Temperature should be measured with a psychrometer at both ends of the line. The mean of the two values is used in the refractive index correction equation. It is more

difficult to properly measure temperature. Thermometers must be well shielded from the sun's radiation by enclosing in a reflective insulating shield. However, this permits heat to build up within the shield, and thus a small fan or some other means must be used to move air over the temperature sensing device so that the true air temperature is read. Measurements near the ground can be a poor indication of the true temperature.

(3) Relative humidity. The influence of relative humidity is important in the highest precision measurements. Psychrometers with wet and dry thermometers should be used to determine correction components for water vapor content.

d. Refractive index correction formulas. Distance reduction calculations for determination of the refraction (first velocity) correction for precise electro-optical distance measurements are presented below. The formulas and derivations are developed fully in Rueger, 1990—see Appendix A. The refraction correction is as follows:

$$d = (n_R / n_L)\, d_{MEAS} \qquad \text{(Eq 5-7)}$$

where

d	=	corrected distance
n_L	=	ambient refractive index
n_R	=	reference refractive index
d_{MEAS}	=	measured distance

The reduction is essentially an application of the scale factor (n_R / n_L) to the measured distance. The scale factor relates the instrument reference refractive index to the refractive index based on ambient atmospheric conditions. The ambient refractive index (n_L) is:

$$n_L = 1 + [\, (A + B) / (1 \cdot 10^{8}) \,] \qquad \text{(Eq 5-8)}$$

where

A	=	$\{ [\, E1 \cdot (E2 / E3) \,] + [\, E4 \cdot (E5 / E6) \,] \} \cdot D_S$
$E1$	=	1646386.0
$E2$	=	$238.0185 + \sigma^2$
$E3$	=	$(238.0185 - \sigma^2)^2$
$E4$	=	47729.9
$E5$	=	$57.362 + \sigma^2$
$E6$	=	$(57.362 - \sigma^2)^2$
B	=	$[\, F1 + F2 - F3 + F4 \,] \cdot D_W$
$F1$	=	6487.31

$F2 = 174.174\ \sigma^{2}$
$F3 = 3.55750\ \sigma^{4}$
$F4 = 0.61957\ \sigma^{6}$

$$D_S = (P_S / T) \cdot [1 + P_S \cdot (G1 - (G2 / T) + (G3 / T^{2}))]$$

$G1 = 57.90 \cdot 10^{-8}$
$G2 = 9.325 \cdot 10^{-4}$
$G3 = 0.25844$

$$D_W = (P_w / T) \cdot [1 + P_w \cdot (1 + (H1 \cdot P_w)) \cdot H2]$$

$H1 = 3.7 \cdot 10^{-4}$
$H2 = H3 + H4 - H5 + H6$
$H3 = -2.37321 \cdot 10^{-3}$
$H4 = 2.23366 / T$
$H5 = 710.792 / T^{2}$
$H6 = (7.75141 \cdot 10^{-4}) / T^{3}$

where

$\sigma = 1/\lambda$
λ = instrument carrier wavelength (in micrometers)
D_S = density factor of dry air
D_W = density factor of water vapor
P = total atmospheric pressure (mbar)
P_w = partial water vapor pressure (mbar)
P_S = $(P - P_w)$ = partial pressure of dry air (mbar)
T = Temperature in Kelvin (K) = (273.15 + t)
t = temperature in Celsius (°C)

The reference refractive index value (n_R) is obtained from the manufacturer's specifications for a given EDM instrument. Water vapor pressure (P_w) is determined by the difference between wet and dry bulb (psychrometer) temperatures as follows:

$$P_w = ep - [(0.000662) (P) (t_D - t_W)]$$

where

P = pressure (mb)
t_D = dry bulb temperature (°C)
t_W = wet bulb temperature (°C)
$ep = (C + D) (E) \exp (F / G)$

C = 1.0007
D = $(3.46 \cdot 10^{-6}) (P)$
E = 6.1121
F = (17.502) (tw)
G = (240.97) + (tw)

e. Reference line ratio methods. Using a special observing procedure, one may account for the influence of refraction without explicit use of temperature and pressure measurements. Corrections are obtained by using the ratio of a measured and a known distance to find the effective scale change due to refraction. These procedures are described in Chapter 10.

f. Summary data sheets. A summary data sheet for EDM distance observations is shown in Figure 5-6.

	INSTRUMENT @ **CDM - 2** DISTANCE TO:	INITIAL DISTANCE **JUNE 1991**	40 TH READING **DEC 1996**	CHANGE (MTRS)	CUM. CHANGE (MM)	41 ST READING **JAN 1997**	CHANGE (MTRS)	CUM. CHANGE (MM)	42 ND READING **APR 1998**	CHANGE (MTRS)	CUM. CHANGE (MM)
692.9998	SSRM 1	692.9890	693.0005	0.0007	11.5	693.0008	0.0003	11.8	692.9964	-0.0044	7.4
719.7269	SSRM 2	719.7209	719.7268	-0.0001	5.9	719.7289	0.0021	8.0	719.7220	-0.0069	1.1
678.0597	SSRM 3	678.0380	678.0600	0.0003	22.0	678.0609	0.0009	22.9	678.0543	-0.0066	16.3
705.4121	SSRM 4	705.3855	705.4121	0.0000	26.6	705.4131	0.0010	27.6	705.4045	-0.0086	19.0
732.8935	SSRM 5	732.8772	732.8930	-0.0005	15.8	732.8943	0.0013	17.1	732.8868	-0.0075	9.6
760.6852	SSRM 6	760.6642	760.6853	0.0001	21.1	760.6854	0.0001	21.2	760.6812	-0.0042	17.0
788.1278	SSRM 7	788.1400	788.1269	-0.0009	-13.1	788.1284	0.0015	-11.6	788.1203	-0.0081	-19.7
668.2854	SSRM 8	668.2606	668.2853	-0.0001	24.7	668.2841	-0.0012	23.5	668.2821	-0.0020	21.5
696.0971	SSRM 9	696.0571	696.0975	0.0004	40.4	696.0979	0.0004	40.8	696.0945	-0.0034	37.4
723.9291	SSRM 10	723.9081	723.9281	-0.0010	20.0	723.9297	0.0016	21.6	723.9176	-0.0121	9.5
751.7767	SSRM 11	751.7551	751.7761	-0.0006	21.0	751.7763	0.0002	21.2	751.7680	-0.0083	12.9
779.7186	SSRM 12	779.7121	779.7182	-0.0004	6.1	779.7188	0.0006	6.7	779.7114	-0.0074	-0.7
663.9446	SSRM 13	663.9126	663.9447	0.0001	32.1	663.9446	-0.0001	32.0	663.9399	-0.0047	27.3
691.9190	SSRM 14	691.8944	691.9176	-0.0014	23.2	691.9192	0.0016	24.8	691.9113	-0.0079	16.9
719.8884	SSRM 15	719.8851	719.8881	-0.0003	3.0	719.8877	-0.0004	2.6	719.8810	-0.0067	-4.1
664.6144	SSRM 16	664.5753	664.6148	0.0004	39.5	664.6150	0.0002	39.7	664.6086	-0.0064	33.3
692.6458	SSRM 17	692.6186	692.6448	-0.0010	26.2	692.6468	0.0020	28.2	692.6400	-0.0068	21.4
720.5207	SSRM 18	720.5187	720.5204	-0.0003	1.7	720.5215	0.0011	2.8	720.5158	-0.0057	-2.9
670.9071	SSRM 19	670.8744	670.9073	0.0002	32.9	670.9075	0.0002	33.1	670.9017	-0.0058	27.3
698.6566	SSRM 20	698.6312	698.6568	0.0002	25.6	698.6555	-0.0013	24.3	698.6511	-0.0044	19.9
675.0941	SSRM 21	675.0642	675.0948	0.0007	30.6	675.0947	-0.0001	30.5	675.0878	-0.0069	23.6

CERRILLOS DAM MONITORING
SPILLWAY POINTS
HORIZONTAL REFERENCE POINT READINGS

Figure 5-6. Data sheet for periodic distances to fixed points on spillway. 42 observations made during period 1990 through 1998—only last three tabulated in report. Note some monitor points have moved some 3 to 4 cm since initial construction of the dam. Cerrillos Dam, Puerto Rico. (Jacksonville District).

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 6

Settlement Surveys—Precise Differential Leveling Observations

6-1. Scope**.** This chapter covers standards and specifications for performing precise differential leveling surveys, as required to monitor settlements in concrete and embankment structures. The standards described are developed around precision leveling instruments used for long-distance geodetic leveling runs. For many structures where level runs are relatively short, adequate results may be obtained with traditional leveling methods with optical instruments, or bar code leveling with digital levels.

Figure 6-1. Precise leveling runs near/on structure in Little Rock District. (Little Rock District).

6-2. Precise Geodetic Leveling**.** Vertical settlement determined by precision differential leveling is performed using compensatory auto-collimation leveling instruments with fixed or attached parallel plate micrometers, and observing invar double (offset) scale metric rods with supporting struts. In general, 1 to 3 fixed reference points (bedrock benchmarks) are used to check for potential movement of various points on the structure. One of the reference points is held fixed with all subsequent vertical changes tabulated relative to this fixed reference point.

Vertical ties between reference bedrock benchmarks are performed only to monitor potential movement on the reference points, and to enable selection of the best reference point to hold fixed when two or more benchmarks (BM) are available. Leveling should be referenced to stable benchmarks placed in close proximity to the structure to minimize systematic errors that can accumulate during the transfer of elevation from vertical control outside the project area. A stability monitoring program designed specifically for the network of benchmarks should be established by leveling through each project benchmark. Deep bench, rod extensometers (preferably at least two), placed directly on the structure and anchored at depth in bedrock (isolated from surrounding soil), will also provide a stable vertical reference. If benchmarks are located within the zone of deformation, the vertical network should be made to close on the same benchmark it started from so that relative height differences and closures will provide a measure of internal precision.

a. Leveling standards. Precision leveling must be performed in conformance with the methods and accuracy specifications contained in NOAA Manual NOS NGS 3, June 2001, Geodetic Leveling, unless modified in the following guidance. Those performing settlement survey work are expected to be thoroughly familiar with the contents of this reference manual. Other applicable reference manuals include:

-ER 1110-2-1806, Earthquake Design and Evaluation for Civil Works Projects,
-EM 1110-2-1911, Construction Control for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams,
-EM 1110-2-2300, General Design and Construction Considerations for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams,
-EM 1110-1-1005, Control and Topographic Surveying, and
-EM 1110-1-1904, Settlement Analysis.

This last reference provides guidelines for calculations of vertical displacements and settlement of soil under shallow foundations supporting various types of structures and under embankments.

b. Equipment specifications. Specifications applicable to differential leveling equipment for deformation monitoring surveys are presented as follows.

(1) Instruments. Instrumentation used should meet requirements for First-Order geodetic leveling, employing either spirit levels or compensator levels with micrometers or bar code digital levels. For detailed information on digital leveling, see Chapter 3 of EM 1110-1-1005. For spirit leveling, the instrument will be an automatic level with telescope magnification of 40 times or better, a compensator with a sensitivity of 10" per 2 mm level vial graduation, and a parallel plate micrometer capable of 0.1 mm readings.

(2) Leveling staves. The rod to be used should be an invar, double scale rod, or one with a permanently attached circular level, both having graduations equal to the range of the parallel plate micrometer (Figure 6-2). Choice of equipment should be guided by the intended/required accuracy for conducting deformation surveys.

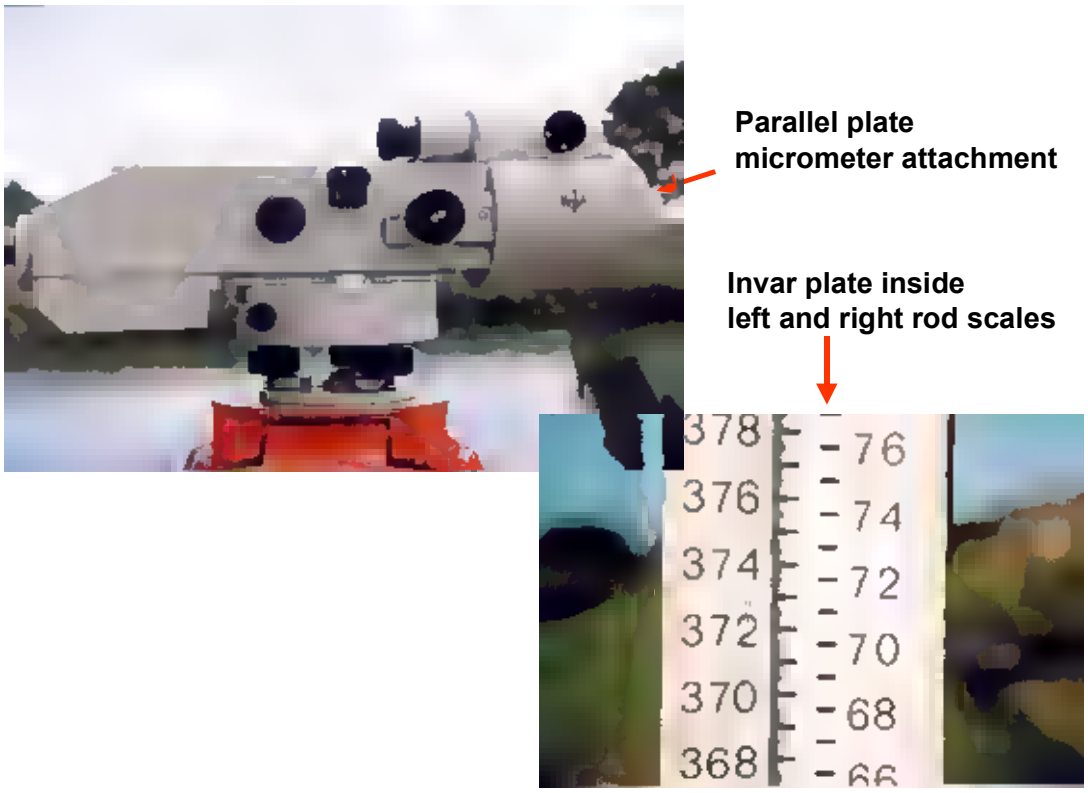


Figure 6-2. Zeiss Ni1 automatic level with parallel plate micrometer attached. Double-scale Invar rod with constant 3.01550 m difference in left and right scales.

(3) Turning plates (pins). Turning plates should not be used on turf; driven turning pins will be required in this type of terrain. Turning plates should only be used on pavement or hard packed soil.

c. Instrument calibration requirements. Prior to conducting leveling operations, the following calibrations will be performed.

(1) Maintenance. Precise level rods and instruments will be cleaned and lab calibrated-maintained at least annually.

(2) C-factor collimation calibration. The C-factor must be determined at the beginning of each structure observation campaign per the procedures outlined in Section 3 of NOAA Manual NOS NGS 3. The C-factor determination is made using Kukkamaki's method, also referred to as a Peg Test (Figure 6-3). A slightly different calibration format used by the Jacksonville District is shown in Figure 6-6 at the end of this chapter.

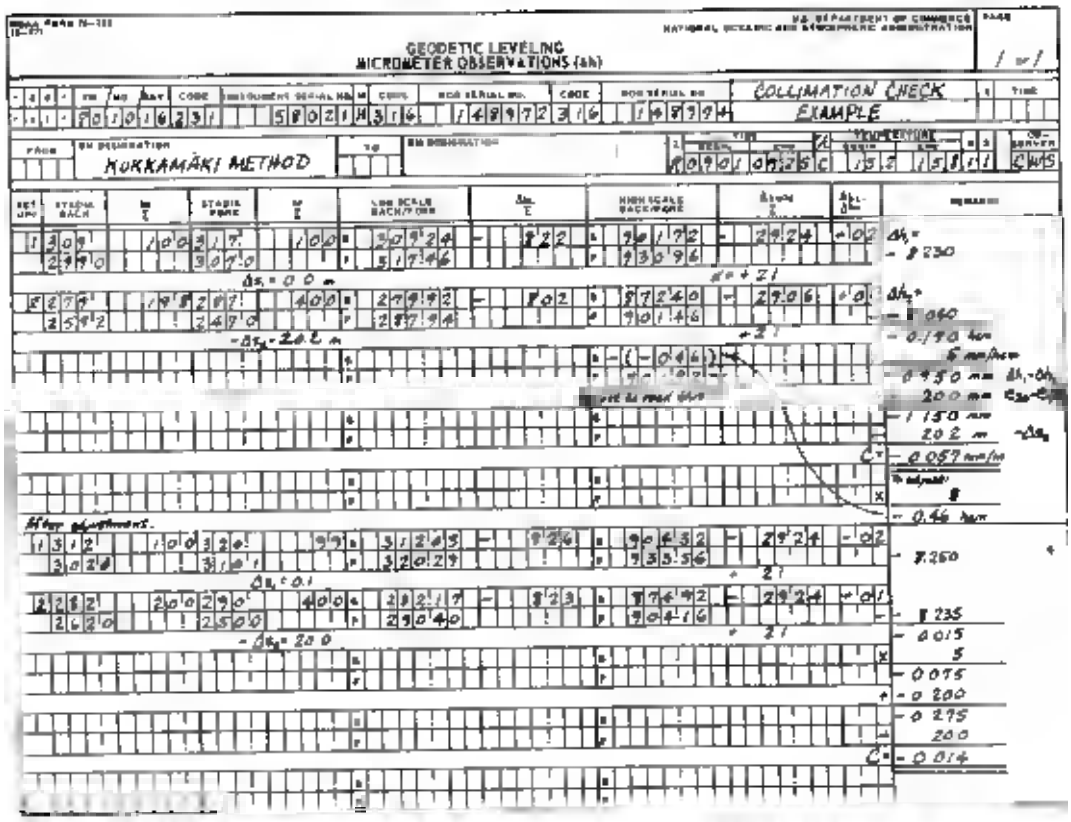


Figure 6-3. C-factor determination using Kukkamaki method.

(3) Rejection criteria. The C-factor must conform to the reject/readjustment criteria of Table 3-1 of NOAA Manual NOS NGS 3, which is 0.005 cm/m. Daily C-factor calibrations are not essential provided if the instrument is consistently falling within 0.004 cm/m and backsight/foresight distances (individual setup and accumulated) stay within 1m/2m respectively. C-factor calibrations must be performed at least twice weekly when continuously leveling at a single structure, upon commencing leveling at a new structure, or daily if the C-factors exceed prescribed limits.

d. Leveling procedures. When determining elevation by precise spirit leveling, the following guidelines will be followed.

(1) Double-run level sections. Sections must not exceed one kilometer in length. Level lines will be run in two directions. Either one or two double scale invar rods will be used. For short runs, traditional three-wire procedures are allowable. Section runs will be conducted via the shortest route between benchmarks.

(2) Sighting convention. Each section must start and end with the head rod (Rod A) on the BM or reference point. The head rod (Rod A) is always observed first on each setup, whether it

is a backsight or foresight observation. The instrument will be leveled with the telescope pointing toward the head rod (Rod A), thus alternating towards the backsight and foresight at alternate instrument stations.

(3) Rod readings. Observing and recording are similar to conventional leveling procedures. The readings will be recorded manually in the field book or electronically to 0.01 mm. An acceptable version of the NGS Micrometer Leveling form may be used (8.5-inch by 11-inch loose leaf format—Figure 6-4). Field books and data recorders are also acceptable. Level sketches and abstracts must also be prepared.

(4) Stadia distance. The maximum length of the LOS should not be more than 50 m. Foresight and backsight distances should be balanced. If the distances cannot be balanced, they will be recorded so that the height difference can be adjusted during data reduction.

(5) Foresight sideshots. Sideshots must start from a rigid BM and not from a Temporary Benchmark (TBM). Multiple foresight shots are allowable from a single backsight assuming distances are allowable.

(6) Rod settlement. If using one level rod, it will be moved from backsight to foresight as quickly as possible to minimize the effects of rod and instrument settlement.

(7) Rod index error. An even number of setups will be made for all differential level section runs to eliminate possible rod index errors.

(8) Ground refraction. The LOS will not be less than 0.5 m above the ground to minimize line-of-sight refraction due to higher temperature gradients near ground level.

6-3. Differential Leveling Reductions**.**

a. Field checks. Leveling data sheets will be checked in the field with the resulting differential elevation for each run clearly noted, along with pertinent plug offset characteristics, if any, and accumulated stadia lengths per circuit/section. See the example at Figure 6-4. A slightly different recording format developed by Jacksonville District is shown in Figure 6-7 at the end of this chapter.

b. Leveling tolerances. Measurement and closure checks will be made on site with the following tolerances. For additional information on leveling reductions consult NOAA Manual NOS NGS 3.

(1) Single observation. The setup will be re-observed if the disagreement between the left and right side scale elevations on either rod exceeds 0.25 mm for that setup.

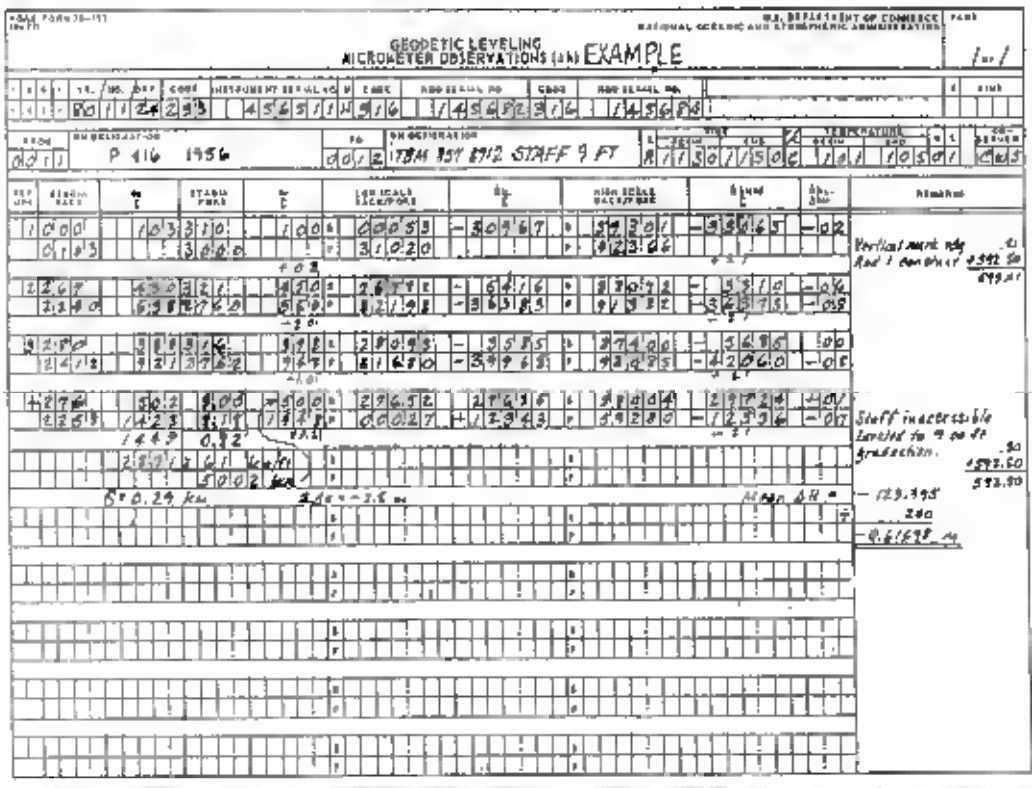


Figure 6-4. Sample precise level notes--parallel plate micrometer leveling with invar rods.

(2) Stadia distance. Backward and forward stadia distances can differ by no more than 2 m per setup and 4 m accumulated along a section to achieve balanced distances between foresight/backsight turning points.

(3) Re-observation criteria. Re-run level line if external misclosure exceed tolerance value, for newly established points, or for re-observations when misclosures are rejected on single runs.

(4) Closure requirements. Section level run closure tolerances are calculated as follows.

(a) Misclosure tolerance (TOL) for a section run is not to exceed:

$$TOL = \pm 3 \text{ mm} \cdot \text{sqrt}(K) \qquad \text{(Eq 6-1)}$$

where K is measured in kilometers (km).

(b) For short lines, the minimum tolerance for a section run is not to exceed:

TOL = + 1 mm (for K less than 0.33 km).

(5) Height difference. If data collected with an automatic level is not rejected, a single height difference will be computed as the mean of the height difference computed from the left scale readings and the height difference computed from the right scale readings. If the foresight and backsight readings are unbalanced, the single height difference will be corrected for vertical collimation error.

(6) Tabulation accuracy. Record elevations to the nearest ten-thousandth (0.0001) meter on the final reported elevations and settlement. Elevations (and elevation differences) on field sketches and abstracts should be tabulated to the nearest 0.0001 meters.

c. Final height difference reductions. Redundant elevations (i.e., computed from different level loops on circuits from the reference BMs) may be simply averaged regardless of lengths run. Since most leveling surveys will involve lines run directly from a reference BM, final adjusted structure elevations are simply algebraic sums of height differences from the BM using field verified sketch/abstract data.

d. Additional processing. More extensive leveling adjustment procedures, such as least squares processing, may be necessary in the case of:

-complicated section loop connections,
-three dimensional adjusted networks,
-newly established projects,
-settlement anomalies,
-abnormal movement of BMs, or
-redefinition of BM elevation using past data.

e. Report tabulation. Tabulated (carried forward) elevations or averaged elevations will be made from the field sketch/abstract, holding the BM elevation fixed and computing changes in elevation from prior observations. Anomalies should be noted on the report tabulation. Recommendations to change the reference BM (to another BM) should be noted and pursued accordingly.

f. Sketches. Field sketches (see sample at Figure 6-5) of level circuits, section, loops, or spurs will be made to clearly show observed elevation differences, leveling direction, and stadia distances—all taken directly from the (checked) Micrometer Leveling recording forms. From such a sketch, elevations may be easily carried forward from the reference BM—an essential computation in verifying external misclosures and should be stapled to all the data sheets acquired for an individual structure. Elevations carried forward (from the BM) may be listed on a separate sheet (i.e., an Abstract).

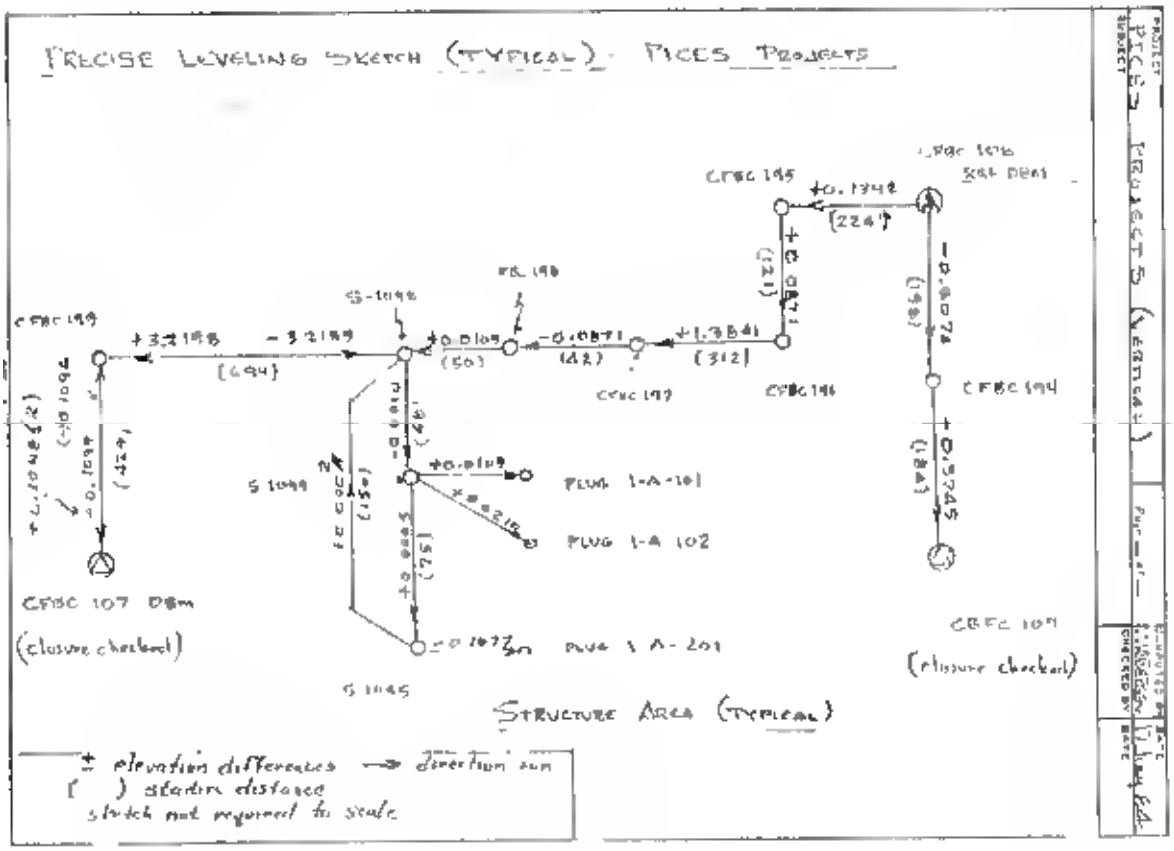


Figure 6-5. Sample sketch of level loops and level lines around a lock & dam structure on Cross Florida Barge Canal (Jacksonville District).

6-4. Total Station Trigonometric Heights**.** EDM/Total Station trigonometric heighting can be used to determine height differences in lieu of spirit leveling. In general, these elevation differences will not be as accurate as those obtained from spirit/differential levels. Exceptions would occur in mountainous terrain where differential leveling is difficult to conduct. EDM trigonometric height observations conducted over terrain where atmospheric extremes may be present (e.g., across a large valley or river) must be observed using the technique of simultaneous reciprocal measurements.

a. Weather conditions. Observations with an EDM should be limited to days when favorable atmospheric conditions (e.g., slightly cloudy with a light breeze) are prevalent.

b. Setup requirements. Proper targets and instrument height (HI) measuring instruments, as well as sound HI measurement procedures, should be followed at all times.

c. Measurements. Zenith angles and slope distances should be measured in both the direct and inverted telescope positions. Recording and reductions follow similar procedures for horizontal angle and EDM distance measurements. Shots of over approximately 1,000 feet must have curvature and refraction calculations factored in. Extreme care must be taken to obtain accurate instrument heights during trigonometric leveling. Use of a true center height stick to obtain the instrument height in conjunction with the use of fixed height rods on the backsight and foresight are required.

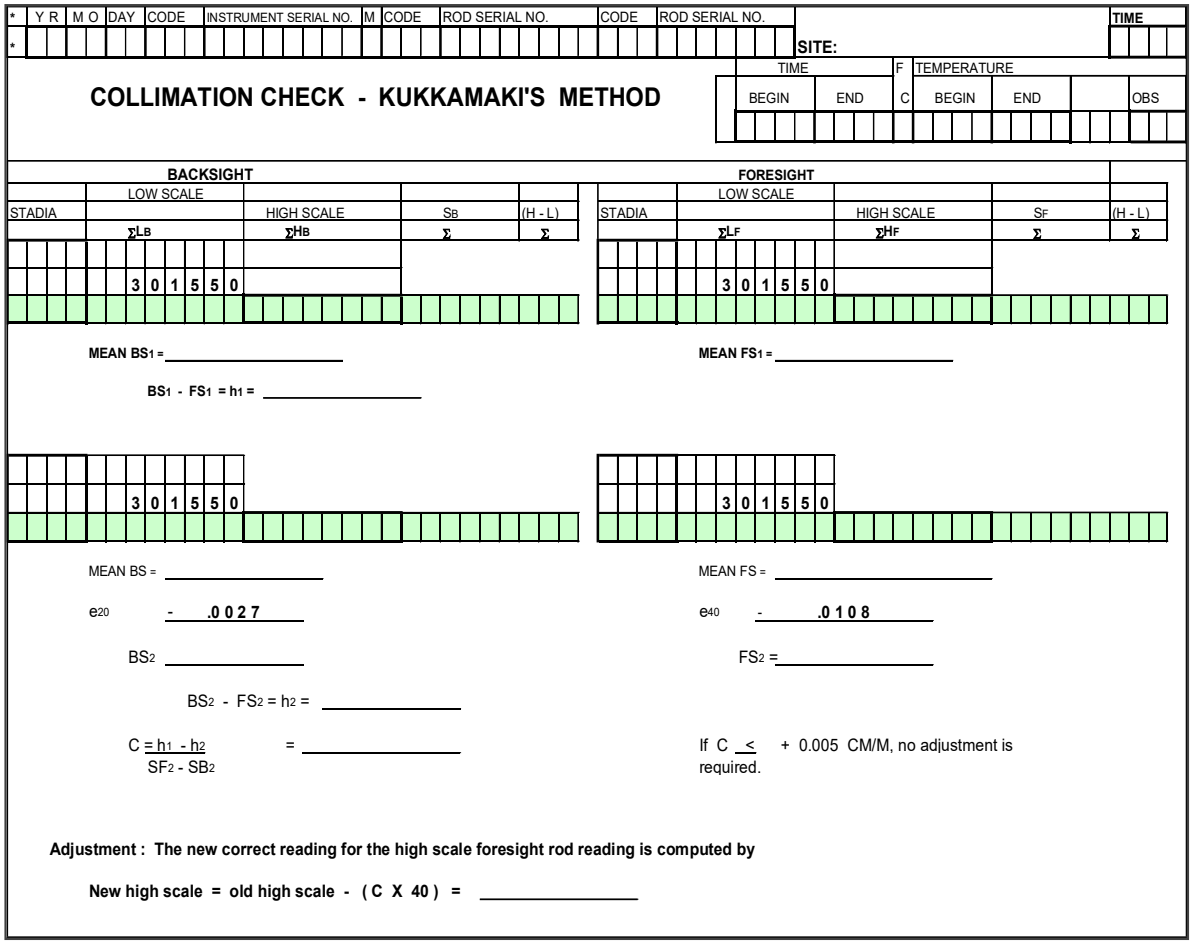


Figure 6-6. Recording form for Kukkamaki Method of collimation calibration (Jacksonville District).

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS JACKSONVILLE DISTRICT

LEVELING

STATION NUMBER	THREAD READING BACKSIGHT	ROD READING RIGHT	ROD READING LEFT	STADIA	READING CHECK	ROD AND TEMP

Figure 6-7. Micrometer leveling observations recording form—left side (Jacksonville District).

FROM BM																TO BM		
WIND/SUN								TIME								DATE		
THREAD READING FORESIGHT	ROD READING															STADIA	READING CHECK	REMARKS
	RIGHT								LEFT									

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 7

Alignment, Deflection, and Crack Measurement Surveys: Micrometer Observations

7-1. Scope. This chapter describes micrometer observation methods for accurately measuring small relative deflections or absolute deformations in hydraulic structures.

Figure 7-1. Alignment micrometer measurements relative to fixed baseline.

7-2. Relative Alignment Deflections from Fixed Baseline. Deflections of points along structural sections can be monitored by observing their offset from an alignment established by two baseline control points. The deflection of a point relative to a fixed baseline is observed either by micrometer target methods (translation stage—Figure 7-1) or by directly observing the deflection angle to the alignment pin with a theodolite. The lateral movement is computed relative to the alignment using trigonometric identities. Alignment requirements for each structure will be listed in tabular form on project instructions, identifying the baseline reference points used (instrument/target stands), the deflection points to be observed, and structure loading requirements (e.g., lock fill elevations). Requirements for establishing new alignment points, and constructing reference baseline instrument/target stands will be detailed as required. Additional background on relative deflection techniques is described in EM 1110-2-4300, Instrumentation for Concrete Structures.

a. General. Relative deflections on structures are monitored by measuring the position of a series of alignment pins set at regular intervals along an alignment section—for example, the reference baseline "A" shown in Figure 7-2. Baselines typically range from 30 to 300 meters in length, depending on the structure. The baseline is established perpendicular to the direction in which deflection observations are required—for example, along the axis of a dam. Alignment control points located on the structure form a sub-network where each pair of structure control points acts as a separate alignment section for making deflection measurements. The alignment control point (CP) positions are tied directly to the reference network pillars using the established project coordinate system. Separate or adjacent alignment sections should be tied together using conventional measurements from at least two other nearby control points and from at least two reference network stations. Precision distance ties between alignment section CPs should be made to strengthen positioning of the alignment CPs.

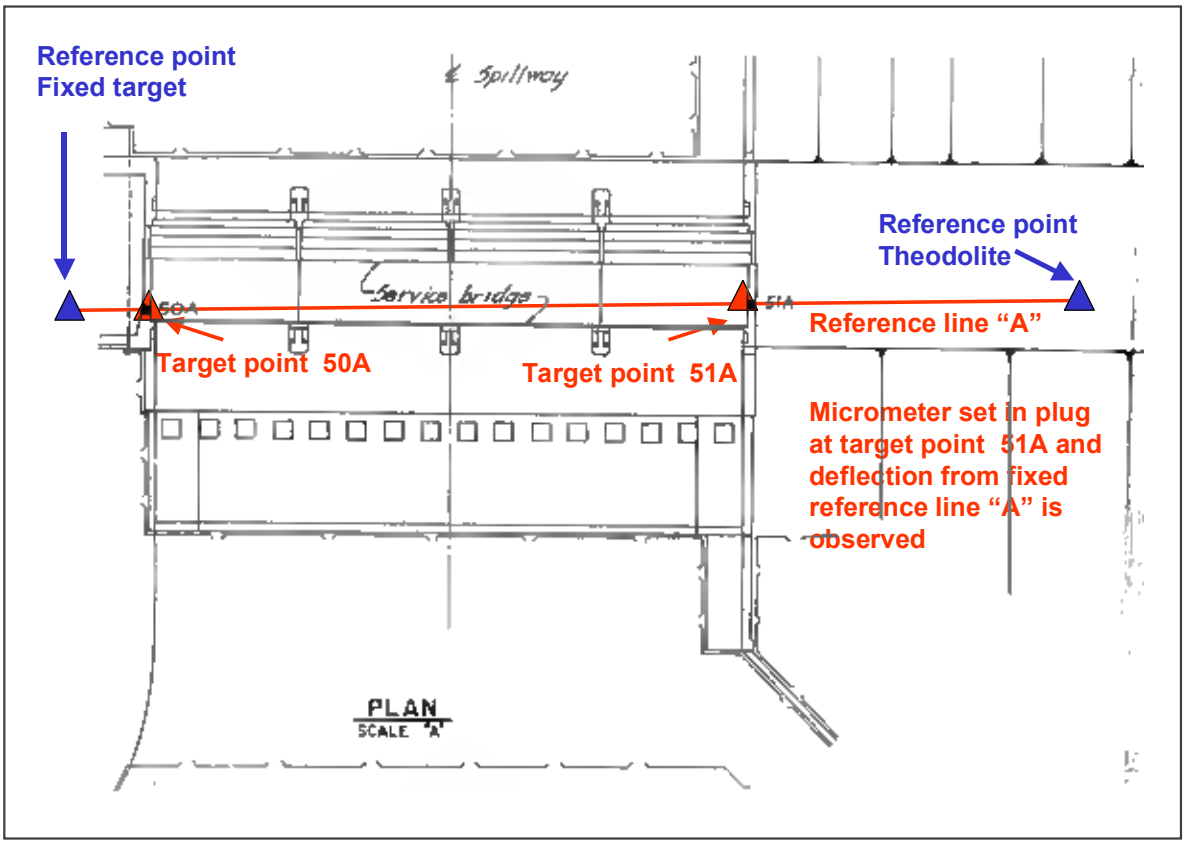


Figure 7-2. Typical relative alignment deflection measurements of concrete structures relative to fixed baseline. Micrometer deflections relative to line between theodolite and target set on external points. Port Mayaca Spillway (S-308C), Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project, Jacksonville District.

b. Instrumentation specifications. Guidance on recommended alignment survey equipment and procedures are presented as follows.

(1) Instruments. Optical or electronic theodolites such as the Wild T-2 or T-3 theodolite or other similar instruments such as electronic total stations may be used.

(2) Targets. An inverted "V" or conic plug inserts, prism tribrach combinations with target housings, or other specialized metrology type targets are acceptable.

(3) Monuments. Permanent alignment pins or other permanent disk type monuments are acceptable. Structure monitoring target points (or plugs) are normally set (grouted) within ±0.5 inch from the reference baseline. Established CP monuments on the structure should be used instead of temporary point-on-line reference marks.

(4) Alignment micrometer. A translation stage type mechanism with forced centering plug insert with a tribrach or an inverted "V" or conic target mount on the micrometer is acceptable. See EM 1110-2-4300, Instrumentation for Concrete Structures, for details on forced-centering monument construction and monolith alignment marker design.

c. Observing procedures. These guidelines are provided for determining offsets using theodolite-based methods for measurements of deflection angles or with a micrometer-based translation stage.

(1) Equipment set-up. The theodolite and reference target(s) must be set up on concrete instrument stands or stable tripods using forced centering devices. After force centering the theodolite, accurately level theodolite to its reversing point and re-level to the reversing point before each observation—this leveling/re-leveling procedure is critical. Next, remove parallax from the theodolite's cross-hairs. The reference target on the opposite end of the reference line is aligned by forced-centering, ensuring the target is aligned vertically over the plug center. For each alignment pin, the orientation of the stage axis to the alignment should be perpendicular to within 5 degrees to the alignment. This alignment tolerance is easily achieved in the field.

(2) Establishing alignment. Both the theodolite and target are force-center mounted at each end the reference baseline to establish the alignment and measure a reference line distance tie. When using two instruments, each respectively is centered over a monumented control point that establishes the alignment section, and each instrument backsights the center circular element within the other theodolite objective lens.

(3) Deflection angle method. A series of small deflection angles can be measured between the initial position of the micrometer target when centered over the alignment pin and the reference line. For the deflection angle method, the instrument is set up at either end of the alignment section, and the prism or micrometer assembly is centered over the alignment pin closest to one end of the alignment. The theodolite's vertical cross-hair is centered on the reference target and four (4) alignment deflection sets are observed with the theodolite in both direct and reverse positions. Redundancy can be increased by combining both the micrometer offset measurement method with the small deflection angle method by also sighting the

translated position of the target when it is collimated with the alignment section reference line and recording the micrometer offset measurement and in-line distance. The procedure for the combined method would be as follows. For each alignment pin, establish the initial alignment as usual. Turn the instrument onto the prism target centered directly over the alignment pin, read and record the small deflection angle and measure the distance to the alignment pin, then turn the instrument back onto the original alignment and observe the conventional micrometer offset and in-line distance.

(4) Micrometer offset measurements. Sight the alignment reference target and move the alignment micrometer/target into to collimation with theodolite alignment. Radios may be required for communication between the instrument man and micrometer operator. Five (5) independent offset measurements should be observed with the alignment micrometer in the LEFT position (i.e., micrometer is to the left of baseline as viewed from the theodolite's position). The offset distance from the alignment pin is measured by moving the target on-line, and recording the offset distance with the micrometer scale. Read alignment micrometer to nearest $\pm$ 0.001 (thousandth) inch. Rotate alignment micrometer 180 degrees to its RIGHT position and observe five (5) additional offsets. Always run the micrometer against the spring such that after each offset measurement, the micrometer should be backed off a few hundredths of an inch. Reversing the micrometer to the LEFT and RIGHT positions eliminates index error in the device.

(5) Alignment pin in-line distances. Extensional (in-line) movement components for each alignment pin are determined by measuring the in-line distance to the prism/target when collimated over the alignment pin and when collimated to the reference baseline. When using two instruments for the alignment, the offset reading and in-line distance is repeated and confirmed by the instrument at the other end of the line when the offset bar is rotated 180 degrees.

d. Field computations and tolerances. A mean value for the LEFT and RIGHT micrometer observations (5 each) will be calculated and reported to the nearest 0.001 inch—see sample field notes at Figure 7-3. The difference between the mean of the LEFT set and the mean of the RIGHT should not exceed $\pm$ 0.02 (two-hundredths) inch. If the difference between the two means does exceed this limit, then both the LEFT and RIGHT set must be re-observed. Large variations probably indicate poor target centering, instrument parallax not eliminated, or mis-levelment of the theodolite. The final left/right deflection angle will be computed in the field after each alignment observation. All field reductions must be independently checked in the field.

e. Final micrometer data reductions. From the mean value for the micrometer left/right readings, compute the adjusted deflection as follows:

(1) Deflection Calculation. The deflection (D) will be calculated as:

$$D = (ML - MR) / 2 \qquad \text{(Eq 7-1)}$$

where

ML	=	mean value of the five (5) LEFT micrometer readings on baseline
MR	=	mean value of the five (5) RIGHT micrometer readings on baseline
D	=	the calculated value for the "+" Right deflection off baseline to structure point as viewed from theodolite position

(2) Recording. Round adjusted deflection to the nearest 0.01 inch. Additional accuracy and recording requirements for micrometer based measurements are found below.

(3) Check sum. The sum of the micrometer LEFT and RIGHT means will not necessarily total to the (whole) 1.000 inch, given the micrometer index errors.

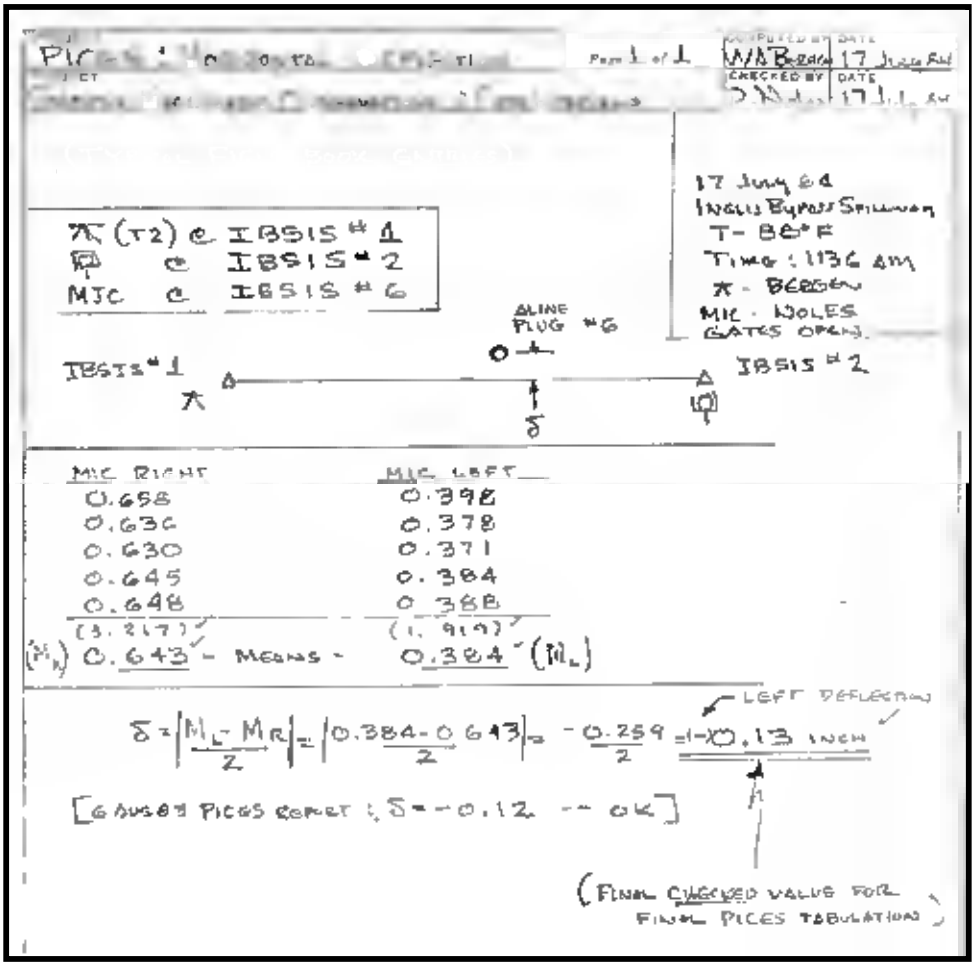


Figure 7-3. Field alignment micrometer alignment observations and reduction—Inglis Bypass Spillway, Cross Florida Barge Canal, Jacksonville District.

(4) Tabulation. Tabulate field computed deflection values for the final report using a standard field survey book or similar recording form for both observations, computations, and adjustments of data. A sample micrometer alignment field record is shown in Figure 7-3.

(5) Summary sheets. Figure 7-4 depicts a typical summary data sheet for sequential alignment observations.

REFERENCE POINT WITH INSTRUMENT AT IS4	INITIAL DISTANCE **APR 1990**	5TH READING **APR 1994**	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES	6TH READING	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES	7TH READING	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES
L 2 MIC RIGHT	0.292	NOT VISIBLE								
L 1 MIC RIGHT	0.690	NOT VISIBLE								
L 2 MIC LEFT	0.729	NOT VISIBLE								
L 1 MIC LEFT	0.278	NOT VISIBLE								

6TH READING **MAR 1995**	REFERENCE POINT WITH INSTRUMENT AT IS	INITIAL DISTANCE **APR 1990**	7TH READING **SEPT 1996**	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES	8TH READING	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES	9TH READING	CHANGE INCHES	CUM. CHANGE INCHES
0.6290	L 1 MIC RIGHT	0.4915	0.6990	0.0700	0.2075						
0.8588	L 2 MIC RIGHT	0.6560	0.9060	0.0472	0.2500						
0.3350	L 1 MIC LEFT	0.5094	0.3500	0.0150	-0.1594						
0.0460	L 2 MIC LEFT	0.3570	0.0960	0.0500	-0.2610						

NOTES :
1. All distances are in hundredths of an inch and changes in hundredths of an inch.
2. Location of the points is shown in the Pre-Inspection Brochure on Plates 38 and 39.
3. Readings from IS-4 rejected due to guardrail built on line.
4. Continued readings on L2 MIC RIGHT from 5 th reading of April 1994.

S-352 SPILLWAY (HGS 5)
(SPILLWAY)
ALIGNMENT MONITORING POINT READINGS
(Continued from Plate 73 in 1995 report)

PLATE 78

Figure 7-4. Data summary sheet for alignment observations between 1990 and 1996. Only the first (1990) and last (seventh) observations are recorded. The change is measured relative to the previous observation in 1995 (shown in left margin). The cumulative change is relative to the original (1990) measurement. Hurricane Gate Structure 5, Jacksonville District.

7-3. Micrometer Crack Measurement Observations

a. General. This section describes absolute micrometer joint or crack measurement procedures using micrometers. Crack/joint observations are measured relative to grouted bronze plugs set 12 inches (±) on center across a concrete crack or structural construction joint where periodic monitoring is required. Monitoring points are usually set on each adjacent monolith. Monitoring is performed periodically for long-term trends or during short-term load deformation studies. Often, three plugs are set across each crack or joint in a triangular pattern. In most cases, two opposite plugs set perpendicular to the joint/crack plane will be adequate. Expected short-term accuracy is on the order of ± 0.0005 inch, relative to the fixed calibration reference

bar. Errors due to the nonalignment (vertical) of the crack plugs relative to one another could affect observational accuracy (and long-term repeatability) upwards of ±0.01 inch. Given all of the above errors and uncertainties, estimated long-term crack measurement accuracy is at the ±0.005 to 0.010-inch level; totally independent of short-term movements in the structure due to load or temperature influences. Crack and joint measurement requirements are typically listed in tabular form, including instructions for varying hydraulic head levels against the monoliths, if applicable. Requirements and instructions for setting new monitoring points will be provided as required. Structure loading requirements will also be provided for each new observation point.

b. Equipment specifications. The following equipment and instruments are used for crack and joint extension measurements.

(1) Inside micrometer. Any standard machine tooling inside micrometer may be used for crack measurements. Precision calipers and precision rulers may also be employed in lieu of an inside micrometer (Figure 7-5).

Figure 7-5. Starrett vernier caliper crack measurements between monoliths. Central & Southern Florida Flood Control Project (Jacksonville District and Arc Surveying & Mapping, Inc).

(2) Inside micrometer calibration bar. 12-inch center to center standard reference for all micrometer observations. An independent re-calibration of this bar is necessary to monitor long term stability.

(3) Plug inserts. Stainless steel threaded half-inch inserts are used and inserted into the dual or triad points across monolith joints or cracks—Figure 7-6. Inserts are stamped to ensure consistent use on periodic measurements. The 0.500-inch O/D inserts should be precision machined to an accuracy of ±0.001 inch, and verified by micrometer measurement. Precision straight edges may be used to determine offsets between aligned joint bolts.

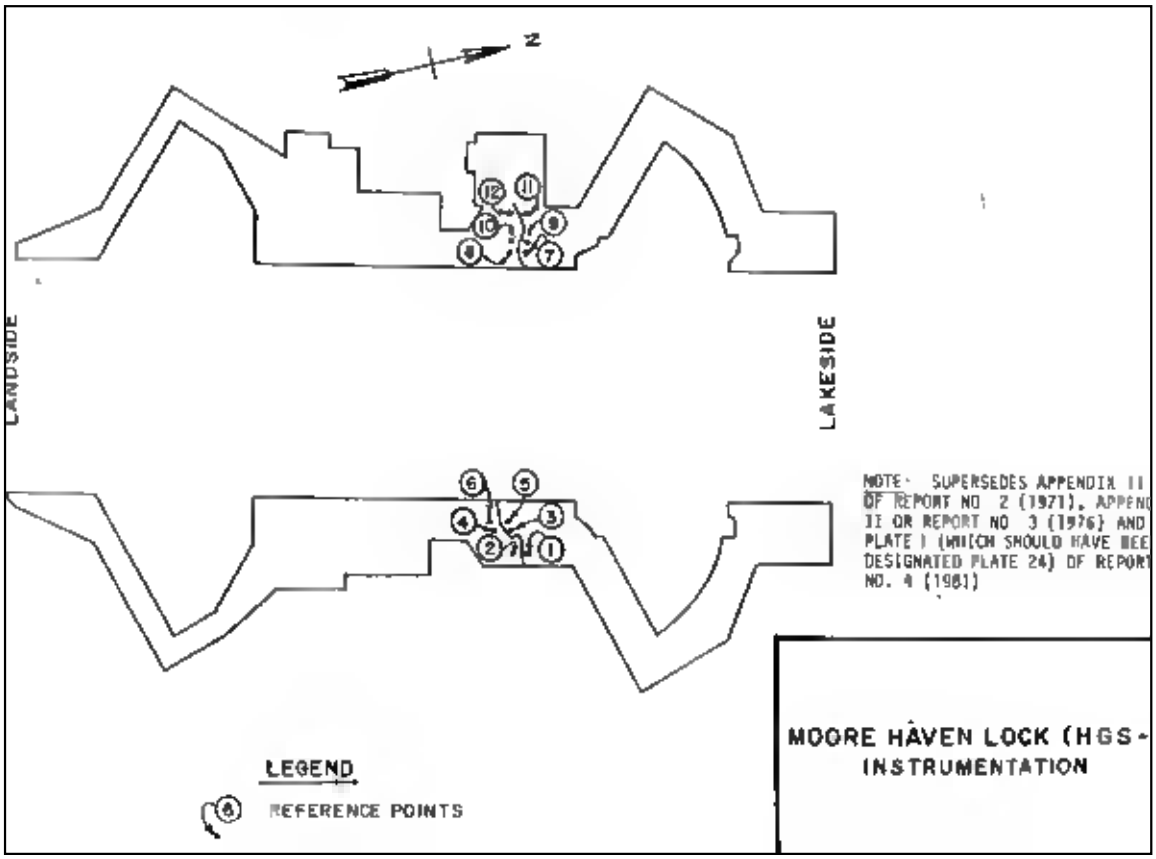


Figure 7-6. Typical monitoring point scheme across existing cracks on a concrete structure—HGS-1, Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project (Jacksonville District).

c. Crack measurement techniques. The following procedures are used for crack and joint extension measurements.

(1) Micrometer measurement. Insert plug pins and measure crack or joint distance using an inside micrometer or caliper. Hold micrometer ends as low as possible on each plug pin. Gently rotate each end for minimum distance observation.

(2) Reading procedures. Read micrometer/caliper values to nearest 0.001 (thousandth) inch. Read in both directions (i.e., reverse micrometer ends) between crack plugs and mean result to

nearest 0.001 (thousandth) inch. Do not attempt to interpolate between 0.001-inch values. Record a single minimum reading for each direction and mean as required.

(3) Tolerances. Readings in each direction should not vary by more than ±0.001 inch unless it can be verified that the crack plugs are grossly misaligned vertically. This can be verified by raising the micrometer at both ends to confirm non-verticality of the grouted plugs.

(4) Dial micrometer. The following applies to an inside micrometer with dial. Lock micrometer to nearest 0.025-inch division and use dial indicator to obtain minimum distance. (Maximum reading on scale, which is subtracted from the preset micrometer value). Ensure dial range is within 0.025-inch micrometer setting range to avoid misreadings and ensure relatively constant spring tension. The following example illustrates crack measurement data.

Micrometer set at:	11.475 inches
Maximum dial scale reading (minimum distance):	-0.021 inch
Observed uncorrected micrometer length:	11.454 inches

(5) Triad crack/plug configurations. Three marked pins must be used in the same plug upon each inspection, per the following convention:

"L"	Lowest numbered crack plug
"H"	Highest numbered crack plug
"b"	"Blank"—in medium numbered crack plug

For example, at "Inglis Lock," the following naming convention might be used:

PLUG	PLUG
IL19N4	"L"
IL19N5	Blank
IL19N6	"H"

Normally, only one forward/reverse observation will be required for each pair of plugs—approximately a 1 to 2-minute procedure. Additional observations under different structural loading conditions or temperature conditions will not be performed unless specifically requested in the project instructions. In cases where observations are taken over varying points in time or condition, they will not be meaned; given the external structural variability on the measurements.

(6) Tolerance specifications. The measurement rejection criteria are ±0.001 inch between each direction reversal and ±0.001 inch from nominal calibration bar constant. Failure to obtain

agreement in each direction may be due to non-verticality of the plugs; in which case, no re-observations are necessary.

(7) Recording formats and reductions. Standard field survey books for both observations and corrected/adjusted lengths are normally used. All observations and reductions will be computed and verified in the field—and recorded directly into the field survey book. Micrometer data are corrected for calibration constants as shown above. Quick comparisons should be made with previous observations to preclude against blunders. Tabulate field reduced distance into final reports and compute changes from past readings, as shown in the example at Figure 7-7. Standard forms for periodic crack measurements are also found in EM 1110-2-4300.

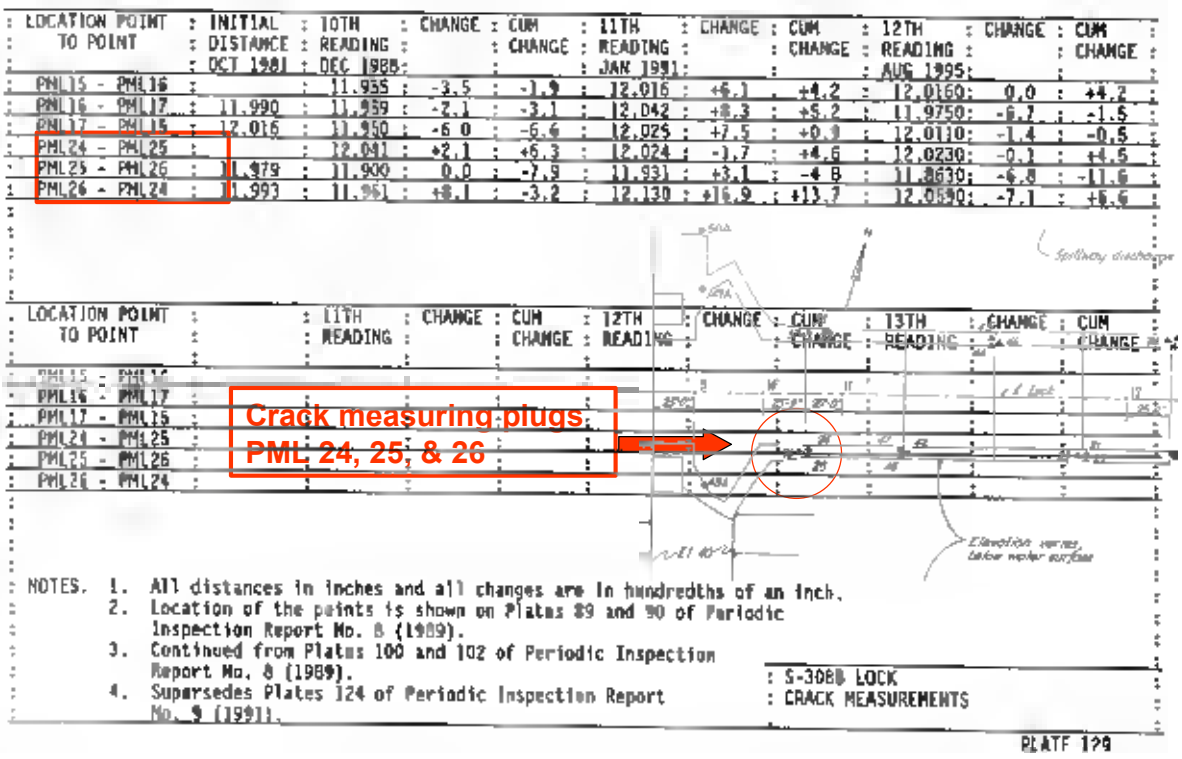


Figure 7-7. Port Mayaca Lock (St. Lucie Canal) crack measurements—981 to 1995. Distance changes are tabulated for successive readings. Cumulative changes are recorded relative to the initial observation in October 1981.

d. Micrometer calibration bars. The calibration bar is used to ensure the micrometer is accurate by verifying a 12.000-inch center to center distance. The calibration bar should be kept shaded to prevent dimensional changes. Calibrate caliper/micrometer prior to structure observation using an independent reference. The single, meaned, forward/backward micrometer positions on the calibration bar should be observed/recorded to the nearest 0.001 inch.

(1) Calibration example. The following example illustrates calibration of a Starrett Micrometer. The resulting micrometer and caliper calibration correction is then applied to all subsequent crack readings.

	FORWARD	BACKWARD
Micrometer	11.475	11.475
Dial	-0.021	-0.020
Reading	11.454	11.455

Meaned Calibration Reading = 11.454 inches

CALIBRATION CORRECTION	
(Nominal Calibration Bar Length)	12.000
-(Calibration Reading)	-11.454
Calibration Correction	00.546 inches

(2) Observation record example. The following is a typical example of a field book entry for a crack observation using a Starrett Inside Micrometer:

Cross Florida Barge Canal, Inglis Lock & Spillway
Points: IL19N4 to IL19N5
19 July 1984 0845
Mic-Bergen, Notes-Noles, Bergen
T - 86º F, Rain
Lock Full @ 36.0' elev.

FWD		BACK
11.475	Mic	11.475
-0.019	Dial	-0.020
11.456		11.455

Mean = 11.456 in

Calibration Correction = +0.546 inch

Corrected Plug Reading = 12.002 inches
(IL19N4 to IL19N5)

The corrected plug-to-plug reading (12.002 inches) may be directly inserted on tabulation report with no further adjustments required.

e. Periodic micrometer calibration. Independent annual calibrations should be performed on the following components:

-Inside Micrometer or Calipers,
-Reference Calibration Bar, and
-Threaded ½ inch Plug Inserts.

(1) Temperature effects. Calibrations should be checked over the normal temperature range that these devices are subject to in order to determine if expansion (temperature dependent) corrections become significant.

(2) Non-verticality of plugs. There is no method for eliminating the error due to non-verticality of the plugs other than using identical inserts on each visit. Use of inside/outside precision calipers will eliminate most independent calibration requirements other than the calipers themselves and insure true roundness and alignment of the threaded plug inserts. The need for a reference calibration bar may also be eliminated

CHAPTER 8

Monitoring Structural Deformations Using the Global Positioning System

8-1. Purpose. This chapter provides technical guidance on the use of the GPS for monitoring and measuring 3D displacements on large engineering structures. Applications of GPS for the determination of long-term stability and movement on dams, navigation locks, and other similar types of construction projects are described. Technical guidance on procedures, standards, and specifications recommended for data collection and analysis are included.

8-2. Background. The specialized surveying practices described in previous chapters tend to be time and labor intensive. GPS surveying techniques for structural monitoring have a high potential for reduction in manpower needed for conducting deformation surveys. Although GPS can yield positions that are comparable to (and may even exceed) the accuracy levels expected for conventional surveys, its use in the past was limited because of a requirement for lengthy station occupation times. Reduced occupation times have now been realized through the use of specialized instrumentation enhanced software analysis, resulting in reliable sub-centimeter accuracy from much shorter observing sessions. In modern usage, satellite positioning systems for monitoring deformations are based on Global Navigation Satellite Systems (GNSS) technology, which includes GPS and additional satellite systems. GNSS satellite signals have been enhanced and supplemented with additional signals being broadcast by the United States. Most current GNSS equipment and software used to conduct high accuracy surveys have also been enhanced with the ability to track additional GNSS systems, including Glonass, Galileo, and BeiDou. The technical guidance presented in this chapter contains the procedures and standards for the use of GPS measurements on deformation monitoring projects.

a. GPS overview. For detailed information and background on GPS, see EM 1110-1-1003. Specialized receiver-antenna equipment adequate for use on monitoring surveys is widely available as COTS products. Multiple GPS receiver units can be deployed and operated for many hours to conduct monitoring project surveys. Processing outputs and collected data supply high reliability and statistical assessments routinely applicable to network adjustment position determination. Simultaneous positioning can be obtained on stations normally configured for conventional surveying operations. No highly specialized data collection requirements are needed; however, data processing can become technically complex in more advanced applications of data filtering and data cleaning.

b. GPS Applications and Precautions. With further refinement of the data processing strategies presented in this chapter, lower cost and better performance on monitoring surveys can be expected from current GPS technology. At the present time, GPS surveying can be used to substitute conventional monitoring techniques using the standards presented in this chapter. Attention to actual GPS data quality and prevention of systematic biases in the measurements must be made to ensure adequate results. GPS signal disturbances may be unavoidable under certain field conditions. Appropriate measures should be taken to obtain clean (unbiased) GPS data through mission planning, reconnaissance, and careful data post-processing and evaluation

of the results. GPS is highly recommended for conducting surveys of the reference network of stable points surrounding the project structure. With high accuracy coordinates on at least two reference stations, and reasonably clean GPS data collected at monitoring points, high accuracy relative positioning can be routinely achieved. GPS users should take special care to minimize signal obstructions at sites that are prone to generating multipath signal reflections. Methods for accomplishing this are presented in this chapter.

8-3. Scope of Chapter. This chapter is divided into four sections, as summarized below.

a. Section I: Monitoring Structural Deformations with GPS. This section presents practical guidance for GPS monitoring survey operations. Surveying requirements for accuracy, system performance, and equipment are discussed. Surveying procedures and specifications for planning, fieldwork, and data collection are covered. Data processing procedures are covered, which describe the software and processing requirements for baselines and networks, including least squares adjustment techniques. GPS monitoring applications included in this section cover planning surveys for reconnaissance, and criteria for the installation of GPS monitoring networks. Also included are procedures for performing reference network surveys that are conducted for separate high accuracy positioning tasks, and production surveys configured to follow conventional survey procedures and layouts. In addition, procedures for performing specialized GPS surveys are described—as may be required for continuous monitoring, or monitoring under hazardous conditions.

b. Section II: GPS Performance on Monitoring Networks. This section presents results of field tests conducted to evaluate GPS surveying capabilities on monitoring networks. Principles of GPS carrier phase measurements are summarized, including operational components and user survey controls. GPS system performance, including random and systematic error sources, are discussed. Sources of error in GPS measurements are described relative to GPS system status and site specific effects that present major problems over short baseline networks. Examples are included of GPS performance in actual USACE project monitoring cases, which demonstrate comparable results to conventional surveys.

c. Section III: Data Quality Assessment for Precise GPS Surveying. This section presents examples and techniques for describing problems with GPS data quality in monitoring applications. Quality assessment tools, including statistics and quality control software, are discussed. Data post-processing, software, and statistics used to solve for baseline position components and the evaluation of the results are described. This section also demonstrates how external network quality can be determined by closure and station checks using multiple inter-connected baselines.

d. Section IV: Mitigation of Multipath Signals. This section presents information for minimizing and removing multipath errors, which are a major source of systematic error in precise short baseline surveys. A description of multipath effects on GPS carrier signals is discussed. Possible techniques for data cleaning and data re-processing are presented, as are data

filtering techniques that can be used to minimize errors and improve solution quality. Also covered are tests on using signal strength values for carrier phase measurement weighting that indicate improvements in removing bias and more robust ambiguity resolution.

Section I
Monitoring Structural Deformation with GPS

8-4. Surveying Requirements**.**

a. System Requirements. A successful GPS-based deformation measurement system should meet the following performance requirements:

(1) The system should provide relative horizontal and vertical positioning accuracies comparable to those obtained from existing conventional deformation surveys.

(2) Station occupation times should be reduced to minutes per station, approximately the amount of time required for completion of a typical monitoring survey in one working day. Each station should be occupied once and then have the rod rotated 180° and then observed again to remove any bias that may be created by the rod errors. Fixed height rods and tripods should be used whenever possible to help reduce possible height errors.

(3) The system should operate with COTS equipment having nominal power requirements, such as the geodetic quality GPS equipment and computers available from commercial sources. It is desired that the system not require classified access for full performance.

(4) The system should collect data that conforms to Receiver Independent Exchange (RINEX) standards for subsequent data post-processing. At a minimum, the system should have the capability to log data, at a one second logging rate, over a continuous eight-hour period for multiple reference stations.

(5) The system should provide redundant observations of monitoring point positions so that reliability, statistical assessments, and detection of outliers are enabled. Applicable GPS positions, baselines, and measurement weights should be compatible with requirements for geodetic network adjustment processing.

(6) The system should provide localized coverage over a network of survey points that would be typically installed on project sites. The system should be capable of simultaneously positioning multiple receivers/users on the structure.

(7) It is desired that no specialized operational procedures be required to initialize the system and conduct a mission. Any needed pre-mission operations should be within the capability of the survey crew to perform.

b. Equipment requirements. Only precise carrier phase relative positioning techniques will yield accuracies sufficient for GPS structural deformation surveys. COTS geodetic type receiver/antenna equipment has the operational capabilities necessary for collecting high-quality carrier phase data. An inventory of recommended components for such a system are as follows:

(1) Receiver. A geodetic quality GPS receiver should have at a minimum: L1/L2 phase measurement capability, with at least a one second data logging rate; up-to-date receiver firmware version, and hardware boards that include any features available for high fidelity carrier tracking, and radio frequency (RF) suppression in static surveying mode; internal raw data storage with a port connection enabled for logging to a computer, data collector, or data communications system; and other accessories for protection and transport, such as carrying cases.

(2) Antenna. At a minimum, the antenna should be a dual frequency GPS L1/L2 microstrip antenna with flat ground plane or choke ring, and type-matched to GPS receiver. Both L1/L2 antenna phase center offsets should be published within 1 mm as measured along the mechanical axis to the antenna reference base-plate. Typically, a standard antenna base attachment rod/bolt, with 5/8-inch diameter, 11NC tooling, or other precision forced centered attachment system is used. Standard antenna-to-tribrach mounting adapters and tribrachs may be used as a forced centering assembly. GPS equipment that combines the GPS receiver and antenna into one unit is acceptable to use provided the equipment is of geodetic quality and can meet the operational performance requirements.

(3) Transmission cables. Antenna-receiver, and data communications, connector cables as required.

(4) Power supply. Power supply (AC/UPS) and/or 12V DC battery power with compatible charger units and cables. System may need to operate for 10 hours or more without recharge, therefore, power requirement design should include peripheral device load.

(5) Software. Data downloading, logging, or processing software needed for retrieving raw data files, and/or for communication with an external computer and/or other permanent data storage media. GPS survey data and baseline processing software and network adjustment software.

(6) Computer. Computer equipment should be consistent with minimum requirements to perform GPS data processing (see manufacture/software developer requirements). A separate computer (as an AirGap) might have to be used to download data from the data collector and/or GPS device. Make sure this computer has the proper ports to allow connection to data collector devices and/or GPS receivers. Once downloaded, the data can be placed on an external hard dive for transfer to the processing computer. If needed, a notebook or laptop computer is beneficial to perform field collection and processing. Computer equipment should include external hard drives for backup and storage of data.

(7) Field equipment. Miscellaneous equipment may include: steel tape or rods for antenna height measurements, wide base opening tribrachs, and nadir plummet for precise tribrach centering; stable surveyors tripod; meteorological instruments; field book; and ground tarp.

For multiple equipment systems deployed on a project, efforts should be made to replicate each unit as closely as possible. This includes specifications for hardware manufacturer, model, and physical specifications (e.g., cable lengths), firmware version, and software. Variations in measurement performance between different receiver-antenna systems are reduced because equipment related biases are common to each system.

8-5. Surveying Procedures**.**

a. GPS has several advantages over conventional surveys. It provides flexibility in the location of monitoring stations, semi-automated data collection and processing, reliable 3D relative positioning between two points, built-in error analysis and export capability for survey adjustments, and potentially faster hands-off field survey operation. The fieldwork and procedures for GPS deformation surveys can be conducted in ways that are very similar to conventional surveying field operations described in earlier chapters of this manual. Following is a discussion of recommended procedures for conducting GPS deformation surveys, including preparation, fieldwork, processing, and monitoring applications.

b. Preparation for fieldwork. Data collection efforts with GPS equipment require a moderate level of planning and coordination.

(1) Mission planning. Typically, a GPS monitoring survey will require occupations of multiple station points. If multiple receiver units are employed, then coordination of different occupation sequences should be specified prior to the fieldwork. The schedule of station occupation times is based on GPS mission planning. Satellite constellation status and local observing conditions are determined from two main sources of information: (1) GPS mission planning software and, (2) Notice Advisory to NAVSTAR Users (NANU) bulletins. Both should be consulted prior to performing fieldwork.

(a) Mission planning software. Software is used to predict the number of visible satellites, DOP values, the location of each satellite (azimuth and elevation above horizon), and continuous coverage for each Space Vehicle (SV) over a given time period. The software requires a recent GPS satellite ephemeris file, a specific date and time period, and the geographic location of interest.

(b) NANU. GPS constellation status information is reported by announcements known as NANU. The U.S. Air Force Space Command Master Control Station distributes NANU messages as frequently as new information becomes available. Automated Data Services (ADS) can be checked daily for current outages and scheduled events through the U.S. Coast Guard Navigation Center (NAVCEN) at: http://www.navcen.uscg.gov. The information contained in the archived NANU files include the NANU message number, relevant start and stop date referred to the Day of Year (DOY) that begins at 0000 UT, Message Type (Forecast Outages, Unscheduled Outages, Other), SV and code (PRN), reported Condition, and POC for further information. Standardized message types are designated by abbreviations that describe the

condition being reported. NANU bulletins should be checked in advance of and after completion for the times scheduled to conduct GPS monitoring surveys.

(2) GPS equipment. Sufficient time should be budgeted to assemble and organize GPS surveying equipment for transport and/or shipping to the project site immediately prior to the scheduled work. Access to project AC power may require coordination with on-site personnel and all portable DC battery units should be fully pre-charged. A standard property inventory or packing list should be prepared to ensure all necessary equipment is available. Maintenance and inspection of this inventory should be completed before and after each monitoring survey.

c. Fieldwork procedures. Data collection efforts depend on consistent fieldwork practices. The recommended sequence of events for each monitoring station occupation is as follows.

(1) Preparation. Set up tripod, forced centering device, or other stable antenna-mounting frame over the monitoring point at the station mark. Attach tribrach/trivet assembly, level, and precisely center over reference mark to within 1 mm accuracy.

(2) Receiver user-defined parameters. Mask angle should be set to zero (0) degrees, Position Dilution of Precision (PDOP) cutoff set to 20 or higher, and data logging rate set to one (1) second. Field collection parameters should be set to allow the greatest amount of satellite/signal data collection, which if necessary, can be filtered/removed during post-processing.

(3) Station set up and measurements. Antenna heights should be measured twice to within less than 1 mm and recorded on the station data sheet. When possible, fixed height tripods and rods should be used. The antenna ground plane is oriented to magnetic/true north, and secured. Once the receiver unit has acquired at least five satellites (L1/L2 tracking), the survey session can begin. Initiate data logging using the appropriate user controls. Filenames should reflect station names and antenna heights are designated as vertical or slant range to the ground plane.

(4) At the end of the station observing session, antenna heights should be re-checked. Equipment is disassembled and transported to the next station setup.

d. Data collection procedures. The following data collection scheme may be used at each station to conduct the monitoring survey.

(1) Session length. A session length of at least 3-5 minutes (L1/L2 carrier phase data) is required to meet minimum positioning accuracies using two simultaneously observed reference stations. On stations where unfavorable signal quality is expected, session lengths may need to be increased to 15-30 minutes or more based on the outcome of reconnaissance surveys.

(2) Redundancy. Monitoring stations are positioned relative to at least two stable reference stations in the reference network. Simultaneous data collection at all three stations (monitoring point and two reference stations) is required. Greater redundancy can be obtained by observing

each station twice at different time periods. This ensures that the satellite constellation has changed over a significant time period (2-4 hours minimum).

(3) Coverage. A minimum of eight (8) visible satellites should be tracked at all times—preferably five or more satellites will have continuous tracking throughout the session. GPS mission planning software should be used to maximize the number of continuously tracked satellites in each session.

(4) GPS data types. At a minimum, dual frequency data should be recorded by the receiver at specified logging rates. Dual frequency data enables data quality checks and provides additional GPS observations that enhance survey reliability.

(5) Station data. Specific information related to the data collection should be noted and recorded on the appropriate log sheets. These include: station name, receiver and antenna serial numbers, observer name, date of survey, start and stop times of each session, notes about problems encountered, entered filename and antenna height (phase center heights recorded if needed), antenna cable lengths (m), and session number if occupation is repeated.

(6) Recording interval. A one (1) second data logging rate should be used in all data collected for monitoring surveys. The logging rate is defined as the time interval (in seconds) between each data value recorded in the receiver's internal memory or written to an external storage device.

8-6. Data Processing Procedures**.**

a. General. Guidance for processing raw data is designed to meet the monitoring accuracy requirements. A variety of software applications are available for GPS data post-processing and adjustment. Commercial software is adequate for most GPS monitoring surveys, with some limitations. Various software packages provide different levels of customized processing and output statistics. Recommended procedures for GPS data post-processing on monitoring surveys are summarized below.

b. Software requirements. Most GPS post-processing software has standard features for loading data and processing baselines. Capabilities for baseline processing software should include the following considerations. Both static and kinematic (for examining epoch by epoch solutions) mode post-processing should be available using a standard session input data file (e.g., RINEX). Satellite data deletion and data editing should be available that is indexed by SV number or by session measurement (indexed by time epoch). A standard text editor or user-developed software programs such as Translation Editing Quality Check (TEQC) or Windows TECQ (WinTEQC) should be able to carry out measurement editing in the RINEX file. GPS carrier phase measurement and civilian code position solutions should be available. The option for using only L1 signal or L2 signal data should be selectable for position solution output. RINEX data and ephemeris file input data should be enabled without any special problems.

Extraction of ASCII format position data in X-Y-Z, Cartesian WGS84 coordinates, with subsequent conversion of solution data to WGS84 geodetic coordinates, and to projected northing, easting, and vertical coordinates, should be available.

c. Raw GPS data. Information required for post-processing raw GPS observations and GPS ephemeris files are summarized below.

(1) Observation files. Raw data is downloaded from the GPS receiver and imported to the processing software. Data files stored in binary form should be translated to RINEX format for editing and archiving. The RINEX stores data as an ASCII text file format containing a header section followed by time tags with blocks of GPS observations.

(2) Ephemeris files. Orbit data is broadcast in real-time (by the GPS satellite) in the GPS signal navigation message. This broadcast ephemeris can be extracted from the raw GPS data file or is sometimes stored separately with a conventional file name extension (e.g., *.eph). A more refined orbit, known as the precise ephemeris, contains smoother, more accurate post-processed orbit data. Precise ephemeris data is available in three types, Final (12-day latency), Rapid (17-hour latency), and UltraRapid (released 4 times each day) from the International GPS Service at https://igscb.jpl.nasa.gov/components/prods_cb.html.

d. Baseline processing. Processing steps for a single GPS baseline are outlined below.

(1) Baseline input data. Computation of baselines requires the following information supplied by the user: station names specified for each endpoint of the baseline, antenna heights in meters for both baseline stations, separate filename for GPS data collected at each station, approximate coordinates for each station with position quality, receiver and antenna type with known phase center offset, and session start and stop times for each station observation set.

(2) Baseline processor controls. Setup functions for baseline processing require the following control values. Fixed station geodetic coordinates must be supplied for at least one occupied station. Accuracy at the fixed station should be close to the centimeter level for best results (e.g., ambiguity resolution). Generally, fixed station coordinates (in WGS84) from initial GPS installation surveys or prior monitoring surveys can be used. Satellite elevation mask angle is set between 15-20 degrees. For poor quality data, the mask angle may need to be increased (if selectable for each SV). An alternative is to directly edit the RINEX file to remove satellite data at periods with low satellite elevations, based on data quality assessment statistics or other criteria. GPS baselines are processed for L1 solution only, with the output log file option set to calculate residuals for each double difference combination that was used in processing. Double difference residuals will not be reported for at least one satellite throughout the processing session, as it will be fixed internally as a reference. Set the software to use both L1 and L2 phase and code data if available. This additional data is used by the software to improve ambiguity resolution. Select at least a 95% confidence level for reporting all statistical outputs and for measurement outlier detection. The software may supply a default statistical testing value that is

equivalent to using a 95% confidence in the statistics. Select options for full information reporting for each solution output file.

(3) Evaluation of processing output. The results of each baseline solution are examined for completeness and then compared to survey design specifications. Acceptable mean and standard deviation of residuals are generally in the range of 3 mm and 4 mm respectively, with a fixed L1 phase only solution. Standard deviations of each X-Y-Z baseline component are less than 2.0 mm (one-sigma). Processing variance factor should be between 0.5 and 2.0, and the ratio of fixed to float RMS should be greater than seven (7). Distribution of all double difference residuals should pass the Chi-squared goodness-of-fit test at the 95% confidence level. Scaled point confidence ellipse major semi-axis should be less than 3-5 mm (95%) for each station. The baseline processor software must remove all cycle slips and measurement outliers in data.

e. Network processing requirements. The steps used for processing multiple baselines in a monitoring network are outlined below.

(1) Reference network. The reference network is processed before the monitoring network to establish high accuracy control coordinates for each reference station. All simultaneously observed baselines are processed separately between each reference station that was occupied during the survey. One station is selected as a master station having an averaged code position or transferred area control known, preferably in WGS84 Geodetic coordinates. These coordinates are established during network installation surveys. Control coordinates on the master station are held fixed in a minimally constrained network adjustment of all reference network baselines. Static session mode solutions are all that is generally required for processing the reference network baselines. Data and post processed results should be examined to remove any obviously poor data following session status evaluation and data editing. Input controls and output statistics listed above should be satisfied for all reference network baselines. If there are four or more reference stations, then stable point analysis can be applied to detect movements in the reference network. Processing outputs and edited data files are saved separately as part of the project data archive.

(2) Monitoring network. All stable reference network stations are fixed with control coordinates established by the reference network survey processing results. Each monitoring station data file is processed baseline-by-baseline using each simultaneously observed reference station data file. Input controls and output statistics listed above should be satisfied for all monitoring network baselines. Misclosures and data quality checks should be made for baseline post-processing involving each monitoring point following criteria presented above. Processing outputs and edited data files are saved separately as part of the project data archive. Solution files are prepared for export to network adjustment software. An initial adjustment using only minimal constraints can be run between the master reference station and all of the monitoring points to examine initial survey quality.

f. Network adjustment requirements. Once all of the data has been processed and validated, GPS baseline ties will connect the entire surveyed network of monitoring points. All post-processed GPS solution vectors are processed using least squares network adjustment software. Weights are usually supplied by the baseline processing covariance matrix of parameters. The resulting coordinates for each point in the monitoring network define the final 3D position of each monitoring station. Stable reference station coordinates are fixed in the project coordinate system. Standard network adjustment procedures and outputs are obtained for the GPS monitoring survey. At a minimum, error ellipses (95%) are compared to accuracy requirements, and residuals examined for systematic bias.

g. Position displacements. Final coordinates for each monitoring point are differenced from the previous survey adjustment coordinates to determine the 3D displacement at each survey station. An examination of plotted movement trends (coordinate differences) and comparison of direction and magnitude to the maximum expected displacement is made to summarize deformations of the structure. Any unusual or unexpected movement trends should be traced back so that the supporting GPS data is validated a second time.

8-7. GPS Monitoring Applications.

a. General. Various kinds of GPS project surveys are made to obtain specialized information about the structure and its surroundings. These can be classified into four different application types, namely: planning surveys (including reconnaissance and installation surveys), reference surveys, monitoring surveys, and specialized surveys.

b. Planning surveys. Reconnaissance and installation surveys are made before implementing an extensive program for GPS monitoring. In most cases, it will be necessary to collect information about site-specific GPS performance. This involves limited fieldwork and measurement tests conducted in the planning stages of the design to check proposed new or upgraded project monitoring systems.

(1) Reconnaissance surveys. After it has been established that GPS surveys are adequate for obtaining deformation measurements, a site visit is required for reconnaissance. These surveys are made to determine possible locations for monitoring stations, to identify any site-specific data collection problems, and to estimate system installation and future operation/maintenance requirements.

(2) Station placement tests. The objective is to collect GPS test data at locations where monitoring is requested (as specified in the monitoring plan). A second objective is to establish temporary points within the area of interest where the best quality data can be obtained. The reconnaissance survey should reflect the proposed permanent survey system as closely as possible using only enough points to check data quality. Baselines are observed at each major section of the structure, especially if site conditions change or where data may be suspect. As few as 2 to 3 baselines on the structure, and, at minimum, one session on each reference station,

should be observed. Session lengths should be at least one hour for each test station, and at least one baseline session on the structure should be greater than 3 hours. Once the data has been collected and processed, a suitability analysis is carried out for each proposed location. If problems are encountered with a particular station, these will be relocated or be reported to the monitoring system designers for alternative placements.

(3) Example placements. Typical station placement tests might include: stations at the crest and toe of embankment structures; across the total length of the crest of concrete dams, with separate baseline ties to rock abutments made from at least one of the crest monoliths; and for navigation locks, station ties from the bank area to the riverside wall, along the length of one wall, and in any areas where stations must be located near walls or obstructions. One test method is to use multiple GPS units deployed over a cross-section of 2 to 3 GPS monitoring points, with simultaneous logging on at least one reference station. Most important is that all reference network stations should be occupied and observed for at least one session during reconnaissance surveys.

(4) Maximum baseline length. GPS baselines should not exceed 1 to 2 km from the furthest reference station, if possible. Better results are obtained if only hundreds of meter distances separate the stations. A test should be made over the maximum length baseline on the project to determine the expected low-end precision for the surveys. The GPS baseline length test is at least 3 hours in duration to ensure the solution converges to a stable accuracy level. Baseline accuracy can be examined to determine if the test results meet monitoring requirements.

(5) Multipath detection tests. Baseline results and statistics are examined per methods to detect the presence of multipath error.

(6) Receiver signal tests. Two GPS stations located near each other on the structure—say within 10 meters—allow both receivers to collect data that should be nearly identical. Data processing results can verify signal error levels where there are large nearby obstructions (several meters away) or vertical walls extending above the antenna.

(7) Mission planning. Reconnaissance surveys can verify mission planning results through comparison with actual GPS data. Data types such as, number of satellites, continuous coverage, DOP values, elevation angles, and visibility windows for specific satellites are examined to confirm design values. Any potential trouble spots in the observing area should be identified before making permanent station installations.

(8) Installation surveys. After permanent monitoring stations are selected (and monumented), an initial GPS network survey must be made to complete the installation. This procedure involves a site visit with all field equipment required to conduct the installation survey. The initial survey of project baselines should be made to higher standards than those designed for production monitoring. Additional GPS data will yield high accuracy initial positions and supply a relatively large amount of data for a final system performance checkout.

The surveying methods used for the initial survey of the reference network are identical to those used for production work. Data collected at each of the monitoring points on the structure may have 25–50% longer sessions, or at least one hour of data (whichever is greater).

c. Reference network surveys. The reference network consists of stable monuments set near the structure as a permanent reference frame for tracking movement of the structure. Surveys of the reference network require the highest accuracy measurements on monitoring projects. The precise relative position of each station in the reference network is needed to produce better accuracy during production surveys. The following design specifications for reference network surveys are recommended.

(1) Number of stations. A minimum of two reference stations must be occupied during the entire data collection phase of the production surveys. Three or four stations may be required for project sites where station placement is limited due to terrain, sky visibility, long baselines, or need for higher reliability. At least one (preferably two) continuously occupied control points on the structure (tied into the reference network surveys) allows for shorter baselines to be observed to the remaining monitoring points.

(2) Session length. At least 3–4 hours continuous occupation time at each reference station is required. More than 4 hours will improve the reliability of the positioning. Reference station surveys are conducted at the same time as production surveys. Data editing for reference surveys is less critical than for production surveys because there is usually a larger percentage of high accuracy data. A reasonably clean data set should be obtained for the reference network but this is not usually a problem because observations are made over much longer sessions.

(3) Visibility. Wide-open areas with sky visibility in the south direction are preferred. Large objects (buildings, walls, fence lines) in the vicinity of the station should not extend above the antenna ground plane if possible. Areas free of any obstructions that produce signal reflections (e.g., buildings, water bodies, and metal structures) are most favorable

(4) Structure reference points. It is recommended that at least one control point station be placed on the structure itself. With this structure (reference) point scheme, there will always be a high-order station at a short distance to the monitoring points. The structure station is tied into the surrounding permanent reference network using long observation GPS baseline data. The longer observing session provides better positioning accuracy and better ambiguity resolution to the monitoring points.

(5) Station occupation. Reference stations should be constructed and maintained per guidance presented in previous chapters. Antennas should be force-centered to within 1 mm tolerance. Antenna heights should be no less than 1.5 meters from the ground. Obstructions in the immediate area should be no closer than 1 m to the antenna. Geodetic antennas capable of receiving multiple frequencies with ground plane are required. Choke ring antennas can be used to improve multipath suppression.

(6) Project datum selection. National Spatial Reference System (NSRS) coordinates are recommended for USACE monitoring projects. Coordinates in other datums (such as WGS84 system) can be derived from these NSRS values. Observing ties to NGS or other local high-order control networks can be used to establish initial NSRS coordinates on monitoring reference networks.

d. Production surveys. GPS production surveys share many practices with conventional surveying. For example, setting station monuments, occupying these stations, data processing and reductions, and archiving results. Advantages over conventional surveys include less reliance on station intervisibility, automatic data collection, semi-automatic data processing, electronic data transfer and storage, and flexibility in deployment. GPS techniques presented in this section attempt to match the work flow and field procedures familiar in conventional surveys as closely as possible. Processing production survey data includes both kinematic and static mode solutions. Kinematic mode allows the user to examine and edit positioning data within a series of discrete position solutions. Static processing provides adjustment residuals and robust session statistics. Results of both types of processing could be compared during the evaluation of the survey.

(1) Kinematic surveys. Kinematic positions are processed sequentially from the raw data to obtain an output at every measurement epoch, provided the integer ambiguity for each satellite is resolved. Kinematic processing involves downloading data from each receiver as would be done for a static session file and then either converting to RINEX or retaining as a binary file. Selecting the kinematic processing option will force a solution in kinematic mode. All other processing options are set as if it were a static session. One reference station is held fixed with its high accuracy coordinates. Next, process the carrier phase data for each two-station baseline and extract the time series positions for the monitored point as an American Standard Code for Information Interchange (ASCII) file. Export the data in columns to a spreadsheet or similar software package. Various statistics can be computed such as a mean value for each coordinate component (X, Y, and Z), point differences from the mean, and plotting the position deviation time series. Clean data is separated by selecting time epochs associated with the best data quality statistics and then reported or re-processed. An average of the highest quality kinematic positions is made to obtain the final position for the monitored point with respect to the reference station.

(2) Static session processing. Data collected in static survey mode is processed as a block to produce an average position over a given time span. This has the advantage of providing a high degree of redundancy over the entire GPS observing session. Interpretation of statistical outputs is simplified when using a static session mode; however, biases can more easily corrupt the processing session as a whole. Static surveys work best at stations where GPS data has been confirmed to be of high quality such as where the observing conditions are historically very favorable.

e. Specialized surveys. GPS can be used for continuous deformation monitoring as a permanent installation, during temporary repair work, or where human occupations are potentially hazardous.

(1) Continuous monitoring systems. GPS can produce real-time continuous positioning for monitoring applications. Generally, continuous GPS monitoring is used for plate motion and tectonic studies that cover wide regional areas. For example, there is the seismic monitoring array in the western U.S., and the extensive global GPS tracking networks established by the International GPS Service for Geodynamics (IGS). Localized GPS networks have also been developed that track movements on structures in a continuous operating mode. These systems are configured for either static or real-time survey operations with a GPS receiver, antenna, data communications system (e.g., radio-link, fiber-optic line), and a power supply. Off-site GPS base stations are used to survey and process outputs from multiple GPS units mounted on the structure. Batteries are used as either a primary or backup power supply. With adequate power and receiver system protection, these units are designed to operate continuously for extended periods of time. Problem situations and data corruptions can arise in continuous operation, for example, occasional abnormal GPS satellite status, extreme weather, equipment failure, accidents, bird nesting on antennas, and power interruptions. Software required to process continuous GPS data will usually have to be specially developed to suit the proposed equipment, data types, and desired outputs. One of the advantages of continuous monitoring systems is their ability to collect data over very long sessions that can be processed and archived as daily session files. Millimeter accuracies are typical for daily GPS sessions collected over relatively short baselines. Another advantage to continuous GPS monitoring is the ability to customize outputs, such as for high accuracy, increased sensitivity to movement in a particular direction, or to warn the user if movement exceeds a safety threshold.

(2) Hazardous conditions. Conventional GPS surveys can be used in situations where the structure is undergoing repairs. In hazardous conditions, GPS can be set up to log continuously in kinematic solution mode to provide near-instantaneous movement data to site personnel. Usually these surveys are a temporary collection of movement data. A typical configuration is with a GPS rover and a base station providing continuous real-time position output. Each system is equipped with communications to enable monitoring at a safe distance while providing the same outputs as conventional GPS monitoring.

8-8. GPS Survey Reporting and Results.

a. General. This section describes survey reporting, data organization, and permanent storage of GPS data and results.

b. Survey reporting. GPS monitoring surveys produce large amounts of data and processing outputs. Some of this information is critical to examine and save, other parts are not valuable or are not required for the overall long-term objectives of the survey. Important types of information include the final position outputs from the least squares network adjustment. This

includes a numerical summary in the form of tables for the previous and current surveys. Graphs, charts, and diagrams that document the performance of the survey at each monitoring station are useful as supporting data. For example, condensed tables of processing results, statistics, kinematic positioning plots, displacement trends, and reference network survey reports each as a separate appendix. Statistics should provide survey point positioning error reports for each station at the 95% confidence level. Plots of station error ellipses in their respective locations (site plan) help visualize the final survey quality. Sessions that undergo any specific data editing or have specific data quality problems can be placed in a separate appendix. Reporting formats should follow practices established for conventional monitoring surveys.

c. GPS data storage. Monitoring survey data and results should be archived for future reference and possible use. Raw data files, processing outputs, and final results should be maintained in electronic form. Raw data should be converted to RINEX and stored along with ephemeris data. Generally, information will be stored in sub-directories per the project name, survey campaign, and by date it was collected or processed. Most GPS processing software provides an option to archive the entire survey in a single compressed file. Precautions should be taken against the processing software (version) eventually going out of date where archived project files cannot be retrieved. Enough information should be saved to reconstruct the final results from each survey using a non-proprietary data archiving system. Custom processing outputs, such as edited output files, plots, and the final report should also be archived in a separate computer file and directory. An index to the project survey files is critical and should be placed in a 'readme' file that is easily accessible. For example, have all survey data in a separate directory, including raw data, ephemeris data, and any edited data files (annotated in the comment section to describe file edits). Separate directories are reserved for storing the following: Processed outputs such as the software-specific project archive, session log files containing error reports, and data quality indicators; The project network adjustment and its associated results and outputs; and the baseline processing solution files covering static mode sessions and any spreadsheets used to examine kinematic station position solutions.

Section II
GPS Performance on Monitoring Networks

8-9. GPS Receiver System Performance.

a. General. The RMS error of GPS receiver Phase Lock Loop (PLL) carrier phase tracking can be characterized by the phase measurement precision, and by systematic errors that distort the clean GPS signal waveform during its transmission, propagation, and reception. Thermal noise and oscillator deviations are principle sources of random noise in GPS receiver units. Systematic error is mainly caused by physical correlation between the GPS signal and its path environment. The adequacy of GPS surveying can be established in part by these internal and external errors. GPS performance is a major factor in determining whether surveying systems requirements have been met. Following is a description of performance and operational limitations that must be accounted for in the design and execution of GPS monitoring surveys.

b. Receiving system noise. Superior phase tracking performance is obtained if the formal (random) error in the phase measurement, and in the Voltage Controlled Oscillator (VCO) clock stability, are limited to a sequence of low noise, zero-mean error states. Under healthy observing conditions, the random error in carrier phase tracking can be modeled directly from the values for received signal carrier-to-noise power density ratio (c/n_o), and PLL filter noise bandwidth (B). These parameters determine an effective tracking channel noise figure in each receiver. Major random error sources in GPS signal tracking are: receiver system thermal (Gaussian) noise (which is dependent on received signal frequency), and short-term phase tracking jitter induced by random deviations in PLL stability and feedback control inputs associated with receiver clock performance (Allan variance of local oscillator). For most GPS static surveying applications, a base resolution of 1/100 part of the wavelength is used as a practical limit for best-case tracking performance. By combining minimum detectable carrier-to-noise (C/N) deviations with a lower-end PLL noise bandwidth (2 MHz typical), at nominal L1/L2 wavelengths, and accounting for clock stability performance in modern receivers, a maximum of 2-3 mm of phase uncertainty is expected for GPS phase measurements.

(1) Thermal noise. The equation for approximating the error on the carrier phase (L1 or L2) due to thermal noise is:

$$\sigma_{PLL} = (\lambda / 2 \pi) (\text{sqrt} [B / (c/n_0)]) \ (m) \qquad \text{(Eq 8-1)}$$

where

B is the carrier tracking loop bandwidth (Hz),
λ is the wavelength of the carrier (m),
c/n_0 is the carrier-to-noise density expressed as a ratio,

and

$c/n_0 = 10^{(C/No)/10}$ for C/N_0 expressed in dB-Hz.

This equation gives a nominal value for the L1 noise of 0.2 mm for a 2 Hz noise bandwidth and a C/N_0 value of 45 dB-Hz. There is an inherent tradeoff between phase measurement resolution and dynamic tracking range in the general design of PLL filters. Better performance on monitoring projects will be obtained from narrow bandwidth correlators. This is because the ground antenna is stationary for the duration of the observing session and satellite-receiver dynamics are always well below PLL tracking thresholds. Higher phase resolution at lower PLL bandwidth is practically limited by received noise power and tolerance to sluggish loop response times.

(2) Clock stability. The equation for approximating RMS phase jitter in the tracking loop has been given by:

$$\sigma_2 = (\lambda / 2 \pi) \; P \; (\sigma_A) f_L / B \cdot (m) \qquad \text{(Eq 8-2)}$$

where

P is an empirical constant based on the PLL loop-order,
f_L is the frequency of the carrier (Hz), and
σ_A is the Allan deviation expressed as a function of short-term gate time (τ).

Allan deviation is determined for a given PLL filter per the expected receiver clock frequency stability ($\Delta f/f$) as a function of the loop filter bandwidth:

$$\sigma_A = (\lambda / 2 \pi)^{-1} \; (\sigma_\theta) \; / \; (\omega_L \tau) \qquad \text{(Eq 8-3)}$$

where

τ = B^{-1} (sec), and
ω_L = $2 \pi f_L$ (rad/sec).

This equation gives a nominal value for the L1 noise of 0.7 mm for an 18 Hz noise bandwidth and specified Allan deviation (σ_A) of less than $1 \cdot 10^{-10}$ (dimensionless). The performance of the VCO also contributes to the phase measurement resolution through the random clock drift tolerance term (Allan variance) that impacts the synchronized reference time epoch value reported by the VCO. Actual phase measurements consist of a time-smoothed PLL output that is dependent on the clock stability and PLL correlator bandwidth.

(3) Received signal noise. Signals arriving from GPS satellites are received as continuous, quasi-periodic waves, composed of code and data modulated carrier signals plus Doppler frequency shift. Antenna excitation and response is caused by local electric field variations at the antenna phase center. Pure carrier signals (e.g., sine waves) have a line spectrum of discrete

frequencies (harmonics), described mathematically by Fourier series analysis of the antenna-input data. The near-field electric field at the antenna also contains signal distortion effects and noise from: local sources of RF interference; coupled electromagnetic interactions (imaging) between the antenna/ground plane, local electric field, and nearby conductors; diffraction signal scattering at the edges of the ground plane; signal reception through side lobes (antenna illumination below ground plane); and signal multipath. The presence of external electromagnetic noise and environmental field effects lowers the spectral purity of transmitted GPS L1/L2 signals. Unwanted noise power components are characterized as random signals, described statistically by signal power spectral density, and noise field strength parameters of the antenna. L2 signals are generally noisier than L1 signals, and this noise generally reduces the precision of carrier phase measurements. Measurement noise is also modeled as random error produced by physical correlation in the generation, propagation, and reception of GPS signals.

c. Correlation in GPS data. Correlation describes the extent to which measurement errors will be similar as a result of common external observing conditions and as a result of math modeling applied to the data. High data correlation reduces the statistical independence between measurement errors and lowers the significance of random error parameters (mean and variance). This highlights the importance of using error treatments in post processing that do not neglect data correlation. Both spatial and time correlation can influence GPS performance.

(1) Physical correlation in GPS data. GPS signal behavior is understood to be highly correlated when common-mode conditions occur due to geometry, environment, and system specifications used to mechanize GPS operations. Important sources of physical correlation in GPS data are: geometry of the satellite constellation, ephemeris (orbit) errors, frequency dependent atmospheric propagation delays, satellite and receiver clock synchronization, receiver system throughput latency, spectral receiving system noise, and multipath interference. Spatial correlation in GPS data can be largely related to baseline length and common mode GPS system status. Biases are minimized by differencing data and by allowing satellites-in-view to change position (over time) which yields a range of DOP states throughout the survey. Changing satellite geometry tends to randomize small residual biases that occur over short baselines. Correlation times in GPS data are based on both the session length and the data sample rate needed to span a large percentage of independent (uncorrelated) observations. If the session is averaged for longer than the total period of the correlated error signal, then short-term measurement deviations will be evenly distributed about an unbiased mean value. Data sample rates lower than the data correlation time produce unrealistically low errors.

(2) Mathematical correlation in GPS data. Double difference combinations made during baseline processing will create mathematical correlation in the processed output—especially as a tendency to magnify initial measurement errors per statistical error propagation laws ending up in the covariance matrix of parameters. As a result, error estimates (baseline component standard deviations) are generally overly optimistic. Other sources of math correlation are determined by the specific processing scheme implemented in the GPS software. The most common sources are due to: data differencing (single, double, triple), least squares filtering, dual

frequency L1/L2 atmospheric delay correction, L1/L2 cross-correlation used to recover L2-carrier data under A/S, dual frequency ambiguity resolution techniques (widelane, narrowlane), choice of reference satellite, specific SV double difference combinations, and the elimination of nuisance parameters in the normal equations matrix. The manner in which math correlation is handled is largely dependent on level of rigor used for statistical error treatment in the software and the proper formulation of error estimates in the covariance matrix of parameters.

d. External data correlation. Studies of the effects of physical correlation on accuracy estimates in GPS relative positioning have shown that double difference residuals are subjected to empirical modeling based on various forms of the autocovariance function. The study method was designed to isolate a distinct error estimate for both mathematical and physical correlation in GPS double difference residuals. Significant trends in the residuals were modeled to describe baseline error as a consequence of neglecting physical data correlation. Results over medium length baselines indicate that standard deviations of coordinate components are typically reported at much lower than actual values (perhaps by a factor of two). Other relevant findings include a determination of error correlation times for L1 and L2 GPS double differences persisting over 4–5 minutes of data. This could be interpreted as the minimum observing time period needed to produce independent measurement error values where physical correlation is not explicitly accounted for in the processor's weighting scheme. A corresponding 20% increase in the standard deviation of each coordinate component is indicated. Other empirical results deal with fixed and float ambiguity variance ratio estimates that are compared against the convergence times between math and physical correlation trials. Convergence to typical error levels reported by the software (variance ratio of 7.0) required about 10 minutes to occur. Finally, GPS double difference observations can be positively correlated for a period of up to 20 minutes on shorter test baselines. These results are an important indicator of expected performance on monitoring networks for two reasons. First, baselines are expected to be shorter than used in the above trials (1–2 km), therefore, the reported impacts of correlation could be used as an upper limit for tolerance to physical correlation in deformation studies. Second, guidance presented in Section I is mainly compatible with these independently established GPS observing tolerance limits.

8-10. GPS Performance on Monitoring Networks.

a. General. Results of accuracy performance and operational adequacy of GPS surveying for monitoring applications are presented in this section. Data collected under controlled conditions and at USACE monitoring projects are described. Simulated deformations are used to test GPS capability to detect movement over short baselines. Comparisons are made against conventional surveying performance and requirements outlined in Section I of this chapter.

b. GPS performance Trials. Factors used to evaluate GPS performance include: user-set parameter values for data collection and processing; observing session length; and satellite constellation status—to determine expected repeatability, accuracy, and/or problems with GPS use on monitoring projects. Results are empirically based on field tests and GPS data analysis.

(1) Coordinate repeatability. Figure 8-1 shows coordinate repeatability obtained from 42 GPS data sets collected in short-session time blocks (15 minutes, 20 degree mask angle) with fixed values for integer ambiguities. Discrepancies in the height component vary the most, with the largest variations being correlated to epochs with low numbers of observations. Two-sigma (95%) repeatability is approximately 6 mm for the height component and a peak height discrepancy of almost 10 mm. Horizontal coordinate components have generally better repeatability than vertical components. The level of repeatability and bias are due to systematic error effects not averaged out over the short time spans and likely caused by multipath. Baseline component formal errors with the height residuals, determined from the trace of the inverted normal equation matrix, are representative of the DOP for the satellite constellation over the solution epochs. Periods of high height residuals correspond to times where no satellites are below approximately 30 degrees. Therefore, for short observation periods, some pre-observing planning can minimize the potential DOP values.

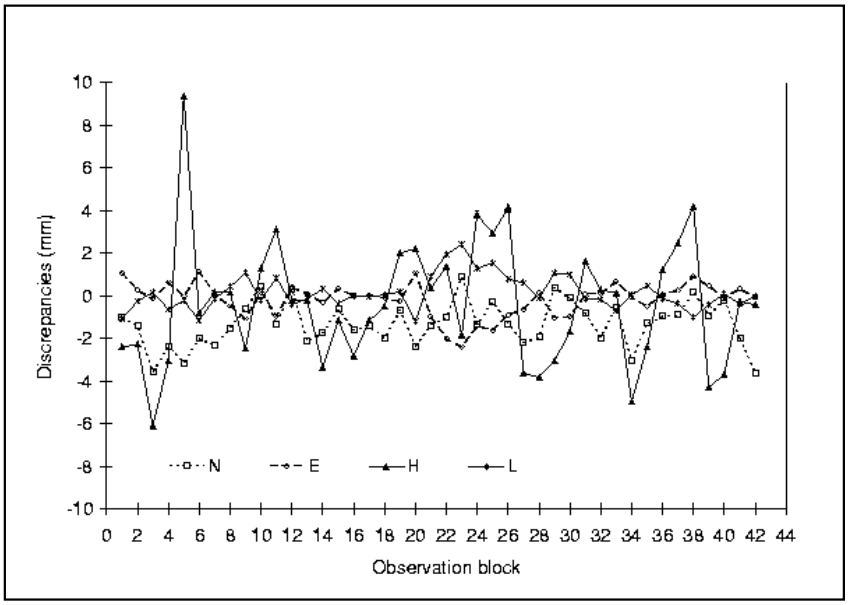


Figure 8-1. GPS coordinate component repeatability from 15-minute sessions over short baselines.

(2) Solution convergence. Solution convergence to millimeter level accuracy defines the session length requirement for establishing project fixed control in surveys conducted on reference networks. Reference stations normally would be occupied for many hours during production surveys. Figure 8-2 shows convergence times for simulated reference network baselines. Convergence to the millimeter level takes place within several (3–5) hours in low multipath environments. Horizontal coordinate components converge very quickly (less than one hour) leaving the height component more variable. In high multipath environments, convergence can take up to ten or twelve hours. Not only does the convergence take longer, but there is a greater variation of the position components over the whole position time series. These

results are particularly important for selecting the location of reference stations where high accuracy control is required, and that the role of multipath is crucial when attempting to use GPS for positioning tolerances at the millimeter level.

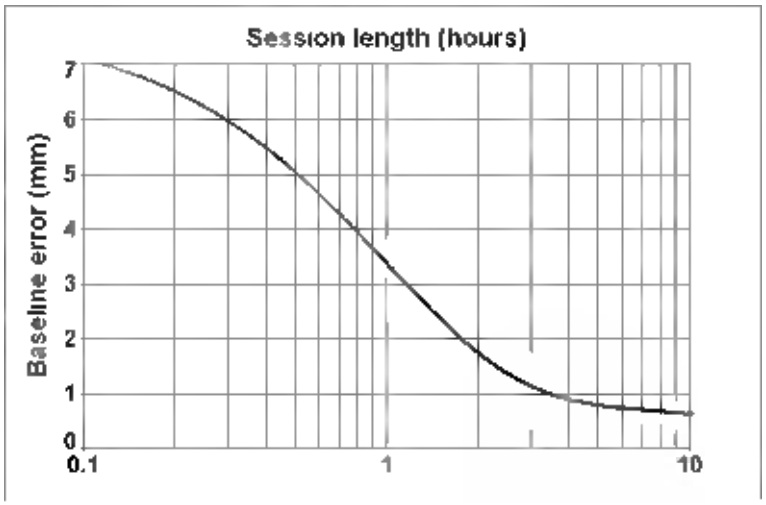


Figure 8-2. Accuracy convergence time plotted as log session length needed to exceed average baseline position error.

(3) Multipath errors. The plots presented below illustrate some of the signs of multipath in GPS carrier phase data. Figure 8-3 shows an example of high levels of multipath on one satellite pair. Figure 8-4 shows three traces from two satellite pairs to see the reduction in multipath as the mask angle increases. These plots show that considerable multipath can still remain when the mask angle is set up to 20 degrees.

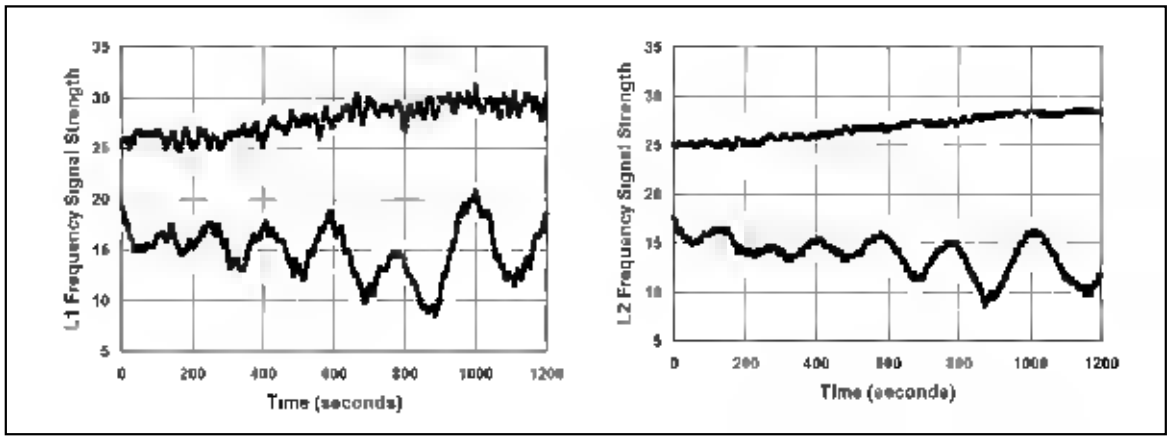


Figure 8-3. Typical GPS multipath curves found in L1 (left) and L2 (right) signal strength profiles. Lower series represents high multipath error, upper series represents normal signal strength profile.

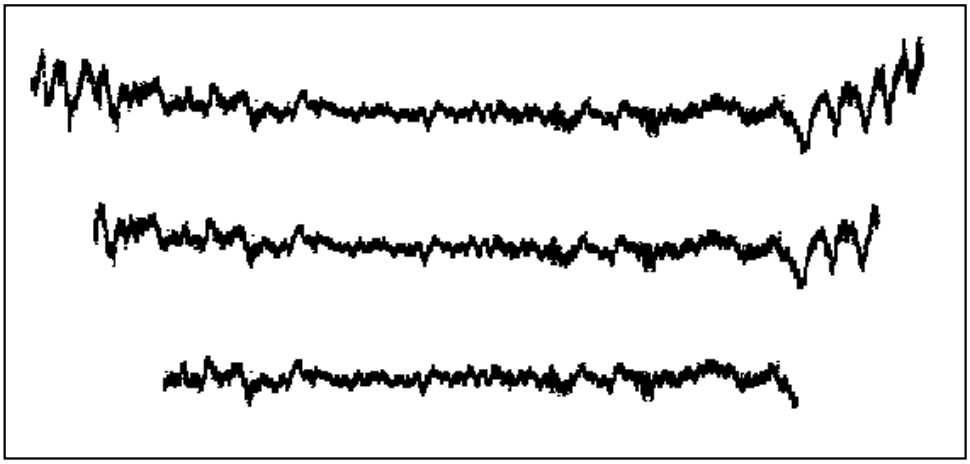


Figure 8-4. Multipath error profile plotted against processing mask angle; satellite elevation top to bottom, (a) 10 degrees, RMS 6.3 mm (b) 20 degrees, RMS 4.4 mm (c) 30 degrees, RMS 2.9 mm.

(4) Ambiguity resolution. For a large number of blocks of 15-minute data, fixed integer ambiguity solutions can have at least one satellite incorrectly fixed in 7% of the blocks. Re-processing with different mask angles may not improve the results. These results can be considered typical for GPS monitoring applications. Constraining the a-priori station coordinates to one centimeter so that all of the ambiguities in all the blocks are correctly resolved makes an improvement.

(5) Satellite ephemeris. Evaluation of monitoring data sets indicates that for static mode sessions either the broadcast or precise ephemeris can be used without causing significant changes in the solutions.

(6) Antenna mask angle. Changing the satellite elevation mask angle will produce slightly different processed coordinates. Discrepancies between solutions for 20 and 30 degree mask angle are generally less than 1 mm except for the height components thus producing a large difference in the coordinates. High mask angles (>20-30 degree) tend to eliminate too much raw data, depending on the number of satellites-in-view. Using lower elevation satellite data will improve the overall satellite geometry but the data is usually of poor quality. As is the convention with lower order GPS surveys, a 15-20 degree mask angle is recommended, especially where additional height control is available on-site. In practice, data quality indicators can be used to find an optimal mask angle for baseline processing.

(7) Session length. Height coordinates deviations over small networks are at the sub-centimeter level--sometimes even at stations with high multipath. As long as the integer ambiguities can be reliably resolved, then short observation sessions of fifteen (15) minutes should be able to achieve results within 6 mm 95 percent of the time. Simulated displacement tests show convergence to less than 1 mm in the coordinate components after approximately 15

minutes with one-second data. Small displacements (millimeters) can be detected using two reference stations, having highly accurate relative positions determined from long observation sessions, and high quality carrier phase data (low systematic error). Figure 8-5 shows convergence in northing, easting, and height components every two minutes over a 15-minute session representing optimal performance for GPS deformation surveys in open areas. Slightly longer sessions (20-30 minutes) provide additional data redundancy and lower multipath effects. Very short baselines (10 m) measured directly across the upstream and downstream edges of a dam crest have compared to about 1 mm with precise leveling data.

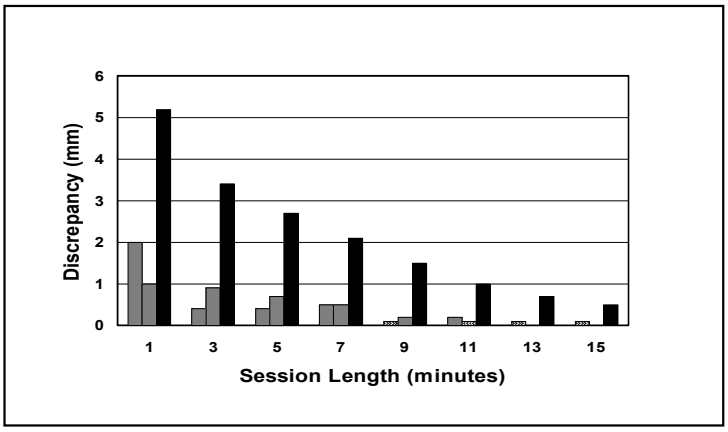


Figure 8-5. Convergence of coordinate component discrepancies to the true position with a simulated displacement of 2.5 mm. For each session, the components are plotted north, east, and height respectively.

c. GPS monitoring trials. GPS surveys can accurately reproduce positioning with conventional instruments with 2-3 mm point positioning error at 95 percent confidence level. Figure 8-6 shows a typical comparison between GPS and conventional surveys with average discrepancy of 1-3 mm and up to 5 mm can occur under slightly adverse conditions. Typical baseline component standard deviations are optimistically reported at less than 1 mm, data adjustment variance factors range from 1.2 to 4.3 (based on software) also optimistic due to a one second data logging rate. Error estimates in the covariance matrix of parameters are scaled up by the variance factor value to produce realistic error reporting. Horizontal point confidence ellipse dimensions range from 0.1 to 0.5 mm, also optimistic by perhaps a factor of ten based on repeated surveys on monitoring networks. Baseline solutions should have fixed integer ambiguities, float solution are generally unacceptable. A-posteriori variance ratios (RMS) between fixed and float solutions are found to range between 10 to 30, with an average of 20, indicating reasonably high confidence in the fixed integer solution. A minimum value of seven (7) should be produced or problems with ambiguity resolution might be suspected. Sometimes GPS data is unusable or will not process due to poor observing conditions

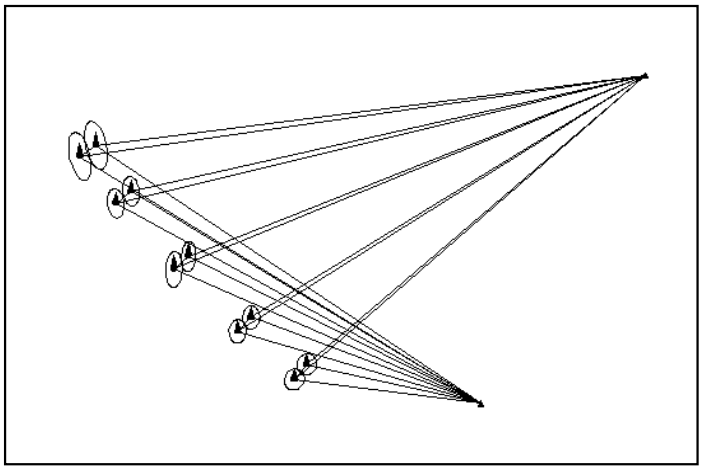


Figure 8-6. Network map of 10 monitoring points compared between GPS and precise conventional surveying results. Error ellipses are plotted at ten times actual size. Overall differences are less than 2-3 mm in all cases.

Section III
Data Quality Assessment for GPS Monitoring Surveys

8-11. Post-Processing Statistics**.**

a. General. Statistics are used to assess processing output and position solution quality, especially with respect to random errors, measurement residuals, and the overall solution fit to the data. Some of the most critical parameters to check after each post-processing session are described below.

b. Double difference (DD) residuals. Both L1 and L2 phase measurements will produce DD residuals from the baseline processing adjustment. The following statistics and descriptors for each series of DD residuals are checked to reveal possible low quality data.

(1) Shape of residuals. Measurement errors that contain only random error will be distributed per the normal probability density function (PDF). Histograms of GPS DD residuals compared with an assumed normal PDF will indicate skewness or systematic error in the data. DD residual time-series profiles vary between satellite pairs and each pair should be visually examined for large deviations from the mean or any kind of regular patterns in the residual values that might reveal systematic error. Clean data will have a zero-mean (horizontal line) profile containing high frequency random noise (Figure 8-7). An obvious systematic error in a DD residual plot does not mean data quality for that satellite pair is bad. An error trend in one residual series can sometimes show up belonging to the other satellites in view because the solution itself has been biased to an incorrect value as a result of math correlations. A possible reason for this is the GPS software assigning a greater weight to biased data, and because of incorrect assumptions made in its pre-set internal data weighting criteria. Signal quality and session status criteria, independent of math correlations, are recommended for guiding interpretations about the shape of DD residuals. See also Figure 8-8.

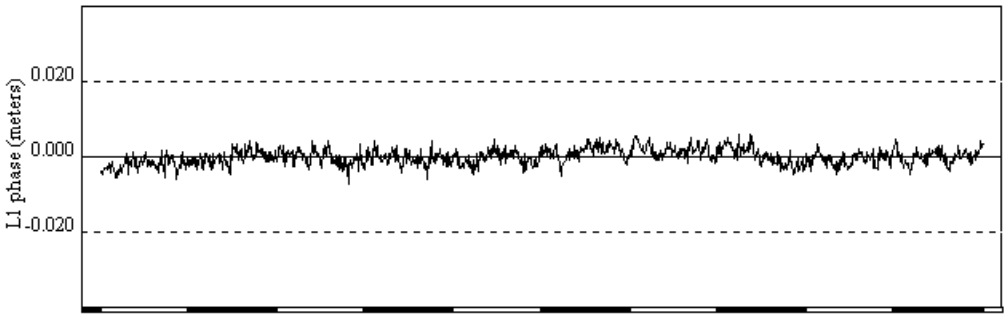


Figure 8-7. An example of GPS (L1) double difference residuals taken from baseline processing demonstrates a typical profile for relatively clean data.

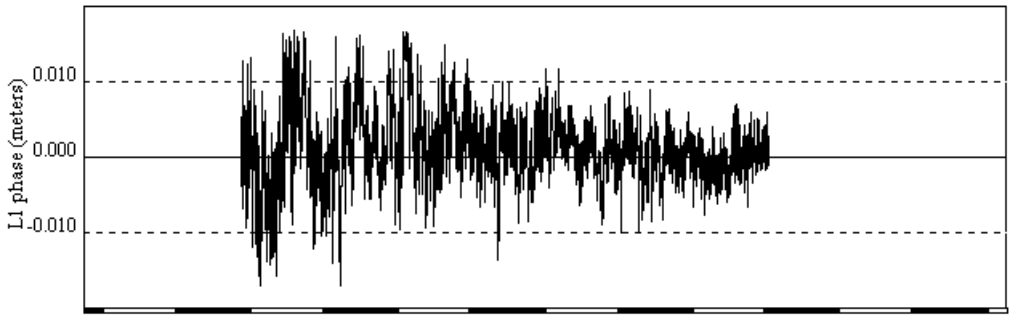


Figure 8-8. An example of double difference residual taken from GPS baseline processing showing effects on L1 signal as satellite rises. Residuals become smaller with time and with higher elevation angle.

(2) Mean value of residuals. Double difference residuals will not be exactly equal to zero even with the highest quality data. Slight shifts in the mean value (less than 5 mm in normal data) are evident in most processing results. If the mean values of several different DD residuals are shifted in the same direction (plus or minus), then this may indicate a low frequency bias in the data. This trend is seen when double differencing involves one reference satellite where its associated biases are mathematically correlated with other SVs. A mean shift less than 3-5 mm indicates good data (however this must be true on all satellites), a shift of 5-10 mm or more usually indicates the presence of measurement bias.

(3) Standard deviation of residuals. The standard deviation (unbiased RMS) of the DD residuals specifies the level of random error in the phase data. Signal noise components, time variable correlations, session length, and GPS processing techniques determine the standard deviation of the DD residuals. Each satellite pair can be ranked per its RMS value. A standard deviation greater than 4 mm is a cutoff value for identifying poor data. Although standard deviation itself is not sensitive to bias, a large standard deviation can indicate trouble with GPS signal quality.

(4) L1/L2 residuals. Signal disturbance in the local antenna environment is identified by inspection or cross-correlation of L1 and L2 DD residuals (Figure 8-9). Largely similar (L1/L2) DD residual profiles indicate L2 is experiencing the same signal effects as L1. If two (L1/L2) residual profiles are largely different, then the L1 and L2 signals are subject to separate external influences. If the L1/L2 profiles are highly correlated, then the signals are behaving the same.

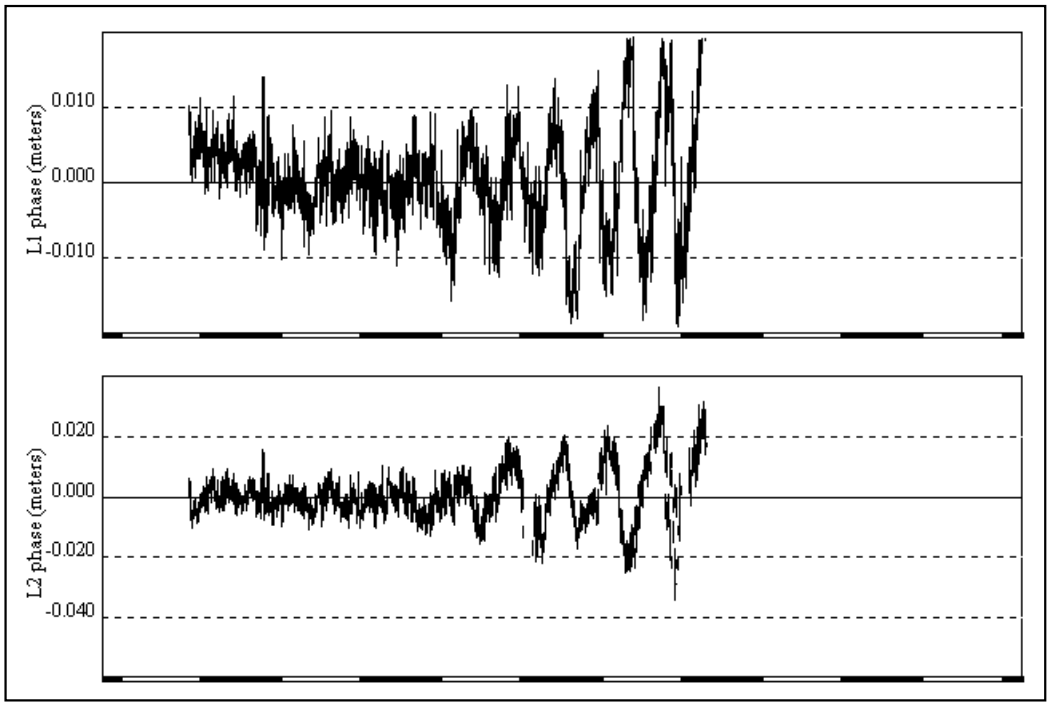


Figure 8-9. Comparison between L1 (above), and L2 (below), double difference residuals taken from GPS data corrupted by multipath.

(5) Reference satellite. Double differencing GPS data can be carried out under different combinations of satellites. A common DD scheme is to select one high elevation satellite to be the reference and then differencing its data from all others. Biases in the reference satellite data will show up in the residual profiles of non-reference satellites because of mathematical correlation. Most baseline processors do not give the user an option to select or change reference satellites. If the processor will allow the user to select the DD scheme, then each satellite's data can be differenced between "neighboring" satellites to lower DD math correlations.

c. Fixed and float solution. The RMS ratio between fixed and float solutions (variance ratio) is an output statistic used to describe the amount of confidence held in the fixed solution. High ratio values (greater than 7 and up to 40 or above) indicate the fixed solution ambiguity is far better than the next best solution ambiguity. Values near one (1) indicate the need for closer examination of the GPS data for quality problems. Only fixed solutions should be accepted for GPS monitoring surveys. Float solution data should be edited, using data quality indicators as a guide, until a fixed solution is obtained, or by increasing the number of allowed processing iterations in the software. Correct estimates of ambiguity parameters are critical for high accuracy positioning over short baselines, especially for kinematic solutions to prevent excessive data dropouts.

d. Cycle slip counts. PLL filtering bandwidth limits signal tracking to a set frequency range. Large transient shifts in input can exceed PLL tracking design. These events create difficulty maintaining accurate signal phase lock. Signal disturbances falling within the PLL tracking range can still cause cycle slips because the PLL only discriminates 2π phase shifts. If tracking skips any number of whole cycles (0.5% of data or less is nominal), then it is possible for the PLL to re-acquire phase lock at the new locus of phase well before the next measurement cycle arrives. Any detected cycle slips indicate periods of rapid change in signal dynamics, which implies lower phase tracking and measurement resolution.

e. Adjustment variance factor. Prescribed errors are directly influenced by the observation residuals through the a-posteriori variance factor. This is a scalar quantity with an expected value equal to one (1.0). The variance factor is used to scale random error as reported in the parameter covariance matrix. Values more than one indicate an overly optimistic weighting scheme was applied to the measurements. Values less than one indicate an overly pessimistic observation weighting scheme. GPS observing sessions will typically have a variance factor greater than one because physical and mathematical correlations have been ignored. Values more than 3-5 indicate the need for closer examination of the GPS data for quality problems.

f. Adjustment covariance matrix. The covariance matrix of parameters is an upper triangular (symmetric) matrix containing the precision values for ΔX, ΔY, and ΔZ baseline components. The variance of each coordinate component is found along the matrix diagonal. The statistical correlation (covariance) between coordinate components is defined by the off-diagonal elements. Covariance matrix entries are used to determine and report absolute and relative positioning error ellipses. GPS covariance matrix values should be less than 1×10^{-6} for baselines used on monitoring networks. The covariance matrix that is output from baseline processing is used to weight the baseline coordinate differences during network adjustment.

g. Error ellipses. A standard output from the baseline processing adjustment is the confidence ellipse (or error ellipse). An error ellipse graphically (and geometrically) portrays the region of positioning uncertainty associated with the adjusted coordinates at a given statistical confidence level. Absolute or point error ellipses apply only to individual stations. Relative error ellipses apply to the baselines between two stations. Both types are based on the entries in the covariance matrix of parameters. The largest dimension of the error ellipse is called the major semi-axis. Its length indicates the maximum expected position error at a selected confidence level (usually 95%). The major semi-axis of the point ellipse is compared with the positioning accuracy requirements established for the project. If the value is greater than the allowed position error, then the survey does not meet the design specification. Generally, this will not be the case because error levels reported by baseline processing are often much too optimistic. GPS error ellipses can be oriented toward a particular direction (azimuth) indicating greater uncertainty in those position components.

8-12. Closure and Station Checks.

a. Baseline misclosures. Loop misclosures are computed by comparing at least four inter-connected baselines. Point misclosures are computed from at least two reference stations and one monitoring point on the structure. Closures that are statistically different from zero indicate potential bias in the data. Misclosures are automatically smoothed to an average value for the baseline component in the network adjustment. A test on the sample mean (i.e., position) is used to assess bias in misclosures. Baselines with misclosures greater than 5 mm are candidates for further quality checks. Any three baselines connected in a triangle will contain only one misclosure value, but two different point misclosure schemes can be checked.

(1) Reference station ties. For production surveys, only short (15–30 minute) observing sessions are made between any three points (two reference stations and the monitoring point on the structure). Each reference station is fixed with coordinates from higher accuracy surveys based on collecting many hours of data just between the two reference stations. The first type of misclosure assessment uses only the baseline computed between the reference stations. A test on the mean for position change is made using the long and short GPS sessions between the two reference stations. Coordinate components from each session are differenced and tested against an expected value of zero. A test on the variance is used to assess coordinate precision. A design standard deviation of 1.44 mm can be used as the expected precision for each coordinate component to ensure positioning is below 5 mm at 95%.

(2) Monitoring station ties. The second type of misclosure assessment compares the two baselines from each reference station to the monitored point. A test on the mean is made on the misclosure between each reference station baseline and the mean position of the monitoring point computed using both baselines. This second test will indicate the combined position change at the monitored point derived from both reference stations. Fixing the average adjusted position of the monitored point allows for inspection of short session data propagated back to each reference station. The position change at each reference station can then be examined. If there are problems with only one particular reference station (during the short session), then the raw data should be examined further and either cleaned or the station de-weighted before processing the final network adjustment.

b. Code positions. Processing code positions at each station can be done separately to investigate the statistics of the code data. Although code positioning results will not be used to monitor the structure, data quality for each station and each satellite can be checked. Code measurement time delays are especially well-related to signal quality. In the TEQC software, an code multipath (MP) parameter is extracted from code solutions to indicate the relative amount of multipath on each satellite code range.

c. Kinematic position solution. Static GPS data can be forced to process as a kinematic time series of positions. Kinematic positions are in some ways more easily inspected and reviewed for quality than the static session. One test used to identify poor quality kinematic data is to

compute an expected phase error based on the RMS of the signal strength data coming from each satellite. The expected phase error is determined at each measurement epoch and then ranked in increasing order. This process is repeated for each satellite-receiver combination, so that the signal strength RMS is again ranked in increasing order between satellites. If there are time periods of more than several minutes at each receiver where the RMS is consistently below two (2) for at least five (5) satellites, then these will generally represent higher quality data blocks. RINEX file editing with user-developed software can extract and process the signal strength data. Re-processed results should be checked against the unedited kinematic solution time series. Only slight improvements should be observed in position output for high quality data.

d. Multipath detection. Signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) profiles and DD residuals can be inspected for the presence of multipath by comparing their deviation profiles. To recover these profiles, L1/L2 SNR values can be extracted from RINEX files, and DD residuals for each satellite pair are output from the processing adjustment. A multipath signature is verified by comparing the shape (deviations) of the SNR profile to each double difference residual series at corresponding time epochs for both L1 and L2 frequencies. They will show similar trends and relative amounts of deviation if systematic error is present. This is true with multipath because it affects both L1/L2 signal frequencies in a similar manner.

Section IV
Mitigation of Multipath Signals

8-13. Description of Multipath Signals.

a. General. GPS signal interference is a major source of systematic error in GPS monitoring surveys. Multipath signals are a predominant cause of interference in GPS carrier phase measurements over short baselines. This section describes the characteristics of multipath signals as a source of error in precise baseline determination.

b. Properties of multipath signals. Multipath signals are an unavoidable operational trait of the GPS system in obstructed environments and will occur repeatedly under the right conditions.

(1) Data correlation over sidereal day. The GPS satellite constellation occupies the same position in orbit with respect to the earth once every sidereal day. A GPS sidereal day differs from a standard solar day by approximately four minutes less each day (i.e., about 23 hours, 56 minutes). If the local antenna environment is unchanged and the antenna remains stationary, then multipath reception will be repeated over two consecutive sidereal days. In practice, this behavior is not perfectly repeatable due to variable signal reception, noise power levels, orbit or atmospheric changes, and it assumes similar equipment, data collection, and processing procedures. Inspection of double difference residuals over consecutive days can verify the presence of multipath (Figure 8-10). Auto-correlation of the double difference residuals for satellite pairs observed over consecutive days can estimate the time shift more precisely than inspection.

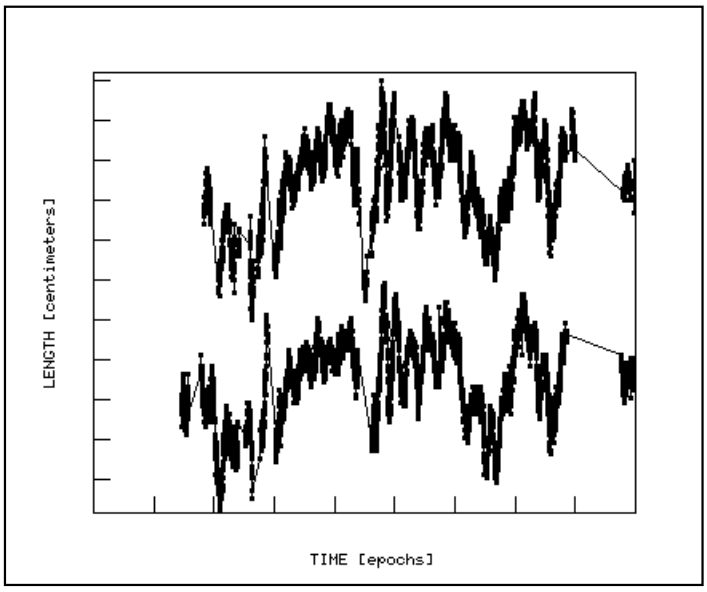


Figure 8-10. GPS (L1) double difference residuals from sessions separated by exactly one sidereal day showing correlation of multipath errors.

(2) Reflector distance dependence. Large phase errors can occur with small changes in antenna-reflector distance. At L1/L2 wavelengths, a change in distance of only 5 cm can produce a maximum phase error of 90 degrees (i.e., 1/4 of L1 wavelength). As GPS satellites move in orbit with respect to the receiver, signals may strike different reflectors and travel along different paths to the antenna. A time-varying multipath signal is then expected to occur based on path difference between direct and reflected signals. A simple geometric model describes this interference at the antenna site.

$$\phi / d \sin(\theta) = 2 \pi / \lambda \qquad \text{(Eq 8-4)}$$

Phase difference (ϕ) depends on path length difference between direct and reflected signal paths, and a path length difference of one (L1 or L2) wavelength (λ) corresponds to a phase difference over one complete wave cycle (2π). Dependence of phase on reflector distance from this ratio is:

$$\phi = (2\pi/\lambda)\, d \sin(\theta) \qquad \text{(Eq 8-5)}$$

where

ϕ	=	phase difference
λ	=	wavelength
d	=	antenna-reflector distance
θ	=	angle of incidence

characterizes the geometric relationship of phase and reflector distance for multipath signals.

(3) Dependence on signal frequency. The duration of multipath in GPS data will vary with signal frequency. Figure 8-11 shows a characteristic profile for the time period of L1/L2 multipath signals. Long-period multipath is a major difficulty in GPS data because its resulting bias is absorbed into the baseline solution as a position offset. Since multipath is not expected to be correlated between different satellites, detection of low frequency bias can be attempted by inspection of raw GPS data. Figure 8-11 shows that reflectors close to the antenna will most adversely affect GPS signals.

(4) Session length dependence. Multipath can persist from a few minutes to several hours based on distance to the reflector. Sampling at least one complete interference wavelength eliminates long period multipath by averaging its effects by additive and subtractive phase cancellations. Session lengths less than 30 minutes would have to have a minimum antenna separation of 1.5 m from surrounding reflectors (see Figure 8-11).

(5) Signal strength variations. A basic characteristic of electromagnetic waves is that energy is propagated in a direction perpendicular to the surface of uniform phase. Changes in signal phase are coupled to changes in signal strength through the interference phenomena produced by multipath. Inspection of observation double difference residuals show an empirical correlation

to associated signal strength values. Both types of data have a quasi-cyclic patterned profile in receiver-to-satellite data contaminated by multipath. In the context of code phase DGPS applications, a simple relationship exists between phase variance and SNR. An empirical SNR value calculated from phase variance could be used as a measure of expected signal strength deviation in GPS data. SNR observables from GPS receivers can be obtained from RINEX observation files.

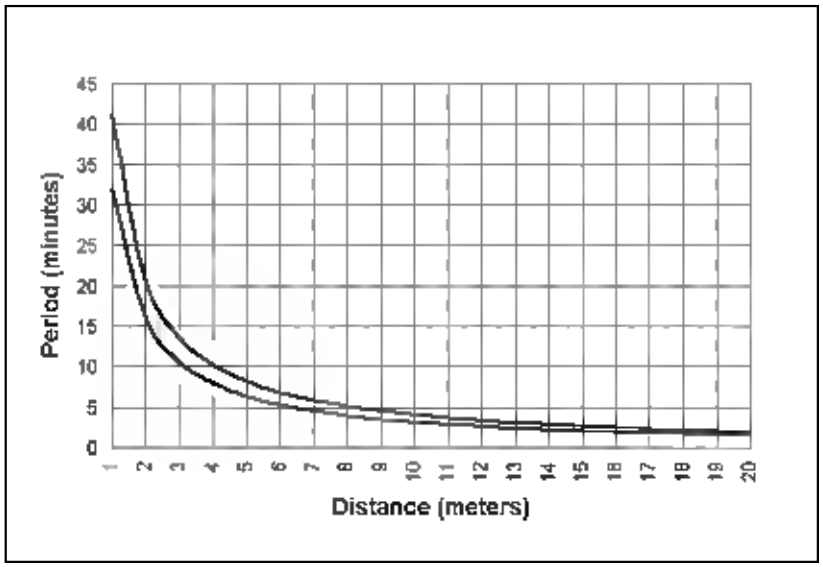


Figure 8-11. Plot of theoretical multipath period against reflector distance for L1 and L2 GPS signals. GPS L1 frequency is modeled in the lower curve.

(6) Satellite elevation angle dependence. Multipath has a greater chance of occurring and surviving to reach the antenna from low elevation satellites. This is because multipath signals are less likely to experience multiple bounces, and because antennas do not receive signals equally well in all directions. Low elevation direct signals have lower receive power levels due to antenna gain pattern (lower gain near horizon). Multipath then has relatively higher signal power compared to low elevation direct signal power. Partial multipath rejection can be built into the antenna by shaping the antenna gain pattern (choke ring antenna) or increasing the mask angle.

8-14. Data Cleaning Techniques for GPS Monitoring Surveys.

a. General. Several different strategies are available for suppressing multipath effects in GPS data. These can be broadly categorized by hardware, environment, and data processing.

b. Modification of antenna environment. Some of the most effective methods for reducing multipath involve blocking the reflected signal before it is sensed by the antenna.

(1) Source modeling. A proposed multipath reduction strategy is to exploit the dependence of multipath on site geometry and to calibrate its effects using detailed maps of reflections in the antenna environment. Creating a topographic site model that accurately predicts multipath signal propagation would be difficult if the nature of local reflectors is highly variable, giving rise to numerous complicated signal interactions. If there are only simple sources of reflection at each station, then the modeling process would need to be repeated for many different station occupations.

(2) Choke ring antennas. Specially designed choke ring antennas are manufactured to enhance attenuation of surface waves traveling along the surface of the antenna. Choke ring antennas have a series of precisely sized concentric metal collars mounted on top of the ground plane that serve to attenuate surface waves on the ground plane caused by ground reflections under the antenna. Choke ring antenna are not generally useful for stopping reflections coming from above the antenna, such as from vertical walls, rooftops, etc.

(3) Antenna placement. A universal technique for reducing multipath is to place the antenna in a low signal reflection environment. This is probably the most important requirement for reducing effects of multipath in GPS carrier phase data. Even smaller objects and trees near the station (up to several to tens of meters) can produce significant multipath interference. Site reconnaissance is essential for selecting premium locations for GPS stations.

c. Robust GPS observing strategies. Optimizing the session observing conditions and enhancing the likelihood of collecting large amounts of uncorrupted GPS data can reduce multipath effects.

(1) Session length. GPS performance over specified session lengths is described in Section II. Increased session length tends to randomize the periodic signature of multipath bias. If the GPS session length is greater than the total period of the error signal, then the phase deviations will have a more uniform distribution about the mean. A one-second sampling rate should be used mainly for the purpose of data inspection and quality control. Actual processing of longer station occupations with 5–10 second data rates usually provides the same mean baseline solution.

(2) Data redundancy. Redundant measurements provide checks on the GPS data and increases overall reliability of the survey. Several different applications of redundancy can be applied on GPS monitoring surveys.

(a) Multiple reference stations. Measurements from multiple reference stations can be used to improve positioning accuracy. More accurate positioning is obtained by collecting data at each monitoring station with more than one baseline tie. Redundant observations by multiple, interconnected, survey configurations create sub-networks that robustly tie each monitoring point to the reference network.

(b) Multiple station occupations. Multiple sessions and occupations can be used to improve positioning accuracy. GPS data logged under different observing conditions causes systematic errors to tend to cancel when repeated baseline solutions are averaged. Surveys with extremely short observation windows (1–5 minutes) should be re-occupied several times (separated by at least one hour).

(3) Continuous monitoring. Monitoring sessions that span multiple days can use data stacking techniques. Double difference residuals associated with repeated daily measurements (for example over one week) are added together to recover a correlated multipath signature. Cross-correlation will magnify systematic error that can be isolated from random error in the residuals.

d. Kinematic solution processing. Kinematic data processing schemes are well-suited for selective data editing because position outputs are reported at each logging epoch (e.g., one second). The objective in kinematic solution post-processing is to select the highest quality data for re-processing. Averaging only clean GPS data and eliminating poor quality data improves final position accuracy. Data quality indicators can be used to identify periods of corrupted or less reliable data. The relative data quality for every epoch in the position output series is ranked and then combined into continuous blocks that represent the best data. Common GPS data quality indicators are presented in Section III. This process can be defeated in cases where undetected systematic errors have been absorbed into the baseline solution. It is important to use data quality indicators that provide independent information about potential systematic error. Signal strength values and session status parameters are likely to be better sources for position weighting models than residuals. A data quality hierarchy should be used to clean and reprocess kinematic data. For example, eliminate satellites that have discontinuous phase tracking, then low elevation satellites, and then data with low signal strength or erratic deviations in signal strength. In practice, signal strengths below about 20 dB (out of a range of 30–40 dB) start to be unreliable. These editing schemes are analogous to weighting schemes that can be applied directly to the phase data.

.

CHAPTER 9

Preanalysis and Network Adjustment

9-1. General. This chapter discusses preanalysis and network adjustment techniques for processing deformation surveying observations. A basic problem in surveying is to determine coordinates for a network of points using various types of measurements that establish a known geometrical relationship between them. Points with unknown spatial coordinates are connected into the network by the measurements. Surveying observation equations provide a mathematical model that organizes the measurements into a consistent form where methods for finding a unique solution for the unknown coordinates are possible. Instrumentation surveys should always be designed to gather more data than is absolutely necessary to determine station coordinates because this improves the reliability of the results. With extra measurements, unavoidable random errors create discrepancies depending on which set of measurements is used, and there is no unique solution for the coordinates. When this is the case, network adjustment techniques are used to estimate the most accurate set of possible coordinates by the least squares principle of minimizing errors in the measurements. Network adjustment permits all of the available survey measurements to be processed together to determine a weighted mean value for the coordinates. Coordinate accuracy is determined by the application of error propagation to the observation equations. A pre-determined uncertainty (standard deviation) is assigned each measurement, which then propagates to the coordinates during the adjustment. The probable error in the coordinates is reported by the point confidence ellipse for each point or by the relative confidence ellipse between two points. It is essential to determine the positioning accuracy, and without adequate knowledge of the probable error in coordinates, the survey should be considered incomplete.

9-2. Least Squares Adjustment.

a. General. The Least Squares principle is widely applied to the adjustment of surveying measurements because it defines a consistent set of mathematical and statistical procedures for finding unknown coordinates using redundant observations. If the number of available measurements exceeds the minimum number required for a unique solution, then an adjustment is used to optimally fit a solution to all measurements. Application of the least squares principle relies on the condition that the weighted sum of the squares of the residuals is a minimum. The least squares adjusted coordinates are unique and have both maximum probability of being correct and minimum probable error.

b. Observation weighting. Not all surveying data will be collected with the same level of precision. Therefore, the measurements are weighted relative to each other per their different precisions. Weights are based on a standard deviation prescribed to each measurement, and these are calculated (by the adjustment software) as the inverse of the measurement variance as follows:

$$w_i = 1 / \sigma_i^2 \qquad \text{(Eq 9-1)}$$

where

w_i = observation weight value
σ_i = measurement standard deviation

Observation weighting gives greater influence to the most precise measurements during the network adjustment process. Large standard deviations mean greater measurement uncertainty and lower precision for the measurements, which are then given less weight in the adjustment.

c. Error propagation. Formulas for propagation of variances assume that standard deviations of observations are small enough to be approximated by the squared differential changes of the observables: $\sigma_x^2 = dxdx$, and covariances by their products: $\sigma_{xy} = dxdy$. For a function x (a,b) of observations a and b, the squared differential of the function x is:

$$(dx)^2 = (\partial x/\partial a)^2\, da^2 + (\partial x/\partial b)^2\, db^2 + 2\,(\partial x/\partial a)(\partial x/\partial b)\, dadb,$$

which may be generalized to any number of observables. For another function y (a,b) of the same observables a and b, the differentials of the functions x and y are:

$dx = (\partial x/\partial a)\, da + (\partial x/\partial b)\, db$, and
$dy = (\partial y/\partial a)\, da + (\partial y/\partial b)\, db$,

which are multiplied to calculate the covariance $dxdy$:

$$dxdy = (\partial x/\partial a)(\partial y/\partial a)\, da^2 + (\partial x/\partial b)(\partial y/\partial b)\, db^2 + [(\partial x/\partial a)(\partial y/\partial b) + (\partial x/\partial b)(\partial y/\partial a)]\, dadb.$$

Substitution of standard deviations of a and b for the differentials gives the following error propagation result in x:

$$\sigma_x^2 = (\partial x/\partial a)^2\, \sigma_a^2 + (\partial x/\partial b)^2\, \sigma_b^2 + 2\,(\partial x/\partial a)(\partial x/\partial b)\, \sigma_{ab}$$

and in the case of uncorrelated measurements, the variances and covariance in x and y are:

$$\sigma_x^2 = (\partial x/\partial a)^2\, \sigma_a^2 + (\partial x/\partial b)^2\, \sigma_b^2$$
$$\sigma_y^2 = (\partial y/\partial a)^2\, \sigma_a^2 + (\partial y/\partial b)^2\, \sigma_b^2$$
$$\sigma_{xy} = (\partial x/\partial a)(\partial y/\partial a)\, \sigma_a^2 + (\partial x/\partial b)(\partial y/\partial b)\, \sigma_b^2 \qquad \text{(Eq 9-2)}$$

d. Covariance matrix of observations. Error propagation formulas are used to calculate a standard deviation for each measurement in the adjustment (see Chapter 4). Once the measurements have been individually assigned a standard deviation, they are assembled into the

covariance matrix of observations, and the adjustment software converts to measurement weights by finding the matrix inverse.

e. Covariance matrix of parameters. The network adjustment process computes the probable error in positioning for each monitoring point. Entries of the covariance matrix of parameters contain the position accuracy information. The covariance matrix of parameters is derived from covariance matrix of observations by error propagation using a math model supplied by the adjustment software. Some degree of correlation of position error will likely exist between different stations in the network where the points have been tied together by redundant measurements of the same type.

f. Standard error ellipse. The geometric representation of the entries in the covariance matrix of parameters is through error ellipses describing the boundary of probable error around each point position. The maximum uncertainty in position is equivalent to the magnitude of the major semi-axis of this ellipse (i.e., its greatest dimension) for a given probability level used for reporting results. Its orientation and shape are also determined from the numerical entries of the covariance matrix of parameters. The error ellipse concept is illustrated by Figure 9-1, which depicts the intersection of two lines-of-position.

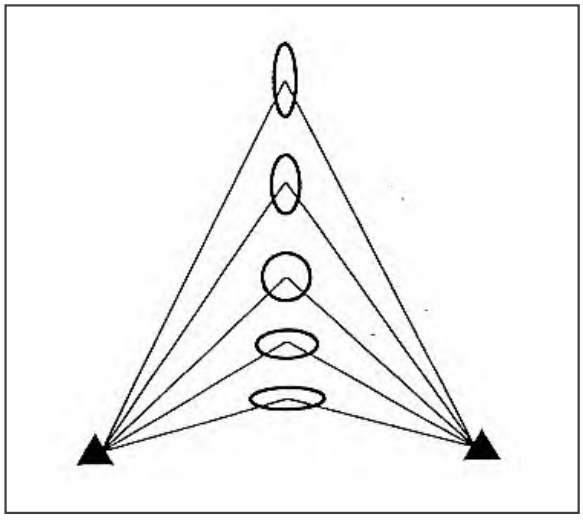


Figure 9-1. Error ellipses resulting from two lines of position at varying angles of intersection.

g. Confidence level. For measurements made with the same level of precision, “one standard error” represents an uncertainty equivalent to the expectation that approximately 67% of the measurements will fall within a distance of plus or minus one standard deviation from the mean. The 95% confidence level represents the probability that a data value lies within approximately two standard deviations from the mean. The probability of 95% (0.05 significance level) is usually accepted for the assessment of deformation measurements, meaning

that the true position of an object point lies within a distance of 1.96-σ from the computed mean with 95% probability. Other multipliers can be used depending on the confidence required in the final positioning accuracy. For example:

1.96-σ corresponds to 95% probability,
2.58-σ corresponds to 99% probability, and
3.00-σ corresponds to 99.7 % probability.

A probability value of 99% is usually accepted in practice as a certainty.

h. Degrees of freedom. The number of redundant measurements in an adjustment is expressed as the degrees of freedom (*dof*) of the adjustment. It is calculated as the difference between the number of independent observations and the number of unknown coordinate components in the math model.

$$dof = n - u \qquad \text{(Eq 9-3)}$$

where

n = number of observations
u = number of unknowns

i. Residuals. The residual (v) is the difference between the adjusted value of an observation (i.e., as it was fit to the adjusted station position) and the actual input measurement value. Each measurement will have a residual value after the adjustment process. The residual value represents the amount by which the measurement failed to match to the adjusted position.

j. Statistical testing. Statistical tests are widely used to determine if a given quantity (e.g., residual) is compatible with, or significantly different from, some other quantity (e.g., the mean or variance of a set of related residuals). For example, one might test whether a particular measurement is compatible with the mean, or whether it should be removed from the adjustment as a blunder, based on the statistical testing of residuals. Statistical tests indicate whether one should accept or reject the null hypothesis. A null hypothesis (H_o) is a statement that is assumed to be true until proven otherwise, conversely the alternative hypothesis (H_a) will be true if the null hypothesis is false. For example:

H_o : An observation is compatible with the mean, and
H_a : An observation is an outlier.

Statistical tests on the residuals would determine which of the above statements is supported by the data. For network adjustments, statistical testing is widely used for data quality assessment.

9-3. Adjustment Input Parameters.

a. General. Background information is provided below for building network adjustment files. These computer files typically have a standard list of inputs that are needed to produce results from the adjustment software. Introductory geodesy textbooks or an adjustment software user's guide can provide further background for understanding of the principles and practice of network adjustments.

b. Adjustment input data. The following sections describe both necessary and optional input data for a typical network adjustment. Refer to the adjustment data sample for Yatesville Lake Dam at the end of this chapter for supporting illustrations.

(1) Authorized project name. This record contains basic information for organizing and indexing the project such as project name, type of network, date of survey, user comments, etc.

(2) Ellipsoid parameters. The major and minor semi-axes dimension for the reference ellipsoid are required to define the geodetic reference system. These parameters describe the size and shape of the reference ellipsoid to be used for 3D adjustments with geodetic coordinates. Usually a menu-based list of common reference ellipsoids is presented and indexed (by name) to be selected by the user.

(4) Map projection parameters. Most software will require the user to select a standard map projection when adjusting plane coordinates. The parameters defining the projection are specified in the input file by, for example, projection type, name, units of measurement, standard parallel(s), central meridian, false easting, and false northing, as typical categories. Actual parameter values used will depend on the type of projection chosen and the project's geographic location. See Figure 9-2.

(4) Computation mode. Many adjustment software applications can process either preanalysis (survey design) files or the actual data in an adjustment. Therefore, either adjustment or preanalysis mode is selected by the user. The least squares processing algorithm is identical for both functions but the computational mode must be specified in the input file. The major difference between these modes is that preanalysis does not require actual observations for its computations of expected position error.

(5) Measurement units. All data and constants must be entered in the correct linear and angular units. Never input one variable (e.g., coordinates) in feet and another variable (e.g., measurements) in meters. Most software packages cannot accommodate mismatched units.

(6) Statistical confidence level. For adjustment computations use 95% confidence level (significance level of 0.05) for computing adjustment statistics. It is recommended to use 99 percent confidence for preanalysis and design of field surveys. The significance level defines how error magnitudes are statistically tested and reported during the adjustment.

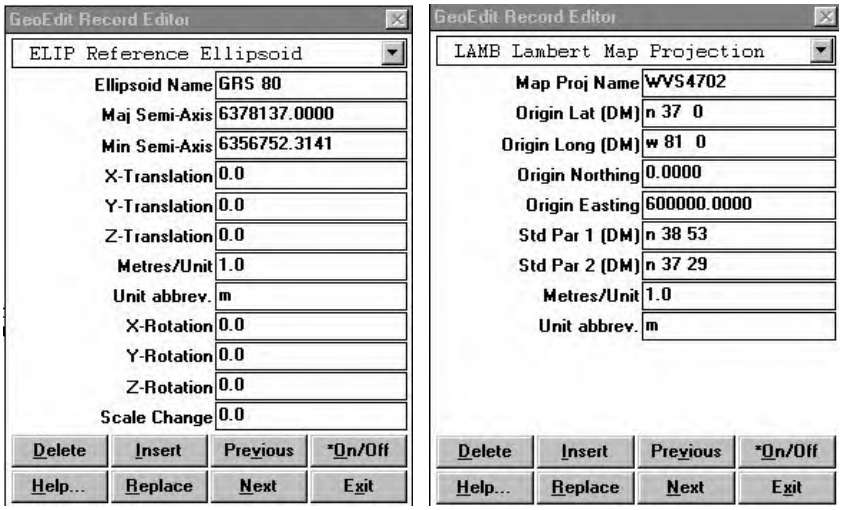


Figure 9-2. User option screens to select the reference ellipsoid and map projection for the adjustment. GRS80 is the ellipsoid that corresponds to NAD83 coordinates. Major and Minor Semi-Axes define the dimensions of the ellipsoid. Units are in meters with translations, rotations, and scale change set to zero. Under the map projection record screen, the projection type and name is selected from a pick list and then automatically populated with the standard Lambert Map Projection values (e.g., West Virginia South Projection in this example).

(7) Residual rejection criteria. These criteria define the probability distribution to be used for data quality assessment and the critical values needed for outlier detection. The Tau distribution will be used to calculate statistics for most adjustments. Tau test statistics apply to data sets with prior unknown mean and variance values (which is the typical case for survey data). This means that normal distribution probability values are converted to Tau values by the software.

(8) Approximate station coordinates (Figure 9-3). To process data in an adjustment, each station in the network must be given an estimated position. Approximate coordinates accurate to one (1) meter are sufficient for most networks, although with deformation networks, accuracies less than 0.1 meter should be available. It is imperative that these values are realistic, otherwise the adjustment may not converge to the correct solution. Adjustments use iterative methods to correct the initial coordinates until the change between successive computations falls below a certain tolerance (this adjustment convergence limit is usually set at 0.1 mm). For monitoring networks, the station coordinates coming from previous instrumentation surveys are usually well known, and should be used as approximate coordinates on the current adjustment. If for some reason there are no existing station coordinates for a given control point, such as for new monuments, then traverse sideshot data or plotting from large scale maps can be used to roughly determine new approximate coordinates.

(9) Network constraints. Network constraints provide information to the adjustment software about the absolute position and orientation of the network. In practice, all of the stations in the monitoring network will have some form of position constraint (by their approximate coordinates) that defines their relationship to the project datum. In most adjustment software packages, each coordinate component can be fixed separately, which permits breaking the network down into separate 2D and 1D adjustment schemes. There are several different types of network constraints available for adjustment processing, each having different advantages and uses.

```
*
 PLH  111 SG2          n 38  8 44.850910 w 82 22 53.155010     158.1660
 PLH  111 EL1          n 38  8 39.238950 w 82 22 56.596230     189.8584
 PLH  000 D-2          N 38 08  44.96390 W 82 23   6.98524     213.5943
 PLH  000 SG1          N 38 08  38.33506 W 82 22  59.71445     203.0432
*
 NEO  000 U1                  127914.204       478737.790      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U2                  127939.886       478709.217      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U3                  127973.044       478677.195      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U4                  128008.556       478647.869      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U5                  128033.501       478629.927      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U6                  127893.902       478665.303      202.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U7                  127930.722       478629.834      202.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 U8                  127970.066       478597.315      202.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D1                  127921.990       478744.299      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D2                  127947.196       478716.215      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D3                  127979.791       478684.729      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D4                  128014.747       478655.858      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D5                  128039.215       478638.251      220.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D6                  127987.591       478754.896      193.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D7                  128017.056       478726.426      193.0 WVS4702
 NEO  000 D8                  128048.472       478700.450      193.0 WVS4702
```

Figure 9-3. Approximate coordinates for each survey station in an example network. PLH stands for latitude, longitude, and ellipsoid height. NEO stands for Northing, Easting, and Orthometric height. The code 111 in the second column means each coordinate is fixed, and the code 000 means each coordinate is unfixed. The third column contains an abbreviated station name. The next three columns contain the approximate coordinate values for each station. The last column stands for West Virginia State plane projection 4702.

(a) Minimum constraint. Any station in the reference network can be held fixed for a minimally constrained adjustment, although usually there is a “master” reference station on each project that is selected to serve as its main control point. For 3D networks, the coordinates of the selected constraint point are fixed along with the orientation and scale of the three axes of the network coordinate system. A minimally constrained adjustment is carried out mainly to validate the measurement data, check for blunders and systematic errors, and to look at the internal consistency of the measurements. The results from a minimum constraint adjustment will show only errors due to measurements without adding in any potential errors coming from inaccurate control station coordinates. Table 9-1 lists the ordinary minimum constraints for adjustment of conventional survey observations.

(b) Fully constrained. In a fully constrained adjustment all stations in the reference network are assumed to have well-known coordinates (i.e., are stable points), and these are fixed with zero error in the adjustment input file. With fully constrained adjustments only the monitoring point stations are allowed to float and adjust in position. The drawback to a fully-constrained network adjustment is that any errors due to inaccurate reference station coordinates will be transferred to the monitoring points. Therefore, it is important that the reference network stations be surveyed independently with higher precision, and then checked against previous reference network surveys for stability.

Table 9-1. Minimum constraints.[1]

Network Type	Minimum Constraint
1D (i.e., z)	z of 1 point held fixed
2D (i.e., x, y) with distance	x and y of 1 point held fixed azimuth of 2nd point held fixed (standard deviation of azimuth = 0.1")
2D (i.e., x, y) without distance	x and y of 2 points held fixed
3D (i.e., x, y, z) with distance	x, y, and z of 1 point held fixed azimuth and zenith angle to 2nd point held fixed, zenith angle to 3rd point held fixed (standard deviation of azimuth and zenith angles = 0.1")
3D (i.e., x, y, z) without distance	x, y, z of 3 points held fixed
[1]x = x horizontal value y = y horizontal value z = z vertical value (i.e., elevation) NOTE: minimum constraints applied to opposite sides of network.	

(c) Weighted constraints. With a weighted constraints adjustment, every station in the monitoring network, both the reference stations and the monitoring points, are assigned weights. No station is fixed absolutely with zero error, but the reference stations are usually given higher weights. The weights are assigned per prior knowledge of their positioning uncertainty (i.e., point confidence ellipses) obtained from the results of a previous network adjustment.

-Reference stations are given a weight based on the covariance matrix of parameters resulting from the most recent project adjustment, or the adjustment of an independent reference network survey.
-Monitoring point stations are generally given a lower or essentially zero weight in relation to the reference network stations.

Coordinates for each station are assigned a separate weight matrix for position (e.g., a diagonal matrix constructed from the standard deviation of each coordinate component). A weighted constraints adjustment provides the most rigorous form of adjustment error propagation.

(d) Specialized constraints. When GPS survey observations are combined with photogrammetric surveys, the localized 3D coordinates (e.g., x, y, z coordinates) and associated variance-covariance matrix from the photogrammetric survey observations and subsequent bundle adjustment will be included. When only using photogrammetric surveys, free network constraints (i.e., inner constraints) will be used to define the datum. When photogrammetric surveys are combined only with conventional surveys, the datum will be defined by the constraints used in a conventional survey adjustment. If photogrammetric surveys are combined only with GPS survey observations, the GPS survey observations will be used to define the datum (e.g., location, orientation, scale). In each of these examples where a covariance matrix is required, it is an example of using a weighted constraints approach.

(10) Observation type. The type of observation must be declared for each measurement. Standard observation equations are built into the software for each different type of measurement that defines the adjustment math model. The level of detail and rigor used in defining the observation equations determines the quality of the adjustment software. Examples of survey observation types include; distance, angle, azimuth, direction, absolute coordinates, 2D and 3D coordinate differences, elevation, height difference, geoid height, and others. See Figure 9-4.

```
*
* Baseline tie-in
*
 DSET
 DIR      EL1          SG1                    0  0    0.00        0.58
 DIR      EL1          SG2                  135 59   38.54        0.58
*
 DSET
 DIR      SG1          D-2                    0  0    0.00        2.69
 DIR      SG1          SG2                   79 22   58.17        2.69
 DIR      SG1          EL1                  110 44   34.01        2.69
*
 DSET
 DIR      SG2          EL1                    0  0    0.00        1.37
 DIR      SG2          SG1                   12 38   48.45        1.37
 DIR      SG2          D-2                   64 45   17.11        1.37
*
 DIST     EL1          SG1                         81.9538       0.001
 ZANG     EL1          SG1                   80 44   28.10         1.0
*
 DIST     EL1          SG2                        194.8543       0.001
 ZANG     EL1          SG2                   99 21   36.79         1.0
```

Figure 9-4. Adjustment input example showing conventional observations used to tie between reference stations. Each record contains the type of observation, station names, measurement, and standard deviation value.

(11) Station connections. Network geometry identifies how the measurements are connected to each other in relation to distance, height, and orientation. Station names (or other point identifiers) are referenced to each observation, and are required for every measurement used in the adjustment.

(12) Measurement value. Every observation record will contain the final reduced mark-to-mark measurement value in its prescribed units. The coordinate system expected for most conventional observations is the Local Astronomic System. This system is defined to correspond with a level reference plane, as used by most conventional instruments, and a horizontal reference alignment (i.e., using the local plumb line and Astronomic North for vertical and horizontal orientation respectively).

(13) Measurement standard deviation. Every observation data record will contain an estimated standard deviation. Its actual value is pre-computed from variance formulas prescribed for each observation type (see Chapter 4).

9-4. Adjustment Output Parameters.

a. Adjustment output. The following sections describe typical output data from an adjustment—refer to the sample adjustment of Yatesville Lake dam in Appendix D.

(1) Degrees of freedom. The degrees of freedom describes the level of redundancy for a given survey adjustment. Greater degrees of freedom generally means greater statistical reliability of the solution. If possible, the degrees of freedom should be more than twice the number of unknown parameters (coordinates) in the adjustment.

(2) Flagged outliers. A measurement is flagged and rejected as an outlier if an observation residual turns out to be larger than the statistical confidence interval established for the set of observation residuals as a whole.

(3) Standardized residuals. Higher values for a standardized residual means a low degree of fit, and indicates the measurement associated with it may be suspect. The value of the standardized residual for each observation is compared to the standardized residuals of similar measurements to determine relative data quality.

(4) Confidence ellipse. The point confidence ellipse represents the accuracy of the adjusted position stated at the probability (significance) level selected for the adjustment. Its dimensions and orientation (size and shape) are described by:

-major semi-axis,
-minor semi-axis,
-vertical confidence interval, and
-azimuth or orientation of major semi-axis.

The magnitude of the major semi-axis of the point confidence ellipse represents the maximum expected error in horizontal position. The orientation of the confidence ellipse represents the principal direction of the maximum position error. The vertical error bar, if shown, would represent the maximum expected vertical positioning error. See examples at Figure 9-5.

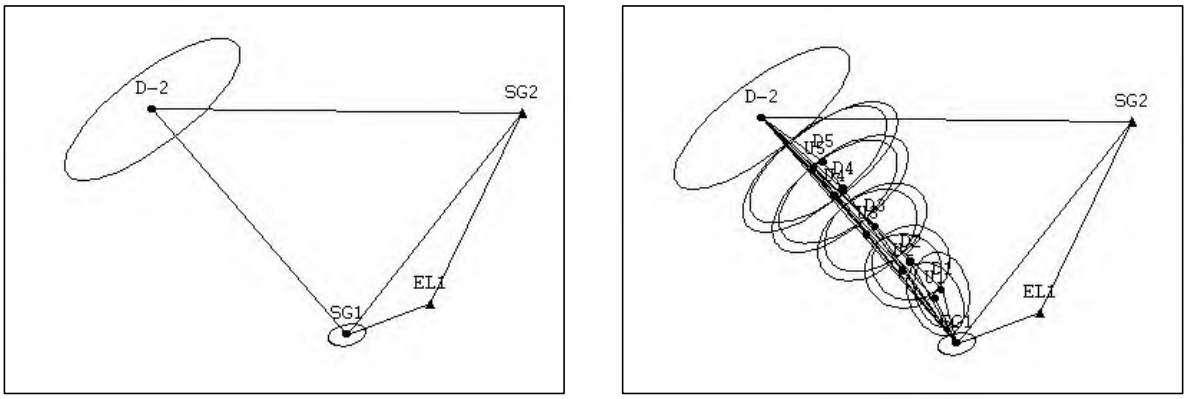


Figure 9-5. Adjustment output plots showing the reference network and monitoring network. The left-hand plot shows only the reference network stations with their error ellipses. The right-hand plot shows both the reference stations and the structure monitoring points with their error ellipses.

(5) Misclosures. (Figure 9-6). Large misclosures can signal problems with initial approximate coordinates. If an adjustment processing does not converge on a solution, then the approximate coordinates should be checked for possible data entry blunders. The station coordinates corresponding to the largest misclosure should be checked first as the most likely source of error.

```
================================================================================
                                   ECREST1
GeoLab V2.4d                  WGS 84              UNITS: m,DMS          Page 0002
================================================================================
Misclosures (pass 1):
TYPE AT           FROM          TO                    OBSERVATION STD.DEV.      MISC
---- ------------ ------------- ------------- ------------------- -------- ---------
GROUP: 00002231.SSF,obs#:   16 day  98  OPT                      98 0  17:
DXCT               SG2           D4                   -252.4681   0.0008    0.0008
DYCT               SG2           D4                    -94.7024   0.0017   -0.0022
DZCT               SG2           D4                    -30.0746   0.0016    0.0039
GROUP: 00002235.SSF,obs#:   20 day  98  OPT                      98 0  16:
DXCT               SG2           U3                   -227.3046   0.0007    0.0014
DYCT               SG2           U3                   -117.2940   0.0018    0.0008
DZCT               SG2           U3                    -62.5023   0.0016    0.0010
GROUP: 00002227.SSF,obs#:   21 day  98  OPT                      98 0  17:
DXCT               SG2           U4                   -259.7704   0.0008    0.0009
DYCT               SG2           U4                    -99.6715   0.0017   -0.0023
DZCT               SG2           U4                    -34.9894   0.0016    0.0037
```

Figure 9-6. Adjustment output showing an example of misclosures for some observations. All misclosures shown are only a few centimeters, which indicates the approximate coordinates and the observations are a close match.

(6) Adjusted coordinates. (Figure 9-7). The main result of an adjustment is the adjusted coordinates for each station in the network. To directly calculate linear displacements, the output coordinates should be converted to a Cartesian System (x, y, z).

```
================================================================================
                                ECREST1
GeoLab V2.4d                    WGS 84              UNITS: m,DMS          Page 0004
================================================================================
Adjusted PLH Coordinates:
                                        LATITUDE          LONGITUDE  ELIP-HEIGHT
 CODE FFF STATION                         STD DEV            STD DEV      STD DEV
 ---- --- ------------ ------------------ ------------------ ------------
 PLH  000 D1           N 38 08 39.907802 W 82 23  0.259213     186.9275
                                  0.0005             0.0004       0.0010
 PLH  000 D2           N 38 08 40.711910 W 82 23  1.427794     187.0958
                                  0.0004             0.0003       0.0009
 PLH  000 D4           N 38 08 42.873908 W 82 23  3.947207     187.0954
                                  0.0003             0.0003       0.0009
 PLH  000 D5           N 38 08 43.658989 W 82 23  4.685115     186.8972
                                  0.0006             0.0004       0.0018
 PLH  111 EL1          N 38 08 39.238950 W 82 22 56.596230     189.8584
                                  0.0000             0.0000       0.0000
 PLH  111 SG2          N 38 08 44.850910 W 82 22 53.155010     158.1660
                                  0.0000             0.0000       0.0000
 PLH  000 U1           N 38 08 39.652228 W 82 23  0.521696     186.9883
                                  0.0006             0.0004       0.0010
 PLH  000 U2           N 38 08 40.471523 W 82 23  1.710551     187.1150
                                  0.0004             0.0003       0.0009
 PLH  000 U3           N 38 08 41.531445 W 82 23  3.045857     187.2968
                                  0.0005             0.0004       0.0011
 PLH  000 U4           N 38 08 42.669274 W 82 23  4.271490     187.1721
                                  0.0003             0.0003       0.0009
 PLH  000 U5           N 38 08 43.469769 W 82 23  5.023436     186.9739
                                  0.0006             0.0004       0.0019
```

Figure 9-7. Adjustment output showing the final adjusted coordinates for each station in the network.

(7) Goodness-of-Fit (Chi-square test). Residuals as a whole will either pass or fail the Goodness-of-Fit test. A Failed Chi-square test can indicate that there are measurement biases still remaining in the input data or that there are still some unremoved outliers. The Goodness-of-Fit test compares the shape of the actual distribution of residuals and the standard normal distribution to determine its degree of fit. If the test fails it indicates that the errors were not randomly distributed as should be expected in an adjustment. Separate Goodness-of-Fit tests can be made on the residuals from different types of measurements (e.g., distances, angles, or height differences, etc.). Partitioning the data into separate groups to make separate statistical tests is a procedure used to locate problems with particular types of measurements. A lack of fit between observations and coordinates can be determined for any particular group of measurements by examining the histogram of residuals. See also the sample output in Figure 9-8.

(8) A posteriori variance factor. The a posteriori variance factor is produced by the adjustment and indicates the precision for the results by incorporating the observation residuals into the assessment of coordinate accuracy. If the adjustment weighting scheme is too optimistic

or too pessimistic, then the variance factor provides a scale factor to the adjustment covariance matrix. A posteriori variance factor values greater than one (1.0) indicate that the observation weights were overly optimistic, values less than one (1.0) indicate that the observation weights were overly pessimistic.

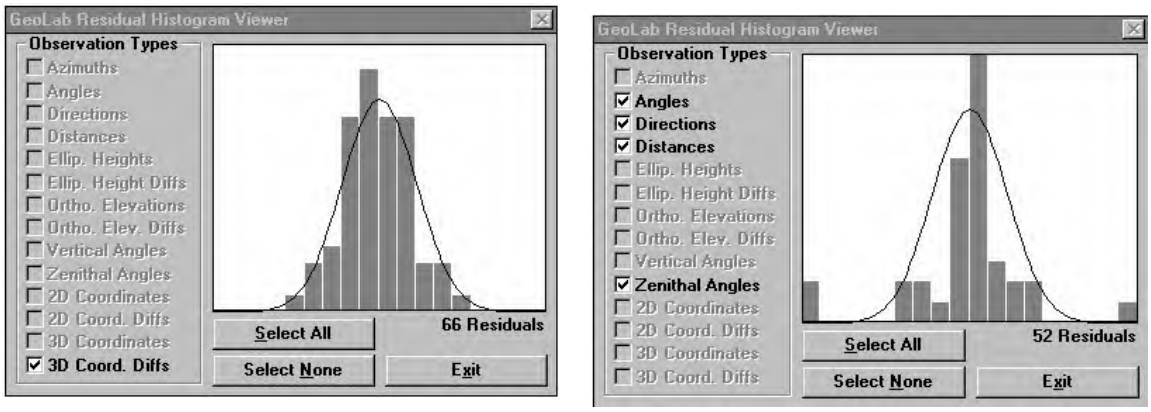


Figure 9-8. Histogram plots for the observation residuals. The left-hand plot shows normally distributed residuals for the GPS observations. The right-hand plot shows a few observations at the lateral margins indicating there are some outliers present in the conventional survey data.

b. Test on the variance. The a posteriori variance factor is a global indicator of the quality of the adjustment and the weighting scheme. It is assessed by comparing its computed value to its expected value (i.e., 1.0) using a statistical test on the variance. The a posteriori variance factor is computed for an adjustment by dividing the quadratic form of the residuals by the degrees of freedom.

$$\sigma^2 = (V^t W V)/dof \qquad \text{(Eq 9-4)}$$

where

σ^2	=	A posteriori variance factor
V	=	Residual vector
W	=	Covariance matrix of observations
dof	=	Degrees of freedom

The null and alternative hypotheses for the test on the variance are as follows:

$H_o : \sigma^2 = \sigma_o^2 \;\; \therefore \; \sigma^2 / \sigma_o^2 = 1$
$H_a : \sigma^2 \neq \sigma_o^2 \;\; \therefore \; \sigma^2 / \sigma_o^2 \neq 1$

The test fails, and the null hypothesis is rejected, if:

$$dof\,(\sigma^2) / \varphi\,\chi^2_{dof,\,1-\alpha/2} < \sigma_o^2 < dof\,(\sigma^2) / \varphi\,\chi^2_{dof,\,\alpha/2}$$

where

$\varphi\,\chi^2_{dof,\,1-\alpha/2}$ and $\varphi\,\chi^2_{dof,\,\alpha/2}$ are critical values from the Chi-square (χ) distribution tables based on a significance level alpha (α) and the degrees of freedom (*dof*).

c. Detection and removal of outliers. An outlier is a measurement that is statistically incompatible with similar types of measurements from a given survey. Outlier detection is a quality control procedure essential to pre-processing and data cleaning. An observation is tested against the confidence level of the mean using a simple statistical test with a known or assumed variance.

$$\mu - (\sigma\,\varphi) < obs_i < \mu + (\sigma\,\varphi) \qquad \text{(Eq 9-5)}$$

The probability value φ is determined from standard normal probability density tables using degrees of freedom equal to the number of observations and significance level (0.05).

d. Statistical assessment of residuals. Measurement outliers should be removed from the adjustment processing. Outliers can be identified by sequentially testing each standardized residual to determine if its value exceeds a defined rejection threshold. The Tau test uses the Tau distribution to compute rejection critical values.

(1) Tau Test probability. The Tau (τ) distribution can be derived from the Student-t distribution (t) using the following formula:

$$\tau = [(dof)^{0.5}\,t_{dof-1}] / [(dof-1) + (t^2_{dof-1})]^{0.5} \qquad \text{(Eq 9-6)}$$

where

dof	=	degrees of freedom
t	=	Critical value from the Student-t distribution

Tau test critical values are computed for a significance value (α) and degrees of freedom (*dof*).

(2) Standardized Residuals. A standardized residual (v') is defined as the observation residual divided by the standard deviation of the residual:

$$v' = v / \sigma_v \qquad \text{(Eq 9-7)}$$

where

v'	=	Standardized residual

v = Computed residual
σ_v = Standard deviation of the residual

Standardized residuals are computed to allow direct comparison between residuals of the same type. A much higher value for one of the standardized residuals indicates that it does not fit well compared to other standardized residuals, and its corresponding observation may be flagged as an outlier. When computing standardized residuals, the standard deviation of the residual (σ_r) can be replaced with the standard deviation of the corresponding observation (σ_r). However, because the residual standard deviation is smaller than the observation standard deviation,

$$|v| / \sigma_l < |v| / \sigma_v$$

an outlier might not be rejected. Therefore, it is recommended that the significance value (α) be increased for outlier detection to decrease the corresponding confidence level when using the observation standard deviation (σ_l).

(3) Outlier rejection. The rejection threshold for testing for measurement outliers is computed for a significance level (α) using the Tau distribution. The outlier rejection statistic for the standardized residual:

$$|v'| < (\varphi_{\tau dof,\, 1-\alpha/2})\, \sigma_v$$

determines if the standardized residual exceeds the rejection threshold, if so, it is considered an outlier. The suggested significance value for the technique is $\alpha = 0.01$. The outlier rejection technique is based on univariate statistical testing, which is most effective when only one significant outlier is present in the network.

e. Rejection criteria. The following table provides guidance on assessing rejection tolerances for various instruments.

9-5. Adjustment Procedures.

a. General. This section provides an overview of processing procedures and data requirements for using network adjustment software applications.

b. Coordinate system. Network adjustments that solve for coordinate positions do so in a defined coordinate system. Some software applications will require the use of geodetic coordinates. Geodetic coordinates are transferred to the reference network if non-geodetic coordinates are used on the project.

Table 9-2. Rejection criteria for preprocessing of deformation survey data.

Type of Instrument	Type of Measurement	Test	Action if Data Rejected
Theodolite[1] /Total Station	Angle	Reduced data must be less than 2 seconds from the mean reduced direction, otherwise, reject	Re-observe the portion of the rejected survey
Subtense Bar[1]	Angle	Reduced zenith angle not being used to compute a height difference must be less than 4 seconds from the mean reduced direction, otherwise, reject	Re-observe the portion of the rejected survey
Theodolite[1] /Total Station (Trigonometric Leveling)	Elevation	Reduced and corrected zenith angle not being used to compute a height difference must be less than 2 seconds from the mean reduced and corrected zenith angle, otherwise, reject	Re-observe the portion of the rejected survey
Steel or Invar Tape	Distance	Difference between two independently measured distances must be less than 2 mm, otherwise, reject	Re-measure the distance rejected
EDM Distance	Distance	Maximum difference among the four independent measured distances must be less than 5 mm, otherwise, reject	Re-measure the distance rejected
Automatic Level	Elevation	Difference between readings on the left and right hand scale must be within 0.25 mm of rod constant, otherwise, reject Difference between height difference determined from the foresight and backsight readings on the left rod scale and that determined from foresights and backsight readings from the rights scale must be less than 0.25 mm, otherwise, reject	Re-observe the portion of the rejected survey
Network of Level Setups	Elevation	Height difference misclosure in a loop must be less than 3 mm * (K in km), (Minimum = 1 mm) otherwise, reject	Formulate different loops to determine height differences between points common to loops which have been rejected; or, re-observe the portion of the survey rejected
Level and Meter Rule	HI	Difference between two independent readings must be less than 0.5 mm, otherwise, reject	Re-measure the distance rejected
GPS Receivers	3D coordinates	Tests as detailed in EM 1110-1-1003	Reoccupy baseline
1 When performing these data reductions, no atmospheric, instrumental, standardization, and geometric corrections are necessary for angular observation made with a theodolite, except in the case of zenith angles, which are observed for the purpose of determining height differences (in which case, earth curvature and refraction need be considered). Because a deformation survey is on a localized network, skew-normal, arc-to-chord, and normal section to geodetic correction need not be applied.			

(1) Geodetic coordinates. North American Datum of 1983 (NAD83) coordinates are recommended for new projects and projects that incorporate GPS measurements. The project reference network should be tied directly to established NAD83 control by a separate survey. This avoids potentially inaccurate coordinate transformations that might be needed when processing the network adjustment based on local coordinates.

(2) Map projection coordinates. Horizontal positions defined with coordinates based on a map projection are readily handled by most adjustment software applications. State Plane coordinates or Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) coordinates still require having an underlying geodetic coordinate system related to a standard reference ellipsoid.

(3) Local coordinate system. Station and offset coordinates, based on a local construction datum, are often used for reporting survey results. Some software applications are available that work reasonably well using only simple plane coordinates. However, an arbitrary coordinate system may restrict user options for processing an adjustment.

c. Three dimensional networks. Measurement data combined from separate horizontal and vertical surveys are often used to determine 3D coordinates of network stations. Three dimensional networks yield the most robust adjustment results because there are a large number of redundant measurements needed to reliably interconnect the horizontal and vertical network components. Elevations are required on all reference stations for 3D networks, along with zenith angle measurement ties to common points in the vertical network.

d. Separate horizontal and vertical networks. Horizontal and vertical networks can be adjusted independently if they are setup in the proper manner. For example, with horizontal networks, the elevations for all horizontal network stations should be fixed to a constant, average height, for the entire network (project) and horizontal distances should be used instead of mark-to-mark slope distances. Vertical network stations require approximate horizontal coordinates for processing the vertical adjustment and for error propagation. Vertical networks should include zenith angle ties from the reference network stations where possible and establishing accurate elevations at the reference stations.

e. Configuration defects. Repeated deformation surveys should involve measurements made over the same station configuration using the same sub-sets of network stations, otherwise the comparison between epochs may fail to give adequate results due to configuration defects (i.e., missing observations). During processing and analysis of the adjustment, the same minimal and fixed constraints should be applied for both survey epochs and each survey should be adjusted with the same statistical tests and confidence level.

f. Observation weighting. Observations will be assigned weights per the a priori estimation of variance for each measurement (i.e., using the standard deviation computed for each measurement).

(1) For conventional surveys, the standard deviations and error models applicable to each type of measurement are to be used in the survey data adjustment. The formulas for variance estimation are provided in Chapter 4.

(2) When GPS survey observations are used in the deformation survey, they will be adjusted with either the GPS-based, 3D coordinates or coordinate differences and their associated variance-covariance matrices per EM 1110-1-1003, NAVSTAR Global Positioning System Surveying.

g. Survey adjustment. Final processing of the survey data should be made using least squares adjustment techniques and software. For each adjustment, the following quantities will be determined.

-Adjusted point coordinates
-Variance-covariance matrix of parameters
-Point confidence ellipse major semi-axis
-Standardized residuals for each observation
-A posteriori variance factor
-Total redundancy of the network

h. Data quality assessment. For each adjustment, the following data quality indicators will be checked.

(1) Examination of misclosures. Computed misclosure values should not exceed one (1) meter, otherwise, examine and correct initial approximate coordinates.

(2) Point confidence ellipse dimensions. The computed major semi-axis of each point confidence ellipse should not exceed the stated accuracy requirement for the survey. See sample outputs in Figures 9-9 and 9-10.

ECREST1

GeoLab V2.4d WGS 84 UNITS: m,DMS Page 0011

2-D and 1-D Station Confidence Regions (95.000 percent):

STATION	MAJOR SEMI-AXIS	AZ	MINOR SEMI-AXIS	VERTICAL
D1	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019
D2	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018
D4	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019
D5	0.0014	161	0.0009	0.0035
U1	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019
U2	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018
U3	0.0012	162	0.0008	0.0022
U4	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019
U5	0.0015	161	0.0010	0.0037

Figure 9-9. Adjustment output showing confidence regions for each adjusted horizontal and vertical position of each station in the network. At the 95% confidence level, horizontal position uncertainty (MAJOR SEMI-AXIS) is between 0.9-1.5 mm, and vertical position uncertainty ranges between
1.8-3.7 mm.

ECREST1

GeoLab V2.4d WGS 84 UNITS: m,DMS Page 0012

2-D and 1-D Relative Station Confidence Regions (95.000 percent):

FROM	TO	MAJ-SEMI	AZ	MIN-SEMI	VERTICAL	DISTANCE	PPM
D1	EL1	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019	91.5964	15.95
D1	SG2	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019	232.3432	6.29
D1	U1	0.0013	28	0.0006	0.0017	10.1468	130.57
D2	EL1	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018	126.1441	7.97
D2	SG2	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018	240.2176	4.18
D2	U2	0.0008	11	0.0005	0.0014	10.1167	77.22
D4	EL1	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019	211.2129	4.15
D4	SG2	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019	271.3172	3.23
D4	U4	0.0008	157	0.0006	0.0016	10.1080	75.40
D5	EL1	0.0014	161	0.0009	0.0035	239.5408	6.01
D5	SG2	0.0014	161	0.0009	0.0035	284.6099	5.06
D5	U5	0.0015	161	0.0010	0.0038	10.0953	152.96
EL1	U1	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019	96.4764	15.60
EL1	U2	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018	130.2362	7.73
EL1	U3	0.0012	162	0.0008	0.0022	172.2461	6.99
EL1	U4	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019	214.7678	4.08
EL1	U5	0.0015	161	0.0010	0.0037	243.1797	6.25
SG2	U1	0.0015	28	0.0007	0.0019	242.2878	6.21
SG2	U2	0.0010	11	0.0007	0.0018	249.9477	4.03
SG2	U3	0.0012	162	0.0008	0.0022	263.3080	4.57
SG2	U4	0.0009	157	0.0007	0.0019	280.4268	3.12
SG2	U5	0.0015	161	0.0010	0.0037	293.5370	5.18

Figure 9-10. Adjustment output showing relative confidence regions for horizontal and vertical position between each station in the network. At the 95% confidence level, horizontal position uncertainty (MAJ-SEMI) is between 0.8-1.5 mm, and vertical position uncertainty is between
1.4-3.8 mm.

(3) Goodness-of-Fit test. The distribution of residuals should pass the Chi-square test for Goodness-of-Fit at the 0.05 significance level (95% confidence).

(4) Outlier detection. Standardized residuals should be within the tolerance limits for rejection as an outlier as established by the residual rejection critical value at the 95% confidence level. Observations flagged as outliers should be removed and the adjustment repeated. Only the single observation associated with the greatest magnitude residual should be removed before reprocessing the adjustment. Outlier detection should be carried out only on a minimally constrained network.

(5) Chi-Square test on variance factor. The computed a posteriori variance factor should pass the Chi-square test. If the variance factor does not pass because of a value less than 0.5 or greater than 2.0, then observation weights should be verified, and if found to be realistic, then the covariance matrix of parameters should be multiplied by the estimated variance factor to scale its values.

(6) Redundancy number. The computed degrees of freedom should be no less than the number of unknown coordinate components, preferably two or more times greater.

i. Reference network stability. Examination of a separate adjustment of the reference network will be done to check whether the reference points were stable between epochs. Any reference points that are not found to be stable will be left unconstrained in the network adjustment. All reference network points found to be stable are held fixed.

j. Calculation of displacements. After a network adjustment is completed for two different instrumentation surveys, the adjusted coordinates for each monitoring point are extracted and differenced to calculate point displacements, and identify significant movement between the separate time epochs.

k. Required submittal documents. The contracting officer should require the contractor to supply the final adjustment for each project. The contractor should supply a list containing any observations that were removed due to blunders. The contractor must provide USACE with an analysis explaining the methodology used in the adjustment, assumptions, and possible error sources, see Chapter 12.

CHAPTER 10

Laser Scanning in Deformation Monitoring

10-1. General. This chapter contains general information about how laser scanning or Light Detection and Ranging (LiDAR) systems and close range photogrammetry can be used within the context of deformation monitoring.

a. Uses. Utilizing LiDAR or high definition close range photogrammetry data to create a full three-dimensional point cloud and/or model of a structure allows the specialist performing an analysis to gain a full picture of the deformation occurring on or within the structure. Historical alignment and deformation surveys typically inspect one or two points within a monolith and show displacement from previous surveys. With three dimensional comparison, not only can the analysts see displacement across the full structure, but can see rotational values to better evaluate the performance of the structure.

b. Limitations. Users must perform a detailed analysis of a structure to determine the type of movement or motion which is expected to be detected or monitored and then make an informed decision based on the technology and processes that are available. Terrestrial LiDAR may be an acceptable option whereas mobile or aerial LiDAR may not provide level of detail and accuracy that is required for monitoring of a concrete structure. As with any survey, a LiDAR or 3D Model survey should be closely tied to existing site control.

Figure 10-1. A Leica C10 scanner set up for use on a project (USACE Huntington District).

10-2. Instrumentation and Performance. There are various components that make up the instrumentation used in laser scanning.

a. Terrestrial Scanners. There are two basic types of laser scanning devices, Time of Flight (TOF) LiDAR scanners and Phased based LiDAR scanners.

(1) Time of Flight (TOF) LiDAR Scanner-TOF Scanners offer a greater distance range while collecting data at a slower speed compared to other methods. Examples of TOF scanners are the Leica C10 and Reigl. See Figure 10-1. Scans need to be planned based on the required point accuracy and density required for the project.

(2) Phased based (PB) LiDAR Scanner- PB Scanners offer faster collection of points but at a reduced distance range. Example of PB scanners are Faro X330 and Trimble TX8. See Figure 10-2.

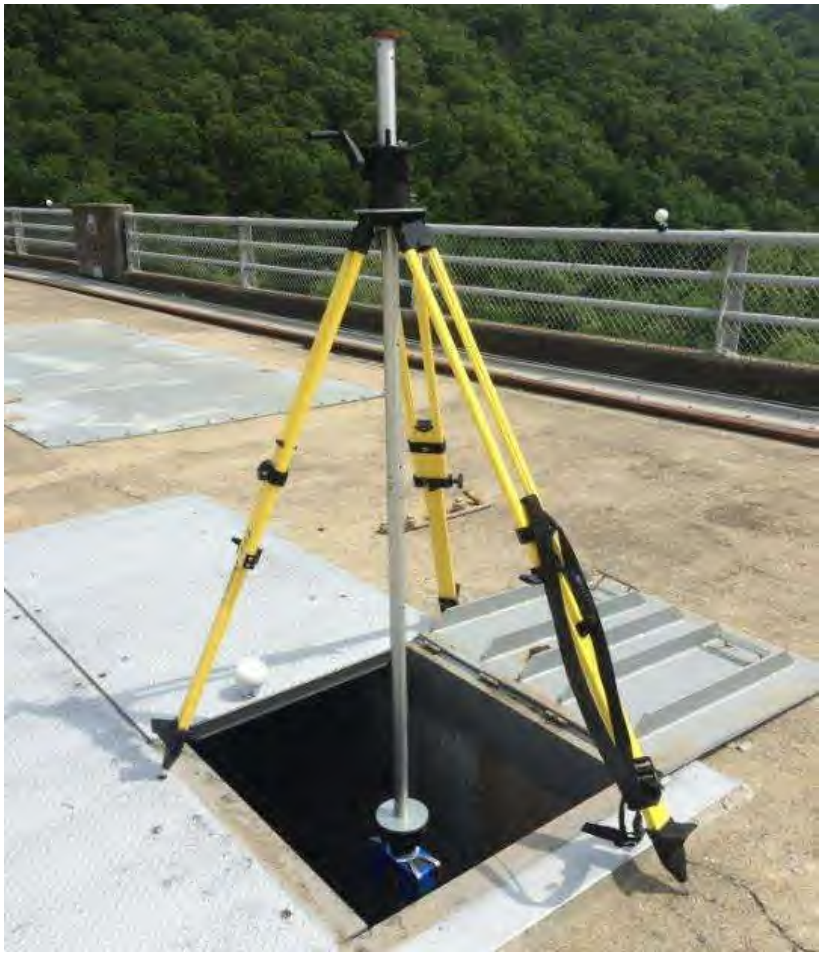


Figure 10-2. A Faro scanner set up inverted for data collection. (USACE Huntington District).

b. Terrestrial Photogrammetry. Several manufactures have equipment's such as the Trimble V10 that can produce point clouds from various images captured from various angles. Testing should be done prior to use to verify the accuracy of the equipment.

c. Orientation and Registration of the Scans in field. Various equipment use multiple methods to orientate the scans in the field prior to importing into the office software.

(1) Resection. Units such as the Leica C10 will position and orient the location of the scanner from known coordinate positions in the field.

(2) GPS and Compass. Units such as the Faro X330 are equipped with compass, GPS and barometers to orient and locate the position of the scanner to assist with registration.

(3) Survey Station. New model scanners from Trimble and Leica are now integrated within the framework of and body of the robotic total station. Orientation and position are established by traditional survey methods or instrument location and back sighting.

d. Associated Equipment. This section discusses the supporting equipment associated with conducting laser scanning surveys.

(1) Targets. Targets can be used to both reference multiple scans together and to georeferenced scans into real world coordinate systems.

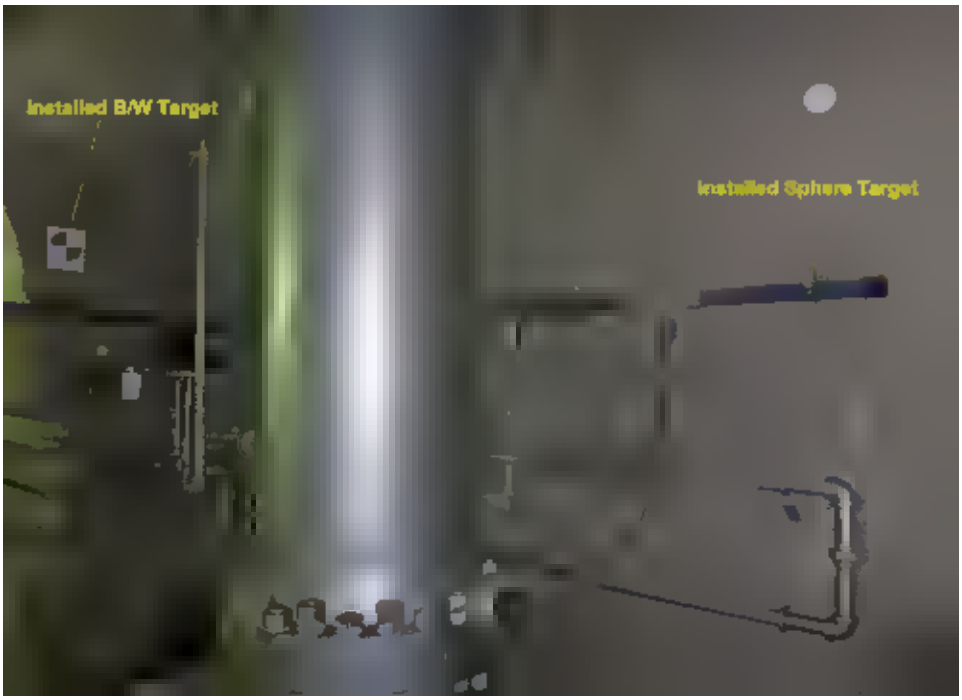


Figure 10-3. Example targets used with laser scanning. (USACE Huntington District).

(a) Flat Targets. These types of targets typically contain two colors, having a contrast that is visible in the scans. Targets can be temporary or permanent, and are typically made from plastic. Typically, these are 8 ½ by 11 inch targets created with a series of numbers preprinted starting at 1000 and running to 2000 to assist in the registration process (See Figure 10-3 and 10-4). Flat targets can be acquired from a manufacturer or developed in house.

Figure 10-4. A flat laser scan target. (USACE Huntington District).

(b) Spheres. Scan spheres are polyethylene or aluminum coated with a reflective white coating. The scan processing software can determine absolute center of the sphere from points captured on the surface of the sphere. Spheres are typically 100 mm or 230 mm diameter and are

used for registering multiple scans together based on the property that a sphere is visible from multiple angles. See Figure 10-3.

(2) Accessories. There are various equipment accessories that support the operation of laser scanning devices. These include:

-Magnetic mounts for use with spheres
-Pipe magnetic mounts for small spheres
-Fixed height rods with tri-pod or bi-pod
-Camera Tripod legs
-Backpack for taking scanning devise in hard to reach places
-Tribach adapter for setting up over know points
-Rangefinder (Binocular type) for planning sphere distances from scanner on large jobs

e. Accuracy. The accuracy of scanning measurements depends on the design and performance of the scanning device hardware, the software used for processing the point cloud, and registration of multiple scans.

(1) Typical scanner accuracy on distance measurement for a phased based scanner is 1mm + 1ppm of the range, with an angular accuracy of less than 1 arc second. Time of flight scanners typically have a longer range with lower accuracy than phase measurement systems.

(2) Scan registration is the second major factor in overall point cloud accuracy. Scan registration can achieve overall network registrations of less that 3mm over long distances, equating to a closing accuracy exceeding 1:100,000. To achieve the highest accuracy of scanning registration, users should place multiple targets at various distances and locations, using larger 230 mm spheres for longer distances to obtain as much LiDAR coverage on the sphere, while using the flat targets or 100 mm to reduce LiDAR shadow.

10-3. Data Management. Scan Data files can become extremely large, for example, one single full resolution scan from a FARO X-330 can run up to 1 GB in file size while an exterior scan file from a Leica C10 may run up to 500mb. A proficient field crew should be able to complete 10-15 scans daily based on the project size and topology. File names should be coordinated by location and date to help manage and coordinate files and field notes. On indoor scans, where GPS is not available to help register the scan, it is important to maintain file names and locations to help in the registration process. An example file name for a project at the Bluestone Dam Project (BLN) would be BLN-061317-A for the first scan of the day with corresponding field notes and sketch showing location of scanner and what targets are available.

10-4. Standardized Reporting. Reports provided for laser scanning data collection/surveys should include at a minimum the following: General information on the project, including purpose, location, type of data collection, who performed the data collection and dates of data collection; Equipment used during data collection to include make, model and serial number and

calibration results if required; Control points used for the data collection with horizontal and vertical datum defined; Copy of project log sheets or summary; Results from the data collection with horizontal and vertical datum, units of measurement, and who verified the results; and Images and pictures/scans of the data collection. Additional information for a delivered report may include: Description of the data processing methods used including adjustment results; QA/QC process used in the verification of results and/or procedure for evaluating accuracy performance; Photos of the control points used during collection; and Data sheets for control points used.

10-5. Project Example. The following figures are from a report on the Intake Structure Monitoring Survey at Atwood Lake in Mineral City, OH conducted by the USACE Huntington District.

COMPARISON 1
OR-TM COPY

US ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS

HUNTINGTON DISTRICT

Project: Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH

Job #: 12-17

W.O. #: Internal

Contract #: N/A

Subject: Atwood Lake Intake Structure Monitoring

Prepared by:

USACE-Huntington District
Surveying Section-EC-TG
Address:
502 Eighth Street
Huntington, WV 25701

Party Chief: Ansell
Date: 2-2-17

US Army Corps
of Engineers
Huntington District

Prepared for:

USACE-Huntington District
OR-TM (ORW IG)
Huntington, WV

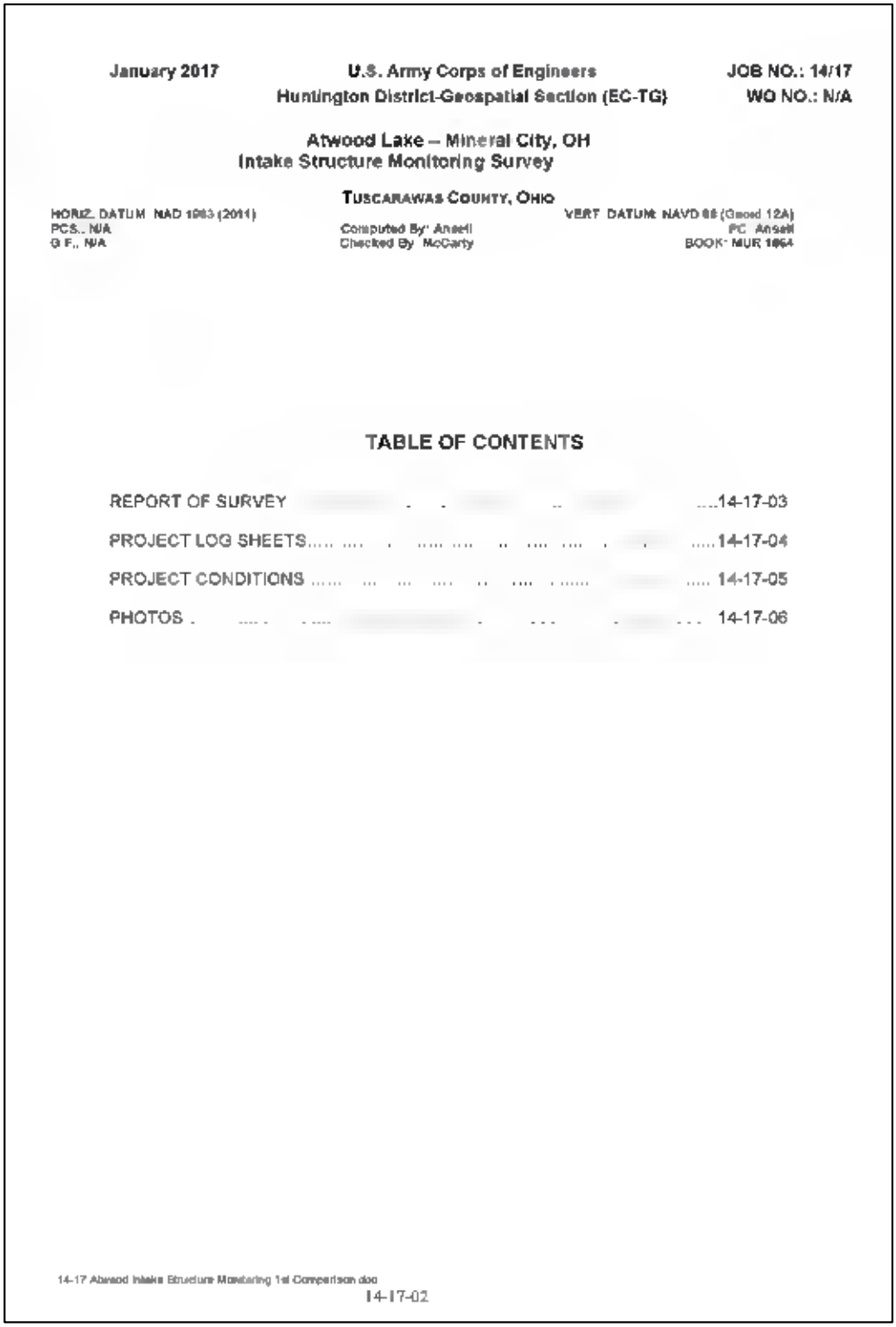
Submittal Date: February 2, 2017

Copies to: OR-ATI (CALLAHAN)
OR-MUR (SIFDEL)
EC-DS (HAYES)

Resubmitted:

14-17 Atwood Intake Structure Monitoring FAE Comparison.doc
14-17-01

Figure 10-5. Sample report cover page.



January 2017 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) WO NO.: N/A

Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

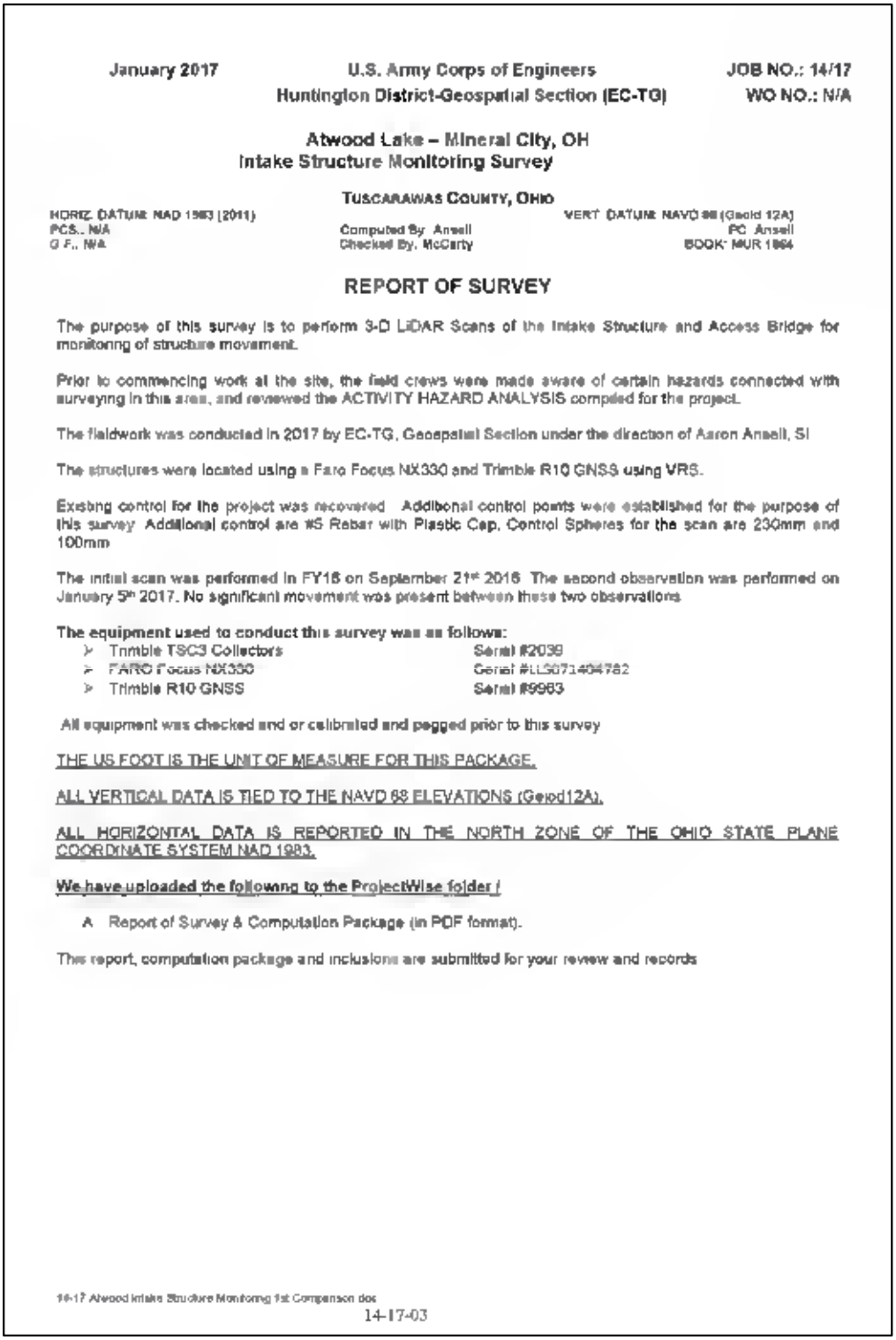
TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011) VERT. DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PCS.: N/A PC: Ansell
G.F.: N/A Computed By: Ansell Checked By: McCarty BOOK: MUR 1864

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REPORT OF SURVEY 14-17-03
PROJECT LOG SHEETS 14-17-04
PROJECT CONDITIONS 14-17-05
PHOTOS 14-17-06

Figure 10-6. Sample report table of contents.



January 2017 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011) | VERT. DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PCS.: N/A | Computed By: Ansell | PC: Ansell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: MUR 1864

REPORT OF SURVEY

The purpose of this survey is to perform 3-D LiDAR Scans of the Intake Structure and Access Bridge for monitoring of structure movement.

Prior to commencing work at the site, the field crews were made aware of certain hazards connected with surveying in this area, and reviewed the ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS compiled for the project.

The fieldwork was conducted in 2017 by EC-TG, Geospatial Section under the direction of Aaron Ansell, SI

The structures were located using a Faro Focus NX330 and Trimble R10 GNSS using VRS.

Existing control for the project was recovered. Additional control points were established for the purpose of this survey. Additional control are #5 Rebar with Plastic Cap. Control Spheres for the scan are 230mm and 100mm

The initial scan was performed in FY16 on September 21st 2016. The second observation was performed on January 5th 2017. No significant movement was present between these two observations.

The equipment used to conduct this survey was as follows:

- Trimble TSC3 Collectors — Serial #2039
- FARO Focus NX330 — Serial #LLS071404782
- Trimble R10 GNSS — Serial #9983

All equipment was checked and or calibrated and pegged prior to this survey

THE US FOOT IS THE UNIT OF MEASURE FOR THIS PACKAGE.

ALL VERTICAL DATA IS TIED TO THE NAVD 88 ELEVATIONS (Geoid12A).

ALL HORIZONTAL DATA IS REPORTED IN THE NORTH ZONE OF THE OHIO STATE PLANE COORDINATE SYSTEM NAD 1983.

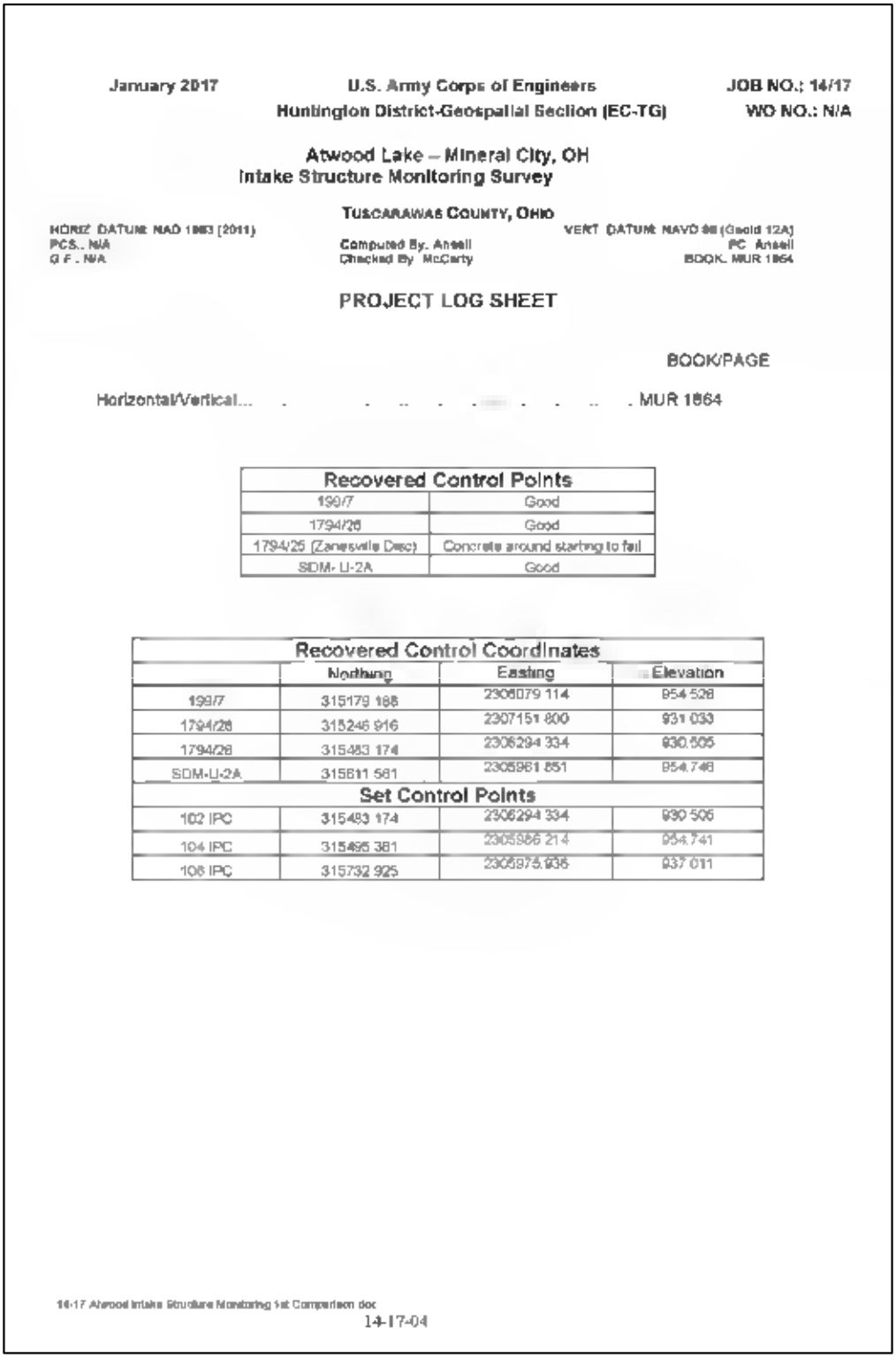
We have uploaded the following to the ProjectWise folder /

A Report of Survey & Computation Package (in PDF format).

This report, computation package and inclusions are submitted for your review and records

14-17 Atwood Intake Structure Monitoring 1st Comparison.doc
14-17-03

Figure 10-7. Sample report, report of survey section.



January 2017 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) WO NO.: N/A

Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011) VERT DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PCS.: N/A Computed By: Ansell PC: Ansell
G.F.: N/A Checked By: McCarty BOOK: MUR 1864

PROJECT LOG SHEET

BOOK/PAGE

Horizontal/Vertical . . . . . MUR 1864

Recovered Control Points	
199/7	Good
1794/26	Good
1794/25 (Zanesville Datc)	Concrete around starting to fail
SDM- U-2A	Good

Recovered Control Coordinates			
	Northing	Easting	Elevation
199/7	315179.188	2306079.114	954.528
1794/26	315246.916	2307151.800	931.033
1794/26	315483.174	2306294.334	930.505
SDM-U-2A	315611.581	2305961.851	954.746
Set Control Points			
102 IPC	315483.174	2306294.334	930.505
104 IPC	315495.381	2305966.214	954.741
106 IPC	315732.925	2305975.936	937.011

14-17 Atwood Intake Structure Monitoring 1st Comparison.doc
14-17-04

Figure 10-8. Sample report, project log sheet.

January 2017 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) WO NO.: N/A

Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011) VERT. DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PCS: N/A PC: Ansell
G.F.: N/A Computed By: Ansell BOOK: MUR 1854
Checked By: McCarty

First Observation overview
Weather was 60°F and sunny

Second Observation overview
Weather 10°F and sunny with approximately 1/2 inch of snow

14-17 Atwood Intake Structure Monitoring 1st Comparison.dgn

14-17-05

Figure 10-9. Sample Report, scan images of intake structure.

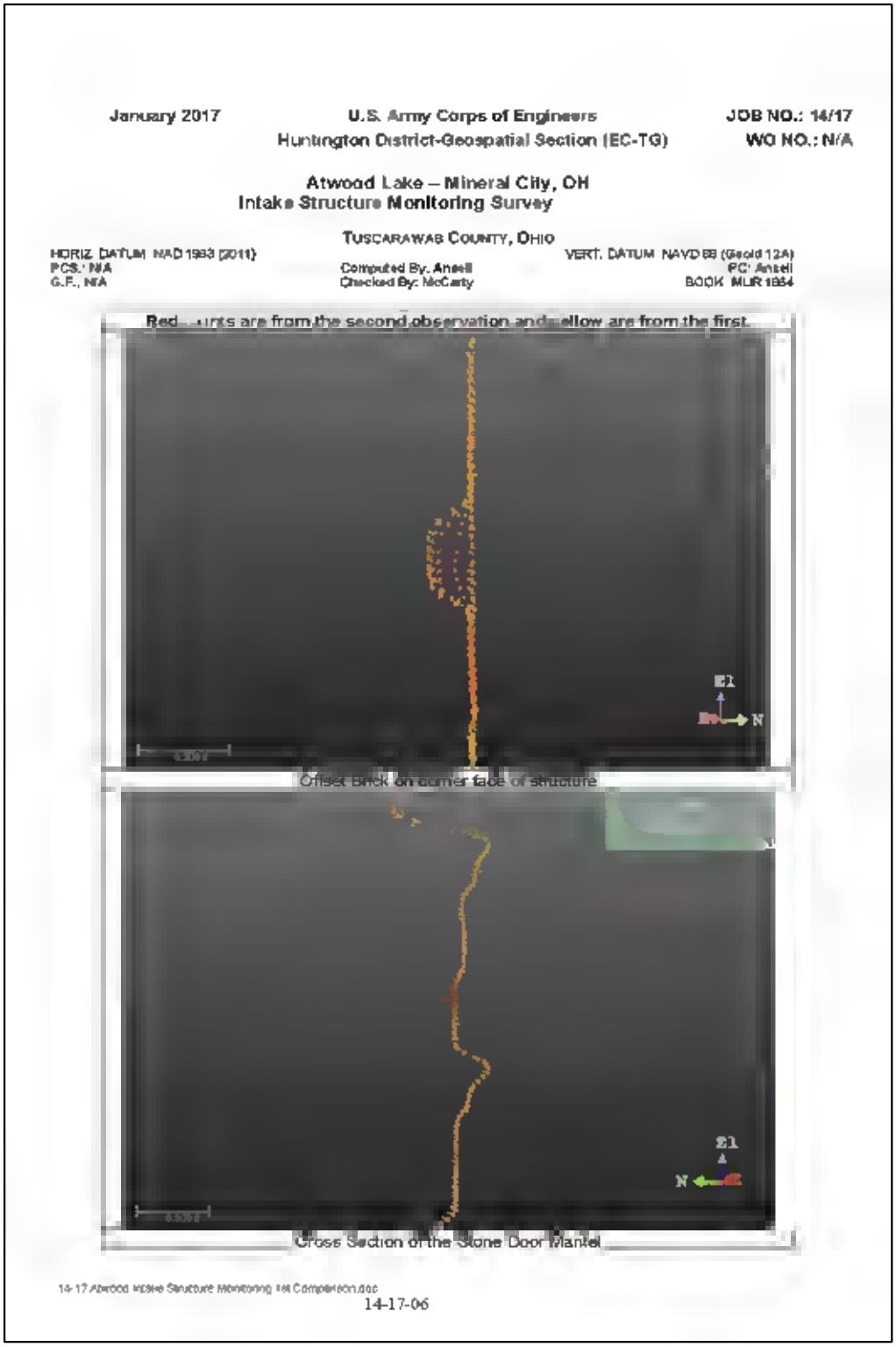
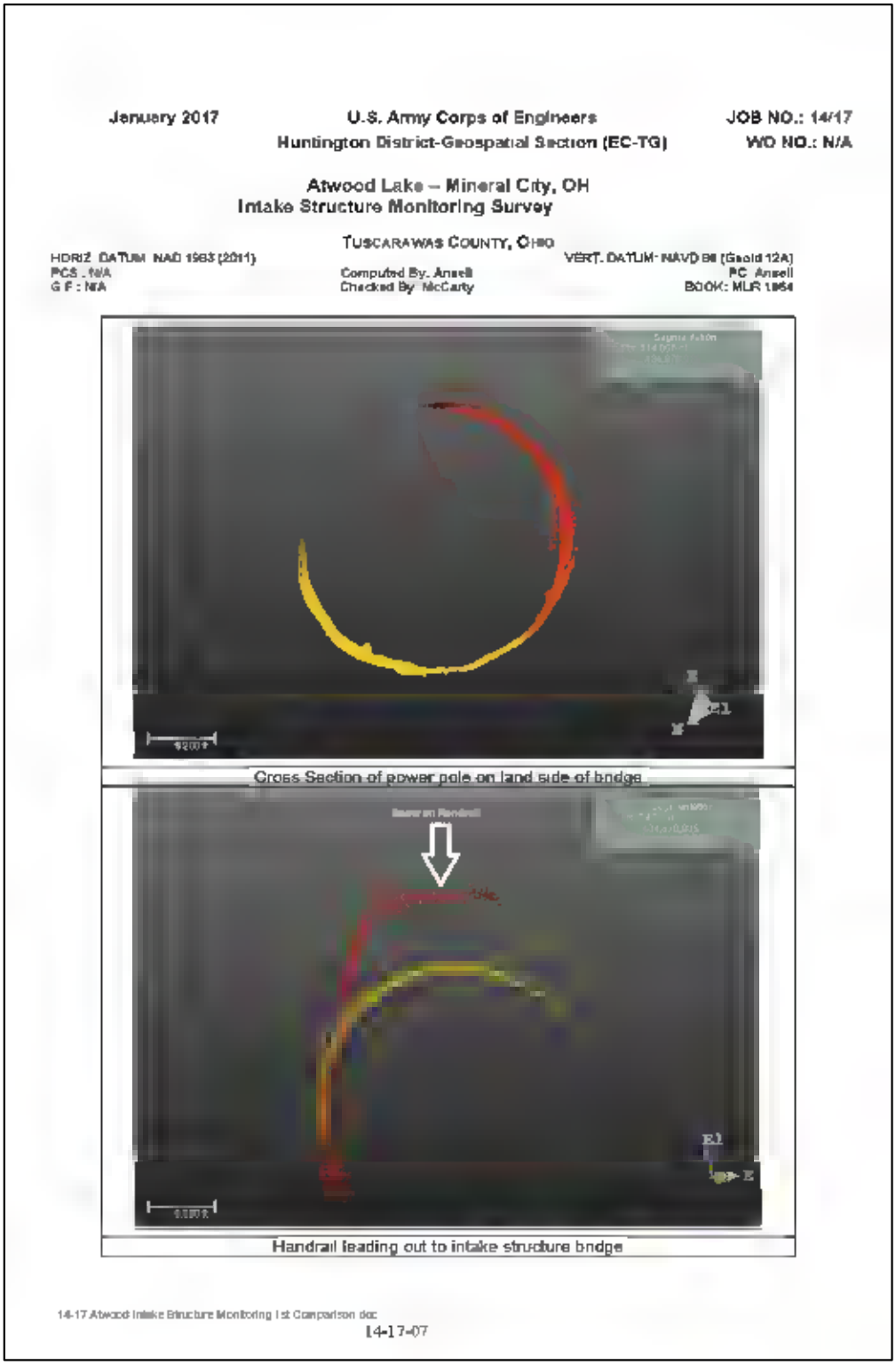


Figure 10-10. Sample report, scan comparisons.


January 2017 U.S. Army Corps of Engineers JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) WO NO.: N/A

Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011)
PCS.: N/A
G.F.: N/A

Computed By: Ansell
Checked By: McCarty

VERT. DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PC: Ansell
BOOK: MLR 1864

Cross Section of power pole on land side of bridge

Handrail leading out to intake structure bridge

14-17 Atwood Intake Structure Monitoring 1st Comparison.doc
14-17-07

Figure 10-11. Sample report, scan comparisons.

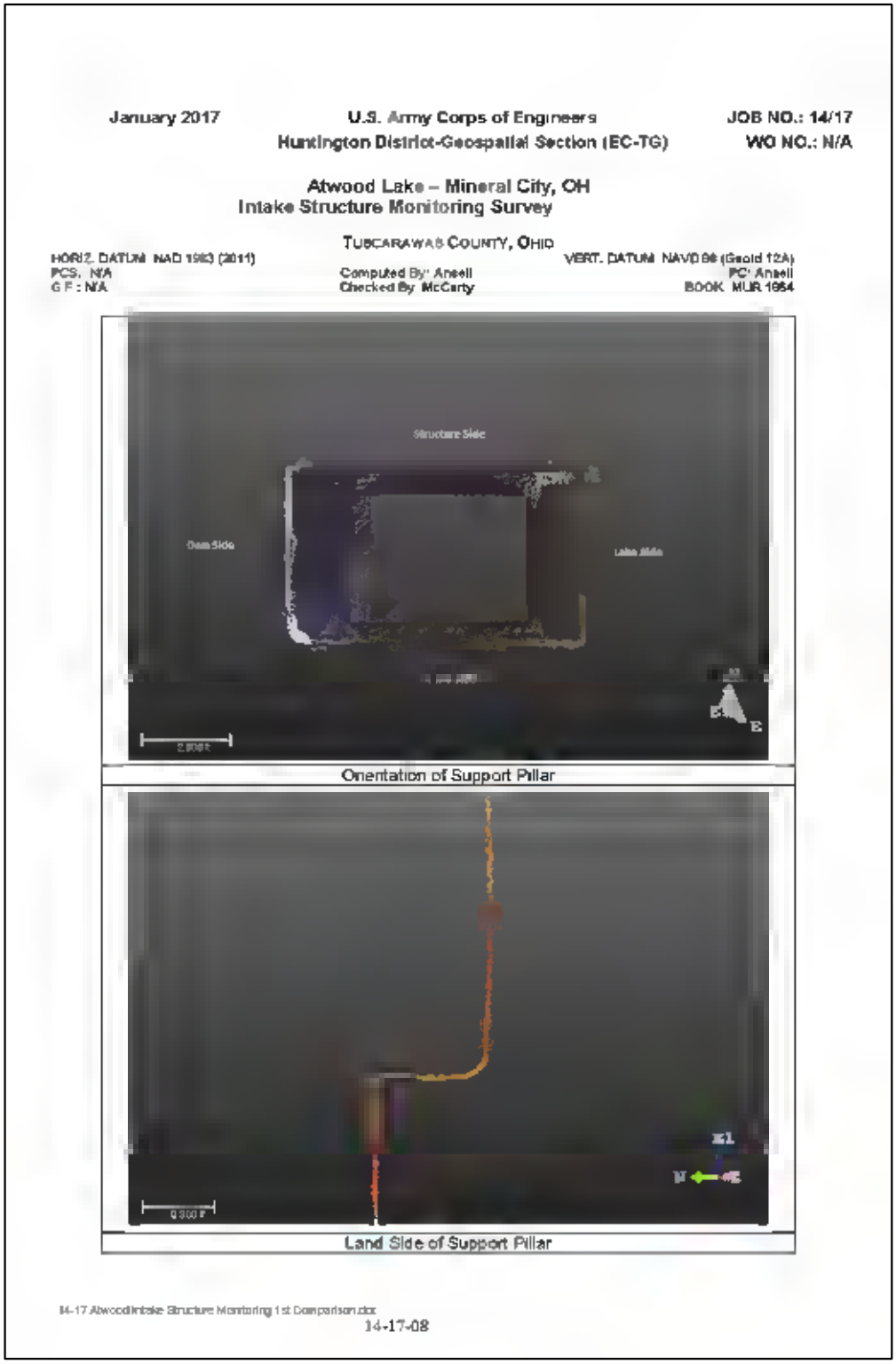


Figure 10-12. Sample report, scan comparisons.

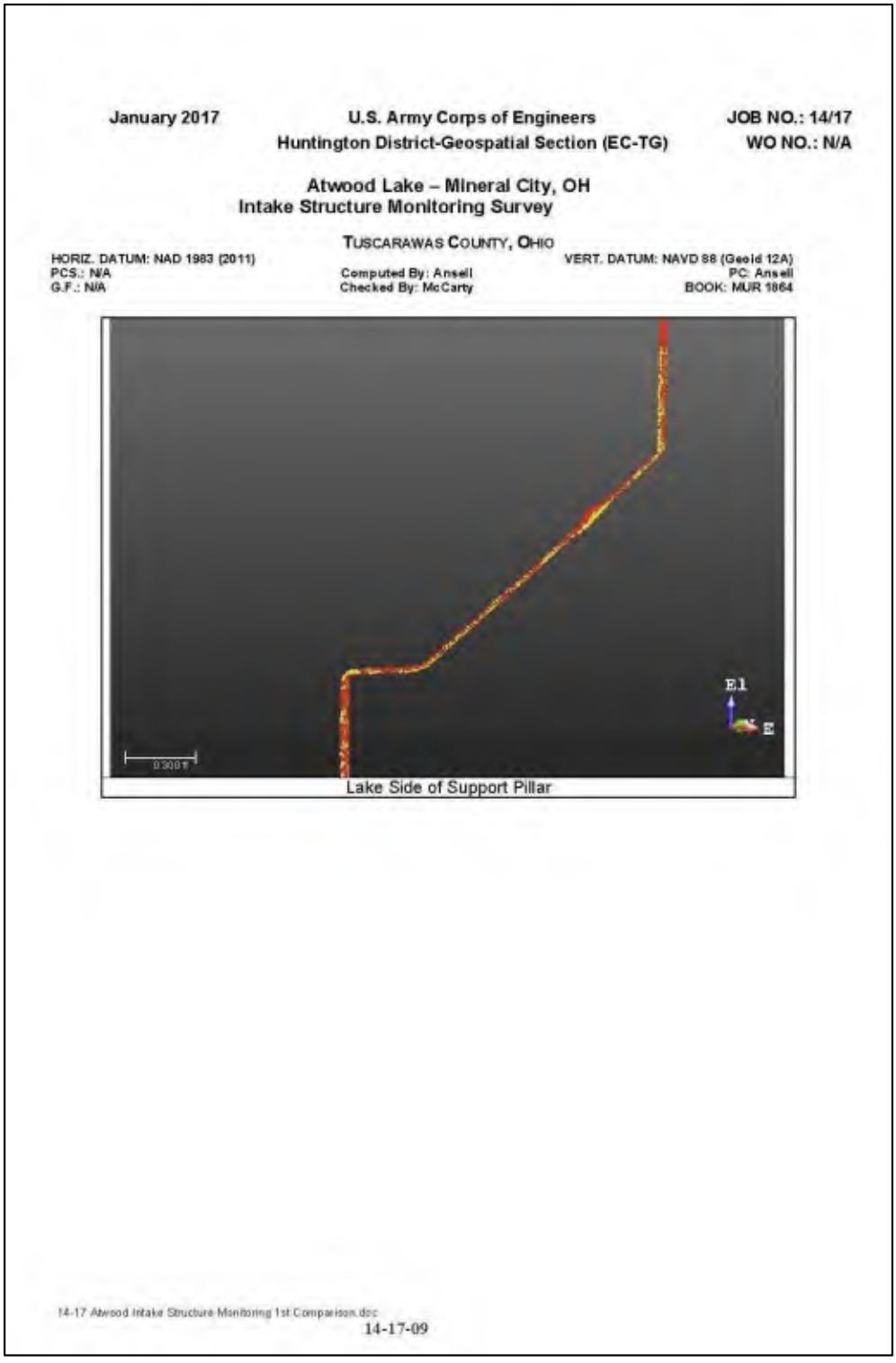


Figure 10-13. Sample report, scan comparisons.

January 2017 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: 14/17
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

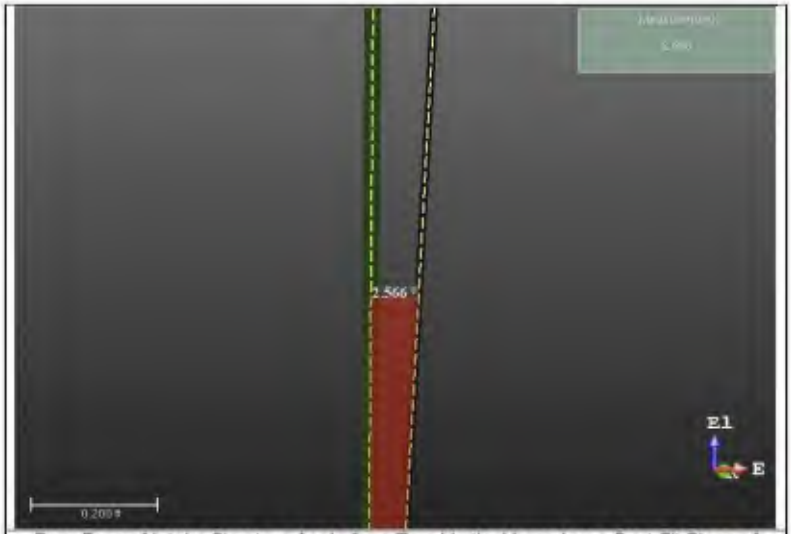
Atwood Lake – Mineral City, OH
Intake Structure Monitoring Survey

TUSCARAWAS COUNTY, OHIO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 1983 (2011)
PCS.: N/A
G.F.: N/A

Computed By: Ansell
Checked By: McCarty

VERT. DATUM: NAVD 88 (Geoid 12A)
PC: Ansell
BOOK: MUR 1664



Dam Face of Intake Structure Angle from True Vertical based on a Best Fit Plane of Concrete face from first observation

Figure 10-14. Sample report, angle comparisons.

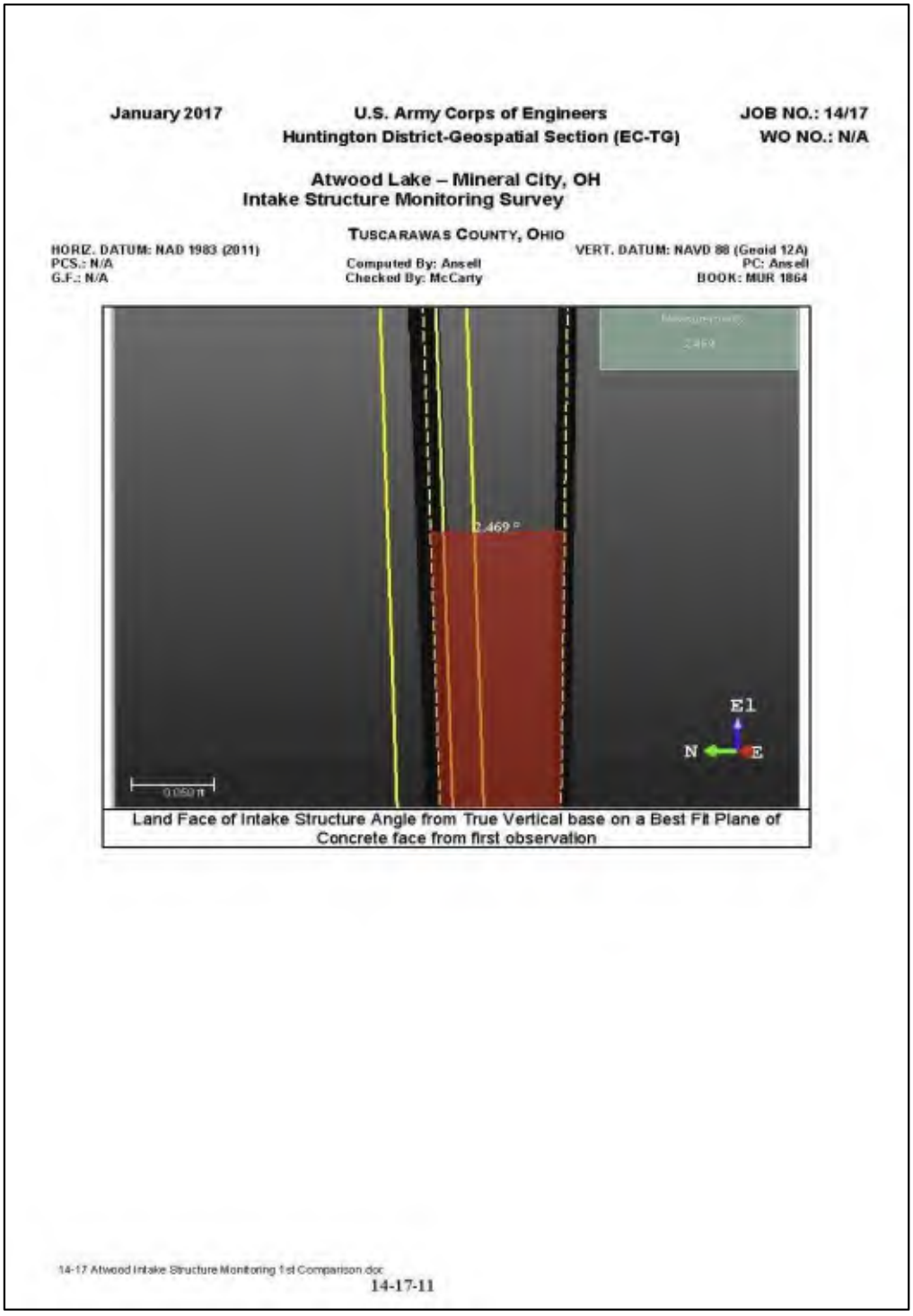


Figure 10-15. Sample report, angle comparisons.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 11

Analysis and Assessment of Results

11-1. General**.** This chapter provides guidance on the interpretation of results from periodic monitoring surveys conducted on hydraulic structures. Structural deformation surveys are used to obtain a set of displacement values for discrete monitoring points distributed across a structure, in relation to fixed reference positions located in stable areas outside the zone of deformation. Interpretation of structural behavior from displacement data includes geometrical analysis of deformation, describing the structure's current position, and change in position, indicating historical movement trends occurring over time, and describing potential effects on the condition of the structure by physical interpretation of movements through deformation modeling.

a. Concept of the integrated analysis. Even the most precise monitoring surveys will not fully serve their purpose if they are not properly evaluated and utilized in a global integrated analysis. The analysis of deformation surveys includes:

-Geometrical Analysis: describes the geometrical status of the deformable body, its change in shape and dimensions, as well as rigid body movements (translations and rotations) of the whole deformable body with respect to a stable reference frame, or of a block of the body with respect to other blocks, and

-Physical Interpretation: which consists of:

Stochastic Interpretation: a statistical (stochastic) method that analyzes (through a regression analysis) the correlations between observed deformations and observed loads (external and internal causes producing the deformation), and

Deterministic Interpretation: a method utilizing information on the loads, properties of the materials, and physical laws governing the stress-strain relationship; which describes the state of internal stresses and the relationship between the causative effects (loads) and deformations.

Once the load-deformation relationship is established, the results of the physical interpretation may be used for the development of prediction models. Through a comparison of predicted deformation with the results of the geometrical analysis of the actual deformations, a better understanding of the mechanism of the deformations is achieved. On the other hand, the prediction models supply information on the expected deformation, facilitating the design of the monitoring scheme as well as the selection of the deformation model in the geometrical analysis. Thus, the expression "integrated analysis" means a determination of the deformation by combining all types of measurements, geodetic and geotechnical, even if scattered in time and space, in the simultaneous geometrical analysis of the deformation, comparing it with the prediction models, enhancing the prediction models; which in turn, may be used in enhancing the

monitoring scheme. The process is iteratively repeated until the mechanism of deformation is well understood and any discrepancies between the prediction models and actual deformations are properly explained.

b. Deformation modeling. Recently, the concept of integration has been developed in which the geometrical analysis of deformation and both methods of the physical interpretation are combined into a simultaneous solution for all the parameters to be determined. Implementation of the method still requires further development. The deterministic and statistical modeling of deformations have been used in the analysis of dam deformations, at least in some countries, for many years. As aforementioned, the geometrical analysis has been done so far in a rather primitive way, with geotechnical/structural engineers analyzing separately the geotechnical observation data and surveyors taking care of the geodetic survey observations. The geotechnical analyses have usually resulted only in a graphical display of temporal trends for individual observables and the geodetic analysis would result in a plot of displacements obtained from repeated surveys that may not even be properly adjusted and analyzed for the stability of the reference points. An intensive study by the FIG working group has resulted in the development of proper methods for the analysis of geodetic surveys and has led to the development of the so-called "University of New Brunswick (UNB) Generalized Method" of the geometrical deformation analysis, which can combine any type of observations (geotechnical and geodetic) into one simultaneous analysis.

11-2. Geometrical Analysis**.**

a. Identification of unstable reference points. In most deformation studies, the information on absolute movements of object points with respect to some stable reference points is crucial. One problem that is frequently encountered in practice in the reference networks is the instability of the reference points. This may be caused either by wrong monumentation of the survey markers or by the points being located too close to the deformation zone (wrong assumption in the design about the stability of the surrounding area). Any unstable reference points must be identified first, and before absolute displacements of the object points are calculated. Otherwise, the calculated displacements of the object points and subsequent analysis and interpretation of the deformation of the structure may be significantly distorted. Given a situation where points A, B, C, and D are reference points used to monitor a number of object points on a structure; if point B has moved (but this is not recognized) and it is used with point A to identify the common datum for two survey campaigns, then all the object points and reference points C and D will show significant changes in their coordinates even when, in reality, all but point B are truly stable.

b. Iterative Weighted Similarity Transformation (IWST). A method to detect unstable reference points has been developed, which is based on a special similarity transformation that minimizes the first norm (absolute value) of the observed vector of displacements of the reference points. The IWST approach to stability monitoring can be performed easily for one-dimensional reference networks and by an iterative weighting scheme for multi-dimensional

reference networks until all the components of the displacement vectors (d_i) satisfy the condition:

$$\sum \| d_i \| = \text{minimum} \qquad \text{(Eq 11-1)}$$

In each iterative solution, the weights (p_i) of each displacement are changed to be:

$$p_i = 1 / d_i$$

After the last iteration (convergence), any transformed displacement vectors that exceed their transformed point error ellipses (at 95% probability) are identified as unstable reference points. The displacements obtained from the transformation are, practically, datum independent, i.e., that whatever minimum constraints have been used in the least squares adjustment of the survey campaigns, the display of the transformed displacements will always be the same. Thus, the obtained results represent the actual deformation trend which is used later on in selecting the best fitting deformation model.

c. Stable point analysis. Quality control for reference networks requires analysis of the stability of each reference station, for example by the IIWST.

(1) Data processing setup. Software routines must be coded for automated data processing. The input data for IWST processing consists of the adjusted station coordinates for the reference network (for both the current and previous monitoring survey), and each associated covariance matrix of parameters. Both data sets are available from network adjustment post-processing results. Test statistic critical values, degrees of freedom, and the pooled adjustment variance factor are also required for post-processed statistical assessment.

(2) IWST processing algorithm. The following matrix equation is solved iteratively until the solution converges on a fixed transformation value (e.g., to less than 0.01 mm).

$$(d)' = [I-H (H^T W H)^{-1} H^T W] (d) = [S] (d) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-2)}$$

where

d'	=	transformed displacement vector
d	=	initial displacement vector
I	=	identity matrix
H	=	datum defect matrix
W	=	weight matrix
S	=	$I-H (H^T W H)^{-1} H^T W$

The identity matrix is a matrix with ones along the diagonal and zeroes elsewhere. The datum defect matrix (H) is designed for the particular type of survey datum used. For example, for GPS

surveys, it has a block diagonal structure with a 3 by 3 identity matrix in each block representing the union of datum defects from each survey (i.e., 3D translations only). The weight matrix (W) is a diagonal matrix with the entries equal to the inverse of each coordinate component displacement. The displacement vector contains the displacements between the two surveys for each point. The dimensions of each matrix must be compatible with *n* as the number of stations, for example if (d) is $3n \times 1$, then H, W, and I are $3n \times 3n$. The transformation covariance matrix is initially the sum of each adjustment covariance matrix, where the covariance matrix (Q) is also modified at each iteration by:

$$Q' = S\ Q\ S^T \qquad \text{(Eq 11-3)}$$

with S defined above.

d. Geometrical deformation analysis. In order to be able to use any type of geodetic and geotechnical observations in a simultaneous deformation analysis, the UNB Generalized Method of the geometrical analysis has been developed. The method is applicable to any type of geometrical analysis, both in space and in time, including the detection of unstable reference points and the determination of strain components and relative rigid body motion within a deformable body. It permits using different types of surveying data (conventional, GPS, and geotechnical/structural measurements). It can be applied to any configuration of the monitoring scheme as long as approximate coordinates of all the observation points are known with sufficient accuracy. The approach consists of three basic processes:

-identification of deformation models,
-estimation of deformation parameters, and
-diagnostic checking of the models and final selection of the "best" model.

A brief description of the approach is given below.

(1) Deformation parameters. The change in shape and dimensions of a 3D deformable body is fully described if 6 strain components (3 normal and 3 shearing strains) and 3 differential rotations at every point of the body are determined. These deformation parameters can be calculated from the well-known strain-displacement relations if a displacement function representing the deformation of the object is known. Since deformation surveys involve only discrete points, the displacement function must be approximated through some selected deformation model which fits the observed changes in coordinates (displacements), or any other types of observables, in the statistically best way. The displacement function may be determined, for example, through a polynomial approximation of the displacement field.

(2) Displacement function. A displacement function can be expressed in matrix form in terms of a deformation model B c as:

$$d\ (x,y,z,t\text{-}t_o) = (u,v,w)^T = B\ (x,y,z,t\text{-}t_o)\ c \qquad \text{(Eq 11-4)}$$

where

d	=	displacement of a point (x,y,z) at time t (with respect to a reference time t_o)
u, v, w	=	components of the displacement function in the x,y,z directions, respectively
B	=	deformation matrix with its elements being some selected base functions
c	=	vector of unknown coefficients (deformation parameters)

(3) Deformation models. Examples of typical deformation models (displacement functions) for a two-dimensional analysis are given below.

(a) Single point displacement or a rigid body displacement of a group of points, say, block B with respect to block A. The deformation model is expressed by the following displacement functions:

$$u_A = 0, \qquad v_A = 0$$

$$u_B = a_o, \qquad v_B = b_o$$

where the subscripts represent all the points in the indicated blocks, and a_o and b_o are constants.

(b) Homogeneous strain in the whole body and differential rotation. The deformation model is linear and it may be expressed directly in terms of the strain components (ε_x, ε_y, ε_{xy}) and differential rotation, ω, as:

$$u = \varepsilon_x x + \varepsilon_{xy} y - \omega y$$

$$v = \varepsilon_{xy} x + \varepsilon_y y + \omega x \qquad \text{(Eq 11-5)}$$

(c) A deformable body with one discontinuity, say, between blocks A and B, and with different linear deformations in each block plus a rigid body displacement of B with respect to A. Then the deformation model is written as:

$$u_A = \varepsilon_{xA} x + \varepsilon_{xyA} y - \omega_A y$$

$$v_A = \varepsilon_{xyA} x + \varepsilon_{yA} y + \omega_A x \qquad \text{(Eq 11-6)}$$

and

$$u_B = a_0 + \varepsilon_{x\,B} (x - x_0) + \varepsilon_{xy\,B} (y - y_0) - \omega_B (y - y_0)$$

$$v_B = b_0 + \varepsilon_{xy\,B} (x - x_0) + \varepsilon_{y\,B} (y - y_0) + \omega_B (x - x_0) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-7)}$$

where x_0, y_0 are the coordinates of any point in block B.

(4) Combined models. Usually, the actual deformation model is a combination of the above simple models or, if more complicated, it is expressed by non-linear displacement functions, which require fitting of higher-order polynomials or other suitable functions. If time dependent deformation parameters are sought, then the above deformation models will contain time variables.

(5) Displacement function. A vector δl of changes in any type of observations, for instance, changes in tilts, in distances, or in observed strain, can always be expressed in terms of the displacement function. For example, the relationship between a displacement function and a change *ds* in the distance observed between two points i and j in two monitoring campaigns may be written as:

$$ds_{ij} = [(x_j - x_i) / s] u_j + [(y_j - y_i) / s)] v_j - [(x_j - x_i /s)] u_i - [(y_j - y_i) / s)] v_i \quad \text{(Eq 11-8)}$$

where

u_j v_j
u_i v_i

are components of the displacement function at points:

x_j y_j
x_i y_i

respectively. For example, with a horizontal tiltmeter, the change $d\tau$ of tilt between two survey campaigns may be expressed in terms of the vertical component (w) of the displacement function as:

$$d\tau = (\partial w/\partial x) \sin\alpha + (\partial w/\partial y) \cos\alpha \quad \text{(Eq 11-9)}$$

where

α = the orientation angle of the tiltmeter.

The functional relationships for any other types of observables and displacement functions are written in matrix form as:

$$\delta l = A B_{\delta 1} c \quad \text{(Eq 11-10)}$$

where A is the transformation matrix (design matrix) relating the observations to the displacements of points at which the observations are made, and $B_{\delta 1}$ is constructed from the above matrix B (x, y, z, $t-t_o$) and related to the points included in the observables.

(6) Best-fit deformation models. For redundant observations, the elements of the vector c and their variances and covariances are determined through least-squares approximation, and their statistical significance can be calculated. One tries to find the simplest possible displacement function that would fit to the observations in the statistically best way. The search for the 'best' deformation model (displacement function) is based on either *a priori* knowledge of the expected deformations (for instance from the finite element analysis) or a qualitative analysis of the deformation trend deduced from all the observations taken together. In the case of the observables being the relative displacements obtained from geodetic surveys, the iterative weighted transformation of the displacements gives the best picture of the actual deformation trend helping in the spatial trend analysis. In the case of a series of observations taken over a prolonged period of time, plotting of individual observables versus time helps to establish the deformation trend and the deformation model in the time domain. In the analysis, one has to separate the known deformation trend from the superimposed investigated deformation. For example, to distinguish between the cyclic (seasonal) thermal expansion of a structure with a one-year period of oscillation and a superimposed deformation caused by other effects which are, for instance, linear in time, all the measurements can be analyzed through a least-squares fitting of the cyclic function

$$y = a_1 \cos(\omega t) + a_2 \sin(\omega t) + a_3 t + a_4 + a_5 \delta(t_i) + ..., \qquad \text{(Eq 11-11)}$$

to the observation data, where $\omega = 2\pi/\text{yr}$, and (a_3) is the rate of change of the observation (extension, tilt, inclination, etc.). The amplitude and phase of the sinusoid can be derived from (a_1) and (a_2). The constant (a_4) is the y-intercept and the constants $(a_5, ...)$ are possible slips (discontinuities) in the data series where $\delta(t_i)$ is the Kronecker's symbol which is equal to 1 when $t > t_i$, with t_i being the time of the occurrence of the slip, and is equal to 0 when $t < t_i$.

(7) Deformation modeling procedures. Geometrical deformation analysis using the UNB Generalized Method is done in four steps:

(a) Trend analysis in space and time domains, and the selection of a few alternative deformation models, seem to match the trend and make physical sense.

(b) Least-squares fitting of the model or models into the observation data and statistical testing of the models.

(c) Selection of the 'best' model that has as few coefficients as possible with as high a significance as possible (preferably all the coefficients should be significant at probabilities greater than 95%) and which gives as small a quadratic form of the residuals as possible.

(d) Graphical presentation of the displacement field and the derived strain field.

The results of the geometrical analysis serve as an input into the physical interpretation and into the development of prediction models as discussed above.

11-3. Statistical Modeling.

a. General. The statistical method establishes an empirical model of the load-deformation relationship through regression analysis, which determines the correlations between observed deformations and observed loads (external and internal causes producing the deformation). Using this model, the forecasted deformation can be obtained from the measured causative quantities. A good agreement between the forecasts and the measurements then tell us that the deformable body behaves as in the past. Otherwise, reasons should be found and the model should be refined.

b. Cause-effect model. Interpretation by the statistical method requires a suitable amount of observations, both of causative quantities and of response effects. Let d (t) be the observed deformation of an object point at time t. For a concrete dam, for example, it can usually be decomposed into three components:

$$d(t) = d_H(t) + d_T(t) + d_r(t) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-12)}$$

where $d_H(t)$, $d_T(t)$, $d_r(t)$ are the hydrostatic pressure component, thermal component, and the irreversible component due to the non-elastic behavior of the dam, respectively. The component $d_H(t)$ is a function of water level in the reservoir, and can be modeled by a simple polynomial:

$$d_H(t) = a_0 + a_1 H(t) + a_2 H(t)^2 + \ldots + a_m H(t)^m \qquad \text{(Eq 11-13)}$$

where H (t) is the elevation of the water in the reservoir. The component $d_T(t)$ can be modeled in various ways depending on the information on hand. If some key temperatures $T_i(t)$, for i = 1, 2, ..., k, in the dam are measured, then:

$$d_T(t) = b_1 T_1(t) + b_2 T_2(t) + \ldots + b_k T_k(t) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-14)}$$

If air temperature is used, the response delay of concrete dams to the change in air temperature should be considered. If no temperature is measured, the thermal component can be modeled by a trigonometric function.

c. Elastic deformation. The irreversible component $d_r(t)$ may originate from a non-elastic phenomenon like creep of concrete or creep of rock, etc. Its time-dependent behavior changes from object to object. It may be modeled, for example, with an exponential function. The following function is appropriate for concrete dams:

$$d_r(t) = c_1 t + c_2 \ln(t) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-15)}$$

Coefficients (a_i, b_i, c_i) in the above equations are determined using the least squares regression analysis. The final model suggests the response behavior of the different causative factors and is used for prediction purposes.

d. Plastic deformation. For an earth dam, the thermal effect is negligible and the irreversible component becomes dominant. It should be mentioned that the statistical method for physical interpretation is applicable not only to observed displacements, but also to other monitored quantities, such as stress, pore water pressure, tilt of the foundation, etc. The only difference is that the response function for each causative quantity may change.

11-4. Deterministic Modeling.

a. General. The deterministic method provides information on the expected deformation from information on the acting forces (loads), properties of the materials, and physical laws governing the stress-strain relationship. Deformation of an object will develop if an external force is applied to it. The external forces may be of two kinds: surface force (i.e., forces distributed over the surface of the body) and body forces, which are distributed over the volume of the body such as gravitational forces and thermal stress. The relation between the acting forces and displacements is discussed in many textbooks on mechanics. Let d be the displacement vector at a point and f be the acting force. They are related as:

$$L^T D L d + f = 0 \qquad \text{(Eq 11-16)}$$

where D is the constitutive matrix of the material whose elements are functions of the material properties (e.g., Young's modulus and Poisson's ratio) and L is a differential operator transforming displacement to strain. If initial strain ε_0 and initial stress σ_0 exist, the above equation becomes:

$$L^T D L d + (L^T \sigma_0 - L^T D \sigma_0) + f = 0 \qquad \text{(Eq 11-17)}$$

In principle, when the boundary conditions are given, either in the form of displacements or in the form of acting forces, and the body forces are prescribed, the differential equation can be solved. However, direct solution may be difficult, and numerical methods such as the finite element or boundary element of finite differences methods are used. The finite element method (FEM) is the most commonly used method in structural and geotechnical engineering, particularly in modeling dam deformations.

b. Finite Element Method. The basic concept of the FEM is that the method involves dividing the domain of the problem into a collection of subdomains, with each subdomain represented by a set of element equations to the original problem, followed by systematically recombining all sets of element equations into a global system of equations for the final calculation. The global system of equations has known solution techniques, and can be calculated from the initial values of the original problem to obtain a numerical answer. Numerous FEM software packages are available in the market, ranging significantly in prices depending on their sophistication and adaptability to various types of material behavior. Software packages have been developed for 2D and 3D finite element elastic, visco-elastic, and heat transfer among many other analyses of deformations. FEM has found many practical

applications in dam seepage and deformation analyses, tectonic plate movements, ground subsidence studies, and tunneling deformations. See Appendix C for an example FEM analysis.

c. Deterministic modeling. In the deterministic modeling of dam deformations, the dam and its foundation are subdivided into a finite element mesh. The thermal component (dT) and hydrostatic pressure component (dH) are calculated separately. Assuming some discrete water level in the reservoir, the corresponding displacements of the points of interest are computed. A displacement function with respect to water level is obtained by least squares fitting of a polynomial to the FEM-computed discrete displacements. Then, the displacements at any water level can be computed from the displacement function. In computation of the thermal components, the temperature distribution inside the structure should first be solved. Again, FEM could be used, based on some measured temperatures (boundary conditions). Both the coefficient of thermal diffusivity and the coefficient of expansion of concrete are required. The thermal components for the points of interest are calculated using FEM with computed temperature at each nodal point. The total deformation is the sum of these two components plus possible action of some other forces, for example, swelling of concrete due to alkali aggregate reaction which can also be modeled. FEM is certainly a powerful tool in the deterministic modeling of deformations. One has to remember, however, that the output from the FEM analysis is only as good as the quality of the input and as good as the experience of the operator who must have a good understanding of not only the computer operation but, particularly, good knowledge in the mechanics of the deformable bodies.

11-5. Hybrid Analysis Method.

a. General. Interpretation by statistical methods requires a large amount of observations, both of causative quantities and of response effects. The method is not suitable at the early stage of dam operation when only short sets of observation data are available. Some portions of the thermal and hydrostatic pressure effects may not be separated by the statistical modeling if the changes in temperature and in the elevation of water in the reservoir are strongly correlated. The deterministic method proves very advantageous in these aspects. The deterministic method is of an *a priori* (design) nature. It uses the information on geometric shape and material properties of the deformable body and acting loads to calculate deformations. Due to many uncertainties in deterministic modeling, e.g., imperfect knowledge of the material properties, possibly wrong modeling of the behavior of the material (non-elastic behavior), and approximation in calculations, the computed displacements may depart significantly from observed values d(t). With the discrepancy produced by uncertainties in Young's modulus of elasticity, E, and the thermal coefficient of expansion (α), the deterministic model can be enhanced by combining it with the statistical method, in the form:

$$d(t) + v(t) = x\, d_H(t) + y\, d_T(t) + c_1 t + c_2 \ln(t) \qquad \text{(Eq 11-18)}$$

where v (t) is the residual, $d_H(t)$ and $d_T(t)$ are the hydrostatic and thermal components, respectively, calculated from the deterministic or statistical modeling, and the last two terms take

care of any possible irreversible component. The functional model for the irreversible component may vary and can be changed by examining the residuals. The unknowns (x, y, c_1, and c_2) are estimated from the observations using the least squares estimation. The coefficient x is a function of Young's modulus and y is a function of the thermal expansion coefficient of concrete:

$$x = E_0 / E$$
$$y = \alpha / \alpha_0 \qquad \text{(Eq 11-19)}$$

where E_0 and α_0 are the values used in the deterministic modeling.

b. Material properties. There must be a calibration of the constants of the material properties using the discrepancies between the measured displacements of a point at different epochs and that calculated from FEM. One must be aware, however, that if the real discrepancy comes from other effects than the incorrect values of the constants (e.g., non-elastic behavior), the model may be significantly distorted. A concept of a global integration has been developed, where the geometrical analysis of deformations and both methods of physical interpretation are combined. Using this concept, deformation modeling and understanding of the deformation mechanism can be greatly enhanced.

11-6. Automated Data Management.

a. Advantages and limitations of automation. In the total effort of deformation monitoring, the quality of the analysis of the behavior of the object being monitored depends on the location, frequency, type, and reliability of the data gathered. The data includes any geotechnical observable as well as any conventional geodetic observable (angle, distance, height difference, etc.). Apart from the location and type of instrumentation, the frequency and reliability of the data can be enhanced by employing an "automatic" system of acquisition and processing (including the deformation analysis). A data management system encompasses everything that happens to the data from the instant at which it is sensed to the time of analysis. Under ordinary circumstances, the interval of time between sensing and analysis may extend over several days or more. Under critical conditions, this may have to be nearly instantaneous in order to provide a warning, if necessary. The volume of data may consist of only several items (in the simplest routine investigation) to many hundreds or thousands (in very complex, critical situations, particularly if vibration behavior is of interest). The rate of sampling may be annually, monthly, weekly, daily, hourly, or even more frequently. The amount of human involvement may range from total (a "manual" system) to virtually none (an "automatic" system). Neither extreme is practical. A manual system is labor intensive and liable to errors or blunders and is less flexible in the re-examination of data. An automatic system is attractive, but has some limitations. Although a "data acquisition system" strictly involves the gathering of data, the phrase has been used by many to mean the whole system of data management. Advantages and limitations of an automatic data acquisition system are summarized in the following two lists.

Advantages of an automatic data acquisition system:

-personnel costs for reading instruments and processing data are reduced;
-more frequent readings are possible;
-retrieval of data from remote or inaccessible locations is possible;
-instantaneous transmission of data over long distances is possible;
-increased reading accuracy can be achieved;
-increased flexibility in selecting required data can be provided;
-measurement of rapid fluctuations, pulsations, and vibrations is possible;
-recording errors are fewer and immediately recognizable; and
-data can be stored electronically in a format suitable for direct computer analysis.

Limitations of an automatic system:

-a knowledgeable observer is replaced by hardware;
-an excess of data could be generated, leading to a less than timely response;
-the data may be blindly accepted, possibly leading to a wrong conclusion;
-there could be a high initial cost and, possibly, increased maintenance cost;
-complexity may require an initial stage of debugging;
-specialized personnel may be required for regular field checks and maintenance;
-a reliable and continuous source of power is required; and
-the system may be susceptible to damage by weather or construction activity.

With an appropriate compromise between manual and automatic functions, a properly designed and working system can minimize the effects of the limitations mentioned above. Therefore, the advantages of an automatic ("semi-automatic") system easily outweigh its disadvantages.

b. Automated data system. A data management system with a PC computer or programmed data collector provides for direct connection to (and sometimes control of) instrumentation. The system should accommodate manually recorded data and data directly acquired from instrumentation. The raw data is contained in observation files, archived for security, and is processed or "reduced" (using calibration, test values, etc.) into data files, which are then used by various analysis and display software applications.

(1) Field checks. Automated systems can compare previously measured positions to the currently processed value to determine if their difference is greater than a set tolerance from the most recent value in the data file.

(2) Integrated analysis. Any data or derived data, whether geotechnical or geodetic (repeated in a suitable time series), can be brought together in the integrated deformation analysis of a structure. A time series is analyzed for trends with the separation of seasonal and long-term behavior. The method of least squares fitting provides a full statistical analysis of the trend with the detection of outlying or erroneous data. It is possible to derive a new series from two

original series or to create a series from repeated geodetic campaigns (e.g., tilt derived from leveling). The system can also show several series of data simultaneously, without fitting, to provide a graphical comparison of the series.

(3) Interpretation of results. Geodetic data is treated traditionally in campaigns for adjustment and spatial trend analysis. Once the observations have been repeated a sufficient number of times, they can be treated as a time series. Geotechnical series are treated in a similar manner (e.g., time series analysis, spatial series analysis, and plots). The trend analyses are automated by command files that are set up to control fitting and automated plotting of several series in succession. All of the data can be used together in simultaneous integrated geometrical analyses following the UNB Generalized Method, or several series can be plotted simultaneously without fitting. With both the observation files and the data files as text files, they are accessible through any text editor for manual entry or editing and can put into other software applications.

c. Desirable characteristics of an automated system. Overall, the desirable characteristics of a data management system for deformation surveys includes:

-data integrity (offering checks in the field and later processing),
-data security (automatic archiving and regular data file backup),
-automated acquisition, processing, and analysis,
-compatibility and integration with other observables,
-flexibility in access to the data for possible manual entry and editing,
-data file flexibility (useable by other software),
-flexibility to be modified for additional instrumentation or other forms of analysis,
-on-site immediate access to data or any of the forms of analysis,
-near-real time results of trend or other analyses, and
-testing and calibration is an integral component of the system.

11-7. Scope of Deformation Analysis**.** Over the past 10 years, there has been significant progress in the development of new methods for the geometrical and physical analyses of deformation surveys. FIG has been leading in the developments, particularly in the areas of integrated geometrical analysis of structural deformations and combined integrated analysis. However, due to lack of interdisciplinary cooperation and insufficient exchange of information, FIG developments have not yet been widely adapted in practice. General worldwide use of the geometrical analysis methods is still poor, including even the basic analysis of geodetic monitoring networks. The above comments lead to the following:

-the analysis of deformation surveys should be in the hands of interdisciplinary teams consisting of geotechnical, structural, and surveying engineers specialized in both geometrical and physical analyses; and
-more use should be made of the concepts and developed methodologies for the geometrical integrated analysis and combined deterministic-statistical modeling of deformations.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

CHAPTER 12

Data Presentation and Final Reports

12-1. Reporting Content and Format. All surveying field work and analysis leads to a final presentation of the results. Contained in the final Survey Report are the field notes, supporting analysis, results, and a report of conclusions. Project survey deliverables should include any raw data collected during the field work. The report format should include the following standard components.

a. Title page. The title page should list summary project information such as, the authorized project name, document reference number, date, and reference to the survey.

b. Introduction. This section summarizes the main results in abstract form, and presents an outline of the project report describing the purpose and execution of the survey.

c. Project description. Includes a description of the monitoring network using text, tables, and figures.

(1) Site plan that shows the layout of the structure superimposed with the monitoring network. Figures with plan or cross-sectional views showing the outline of the structure, location of deformation network points, and their names. All reference points shown in the figures will be denoted by one symbol, while all monitoring points will be denoted by a different symbol.

(2) List of approximate coordinates for each network station giving:

-station Name,
-point ID, and
-3D coordinates.

(3) Project features described and indexed in a summary paragraph, including:

-nature and definition of project datum,
-number of stations,
-designated sub-networks,
-date of present survey, and
-list of previous surveys completed.

(4) Monument descriptions as to:

-type of monument,
-recovery information,
-physical condition, and

-reference marks.

d. Equipment. Inventory of equipment used to complete the survey, including:

-identification of each instrument model, and
-serial number.

e. Survey designed. This section describes the features used in the design of surveys, including:

-types of measurements,
-redundancy,
-stations measured, and
-observation weights.

If preanalysis was conducted, a summary of the resulting output files can be substituted.

f. Computations and results. The results section will contain the following components.

(1) A summary list of:

-methods for data reductions,
-calibration values, and
-initial and final measurement values.

(2) A list of the final coordinates for each station along with associated point confidence ellipses.

(3) A list of the calculated position displacements for the most recent prior survey. These results also will be tabulated in digital form independent of the report.

(4) Graphical displays of the network with horizontal and vertical displacements will include point movements plotted as vectors with their associated error bars and/or error ellipses. Statistically significant movements will be flagged. Only displacements between two chosen epochs will be plotted on a given figure. Displacement contours will not be plotted.

(5) Reference network stability analysis showing results of independent monitoring of the reference network stations.

(6) Cumulative displacements will be reported. Final reports will include figures showing 1D cumulative displacements of all points in critical directions versus time. Examples of cumulative displacements include movements in the downstream and vertical directions on the crest of a dam, or movements in the downhill and vertical directions in an earthen dam or levee.

The error bar associated with each displacement will be plotted. Data from all deformation analyses performed on the project will be included. Statistically significant cumulative displacements will be flagged.

g. Conclusions. Comparison of the displacements and displacement accuracy to the expected values for structural movement. Discussion of the overall quality and accuracy of the survey.

h. References. Any additional source material should be referenced. An index to the archived digital data and field notes should be provided.

i. Network adjustment. Adjustment results will be reported as a separate section. The final report will include a tabular summary of each network adjustment including the following information:

-network constraints applied,
-names of points used, or point ID numbers,
-adjusted point coordinates to the nearest 0.1 mm,
-standard deviations of point coordinates to the nearest 0.1 mm,
-dimensions of error bars to the nearest 0.1 mm at the one standard deviation level for 1D network points,
-dimensions of the axes of the error ellipses to the nearest 0.1 mm (one standard deviation),
-orientation angle to the nearest 0.1 degree for 2D network points,
-dimensions of the axes of the error ellipses to the nearest 0.1 mm,
-out-of-plane angles to the nearest 0.1 degree for 3D network point coordinates
-quadratic form of the residuals,
-total redundancy of the network,
-estimated a posteriori variance factor, and
-standardized residuals for each observation.

j. Initial and final surveys. Final reports of calculated displacements will include:

-a summary of coordinate data from both adjustments used to compute final displacements, and
-displacements reported to the nearest 1 mm and associated direction to the nearest 0.1 degree.

12-2. Displacement Data Presentation**.**

a. General. Regular use of engineering illustrations and other visual aids such as, graphs and plots, give an immediate picture of the structure's behavior. It is equally important to have tabulated displacement values, accuracy evaluations, and data quality indicators that support the

reliability and significance of the results. Each single epoch displacement vector should be plotted on a schematic of the structure along with its associated point error ellipse for the base epoch. To enhance clarity, vertical movement components are plotted on a separate elevation view.

b. Data plots. Various types of summary data plots can be used for interpreting the structural displacement time history.

(1) Most recent epoch. For plots of the most recent survey epoch, the displacements are compared to the initial baseline survey (to indicate total net movement). The actual displacements are compared against the maximum amount of expected movement.

(2) Critical areas. Detailed plots can be made for areas that require greater attention, such as structural or foundation interfaces.

(3) Trend plots. Cumulative trends in the coordinate data sets from year to year should be computed to determine if the movement behavior is consistent over time. Displacement velocity and acceleration trends can refine the frequency needed for future surveys.

12-3. Data Management**.**

a. General. The organization and management of historical movement data should be given high priority on deformation monitoring projects because information about the structure has to be kept for a long period of time. This information may also need to be retrieved on short notice in the event of problems with the structure. One strategy for data management is to create a dedicated database file system to archive project survey information.

b. Data management. Database systems can quickly extract and summarize dam status information, and the data can be used to produce graphs, written reports, or specific status summaries on demand. These systems sort and organize large volumes of data for generally any attributes that can be listed in table form. It is also an ideal format to archive raw survey data and to store processed results in a permanent file. The database also simplifies project management tasks by tracking annual progress, setting work priorities and schedules, and recording costs. Standardized dam status record-keeping also enables comparisons of structural performance from projects throughout USACE.

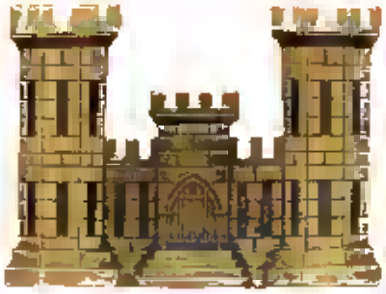
c. New and existing survey control. Newly established or existing monumented control used to provide horizontal and/or vertical positions will be entered into the USACE Survey Monument Archival and Retrieval Tool (U-SMART) as required in ER 1110-1-8170. See ER 1110-1-8170 and EM 1110-1-1002, Survey Markers and Monumentation, for more information on accessing and entering survey control point data into U-SMART.

12-4. Example Report.

a. The following is an example report provided by the Huntington District for a deformation survey performed on the Cochiti Dam in Pena Blanca, New Mexico for the Albuquerque District. The entire report was 125 pages so only samples of each section are provide below.

FINAL
SPA-EC-GG-ORGINAL

US ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS



ALBUQUERQUE DISTRICT

Project: Cochiti Dam– Pena Blanca, New Mexico

Job #: LRH-30/16

W. O. #: Internal

Contract #: N/A

Subject: 2016 Instrumentation Survey

Prepared by:

USACE-Huntington District
Geospatial Section-EC-TG
502 Eighth Street
Huntington, WV 25701

Party Chief. Caldwell
Date: April 2016

US Army Corps
of Engineers
Huntington District

Prepared for:

Matthew Bonner
USACE-Albuquerque District
SPA-EC-GG
4101 Jefferson Plaza NE
Albuquerque, NM 87109

Submittal Date: May 24, 2016

Copies to: SPA-OD-L-CH; SPA-OD-W

Resubmitted.

2016 CDIC Report And Computation Package Instrumentation Data

LRH-30-16-01

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
Pena Blanca, Sandoval County, New Mexico

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

TABLE OF CONTENTS

REPORT OF SURVEY 30-16-03
PROJECT LOG SHEETS 30-16-05
CONDITION REPORT 30-16-05
SURVEY CONTROL 30-16-06
SURVEY CONTROL COMPARISON 30-16-07
G-LINE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-08
A-LINE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-10
B-LINE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-11
C-LINE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-12
D-LINE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-13
SPILLWAY COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-14
SERVICE BRIDGE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-16
OUTLETWORKS WINGWALLS COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-17
OUTLETWORKS PROFILE COORDINATE LISTING/COMPARISON 30-16-18
CONTROL PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-19
G-LINE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-32
A-LINE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-44
B-LINE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-48
C-LINE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-52
D-LINE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-54
SPILLWAY PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-56
SERVICE BRIDGE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-66
OUTLETWORKS WINGWALLS PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-69
OUTLETWORKS PROFILE PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-71
PIEZOMETER COORDINATE LISTING 30-16-73
PIEZOMETER PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-77
OBSERVATION WELL COORDINATE LISTING 30-16-104
OBSERVATION WELL PHOTOGRAPHS 30-16-106

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16

Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam

2016 Instrumentation Survey

PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)

SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell

G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

REPORT OF SURVEY

The purpose of this survey is to complete all the survey field work and computations to complete the 2016 Instrumentation Monitoring of all 280 surface displacement monuments(SDM'S), centerline profile nails, 124 piezometers and 64 observation wells at Cochiti Dam

Prior to commencing work at the site, the field crews were made aware of certain hazards connected with surveying in this area, and reviewed the ACTIVITY HAZARD ANALYSIS compiled for the project.

The fieldwork for the 2016 observation was conducted April 19th – 29th 2016 by Huntington District, Geospatial Section, (CELRH-EC-TG) under the direction of Stephen Caldwell, P.S. Other crew members involved in field work on this project include David Chestnut, S.I., Dan Collier, P.S., Cody Dellinger, S.I., and Kara Hickey, S.I. (SPA).

This observation included a verification of the horizontal and vertical coordinates used in the previous survey, this was completed by creating a survey control network, which included a level loop ran between all found monuments utilizing a Trimble Dini digital level, static GNSS observations and conventional terrestrial surveying methods. All level loops exceeded First Order closure standards except for one loop which met Second Order standards. Control Stations PMD-1, PMD-21, and PMD-22 are located on private tribal lands and was not recovered during the survey, LRH determined these monuments would not be beneficial to this observation.

File	Run	Miles	Closure	Closure Order	Starting Station	Ending Station
COC420C.DAT	1	2.55	0.01880	First Order Class 1	PMD-4	PMD-4
COC420A.DAT	1	2.83	0.02240	First Order Class 2	PMD-4	PMD-4
COC0422-EDIT.DAT	MERGE	8.92	0.08330	Second Order Class 2	PMD-5	100
COC420-2A.DAT	MERGE2	0.92	0.01220	First Order Class 1	CP-530	47-1
	4	0.12	0.00220	First Order Class 1	PMD-OW-1	PMD-OW-1
COC42516.DAT	1	0.15	0.00050	First Order Class 1	CP-520	CH 1
	2	2.50	0.02360	First Order Class 2	G-57	G-8

Comparing the given 2011 elevations and the elevations surveyed by 2016 digital leveling, the given elevations for the upstream control monuments, monuments on the outflow structure and near the Santa Fe River and Spillway portion of the dam do not match the given CEPD Elevations. Please see control comparison table on page 30-16-07. These elevations were verified by independent static GNSS observations. USACE-LRH resolved to hold the elevations derived from our 2016 digital leveling as it compared closely with the elevations produced from the 2016 static GNSS methods. As a result the vertical comparison on the G, A, D, Spillway, Service Bridge, and the Outletworks profile do not directly compare to the 2011 Instrumentation.

The conduit was not surveyed on this instrumentation, awaiting approval of the confined space plan.

Due to conflicting data in the field the Centerline profile was not completed this survey. Kara Hickey surveyed the three (3) different versions of centerline nails for the SPA district to be able to better understand which points belong to the true original centerline or if any of the found nails match the said centerline. The Huntington District recommends that SPA use the original construction plans or as-built plans to do a transformation of the centerline with existing control from the legacy datum to the current datum, or SPA can provide as built/construction data and plans to LRH at a later date and LRH can create the centerline.

The 2016 observation included a survey of the surface displacement monuments were located using a Trimble R-10 GNSS rover with observations containing a minimum of 150 epochs, then rotating the rod 180° to remove any bias and a second observation containing a minimum of 150 epochs, with post processing to multiple static base stations on existing control and a Trimble S8 Robotic Total Station for the points on the service bridge using Trimble TSC3 Data collectors with Trimble Access

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16

Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam

2016 Instrumentation Survey

PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)

SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell

G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

Comparison of the horizontal and vertical coordinates was made in NAD 1983 NAVD 1988 Geoid 09 for the 2016 observation to the 2011 observation

This observation also included a survey of existing piezometers around the dam. The piezometers were located with a Trimble S8 Robotic Total Station with a direct and reverse reading on the center top cap. Hand tape measurements were taken to determine the elevation of the nm, riser and ground.

This observation included a survey of the existing observations wells. The observation wells were located with a Trimble R-10 GNSS Rover with an observation containing at least 300 epochs and post processed to multiple base stations

The static GNSS observations collected on PMD-4 and COCHITI monuments was submitted to OPUS-SHARE. PMD-4 was submitted to compare this observation to the historic observation already located in OPUS-SHARE. COCHITI is a first order vertical and horizontal NGS monument and was submitted to help strengthen the geoid in this area

The equipment used to conduct this survey was as follows:

➢ Trimble TSC3 Collector	Serial #1990
➢ Trimble TSC2 Collector	Serial #7720
➢ Trimble S-8 Total Station	Serial #0028
➢ Trimble DiNi Level	Serial #4933, 8982
➢ Trimble 5700	Serial #5396
➢ Trimble 5800	Serial #3780, 6924, 5893
➢ Trimble R-8	Serial #8683, 0568
➢ Trimble R-10	Serial #0060, 5459

All equipment was checked and or calibrated and pegged prior to this survey

THE US FOOT IS THE UNIT OF MEASURE FOR THIS PACKAGE.

ALL VERTICAL DATA IS TIED TO THE NAVD 88 ELEVATIONS (Geoid09), HOLDING THE GIVEN ELEVATION OF PMD-4

ALL HORIZONTAL DATA IS REPORTED IN THE CENTRAL ZONE OF THE NEW MEXICO STATE PLANE COORDINATE SYSTEM NAD 1983, HOLDING THE GIVEN COORDINATES OF PMD-2, PMD-3, PMD-4, AND PMD-20.

We have included the following on a Data-DVD

A. Report of Survey & Computation Package (MS-WORD and PDF format).
B. Photos (ZIP File)
C. Level Report
D. Level Adjustment Report
E. GPS Control Network Adjustment
F. PDF of Maps
G. PDF of Fieldbooks
H. Various MS-EXCEL FILES
I. Shapefiles with metadata

This report, computation package and inclusions are submitted for your review and records.

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

PROJECT LOG SHEET

FIELD BOOK

Horizontal/Vertical. . . . . SPA-1 & SPA-2

CONDITION REPORT

G-1AB – Concrete broke away from rebar in multiple pieces. This monument has been hit by heavy equipment. The comparison to the previous observation shows a horizontal movement of 0.181'

G-1D - Concrete broke away from rebar in multiple pieces

G-4D – Concrete has large cracks

Some G Line (centerline monuments) are missing top cover caps.

Observation wells 5-3, 6-5 and 7-1A are damaged/bent.

Photographs are included of all surveyed items in this package.

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

FINAL 2016 COCHITI DAM SURVEY CONTROL NAD 1983 NAVD 1988 Geoid 09				
STATION	NORTHING	EASTING	ELEV.	DESC.
COCHITI	1688091.745	1617558.739	5535.499	BR DISK
PMD-OW-1	1680000.083	1619217.432	5273.934	DISK
PMD-OW-2	1680003.434	1619287.301	5273.918	DISK
PMD-2	1686993.958	1616109.263	5413.327	CONC MON
PMD-3	1683730.578	1617133.791	5322.777	CONC MON
PMD-4	1683460.905	1617284.682	5314.546	CONC MON
PMD-5	1678729.607	1619932.883	5372.411	CONC MON
PMD-6	1678524.985	1620047.376	5372.500	CONC MON
PMD-7	1679558.296	1621496.590	5382.762	CONC MON
PMD-7B	1682829.616	1619048.074	5352.995	CONC MON
PMD-8	1678694.613	1622143.553	5427.713	CONC MON
PMD-9A	1677766.057	1622303.713	5406.421	CONC MON
PMD-10A	1675731.735	1624077.437	5453.236	CONC MON
PMD-11	1677169.960	1621231.055	5369.799	CONC MON
PMD-12	1675884.255	1622352.407	5434.471	CONC MON
PMD-13	1675601.243	1622968.781	5434.082	CONC MON
PMD-14	1675412.381	1622752.239	5422.192	CONC MON
PMD-15	1669902.955	1627461.902	5408.282	CONC MON
PMD-16	1670047.918	1627298.153	5406.617	CONC MON
PMD-17	1667443.946	1625415.444	5388.746	CONC MON
PMD-18	1667642.746	1625190.851	5382.052	CONC MON
PMD-20	1665429.750	1624433.381	5485.189	CONC MON
PMD-23	1675851.066	1622345.762	5435.152	CONC MON
ADDITIONAL CONTROL POINTS RECOVERED (ACCURACY LIMITED TO DIGITS SHOWN)				
BELOW LOCKOUT	1687751.5	1617103.2	5454.002	CONC MON
SB RP 2	1679122.0	1618942.7	5348.X	CONC MON
RP170 STA 166X00	1673747.7	1625143.1	5445.995	CONC MON
RP270 STA 166X00	1673430.9	1625465.3	5448.997	CONC MON
SPILLWAY EASTWING	1667244.7	1624743.9	5398.X	DISK
SPILLWAY WESTWING	1666727.1	1624271.7	5409.207	DISK
47-1	1665273.7	1624658.6	5461.643	CONC MON
CP530	1666861.8	1625506.8	5462.375	IPC
CP 319	1666663.1	1625514.0	5462.292	IPC
CONC PILE MON	1678212.8	1620536.8	5378.X	CONC MON
COD BNDY NO RP24	1678771.4	1619980.7	5372.659	CONC MON
COD BNDY NO 2	1666854.9	1623707.2	5475.X	CONC MON
CP520	1679685.4	1620227.9	5462.402	IPC
CI 1	1679687.9	1620229.7	5462.165	80p NAIL

30-16-06

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16

Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam

2016 Instrumentation Survey

PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)

SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell

G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK. As-Noted

OUTLET WORKS WING WALLS
Comparison 2016 minus 2011 obs.

	Given 2011 Observation	Final 2016 Observation			Comparison 2016 Minus 2011
	Elev.	Northing	Easting	Elev.	Δ Elev
STB-1		1680124	1618909	5239.956	
STB-2		1680083	1618949	5240.005	
STB-3		1679988	1618895	5239.990	
STB-4		1680020	1618943	5240.014	
STB-5		1680065	1619120	5279.952	
STB-6		1680003	1619114	5279.984	

****NORTHING AND EASTING LISTED TO THE NEAREST FOOT FOR MAPPING PURPOSES ONLY******

OUTLET WORKS WING WALL MARKS ARE NAILS WITH STAMPED WASHER

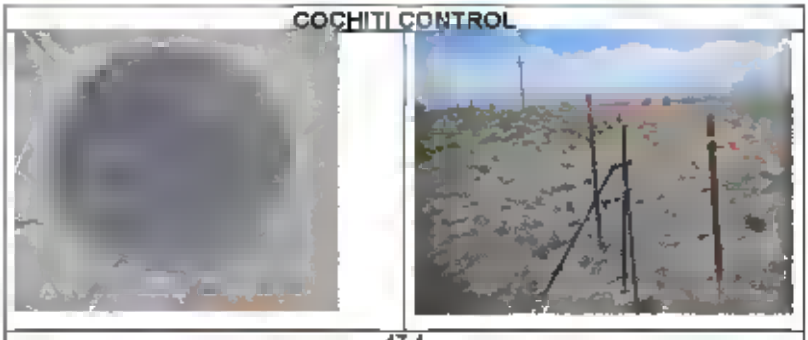
SPA could not provide the 2011 elevations on these points at the time of this submittal

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

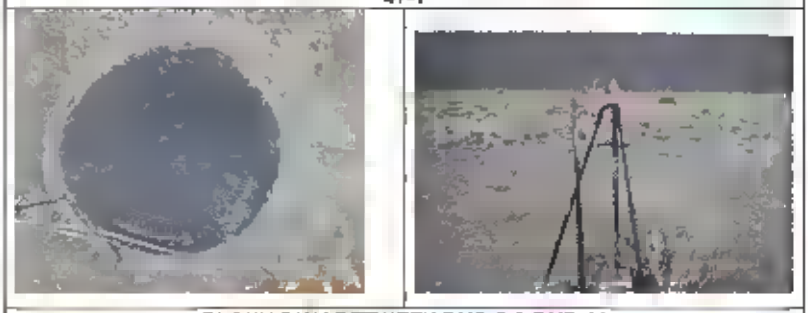
Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

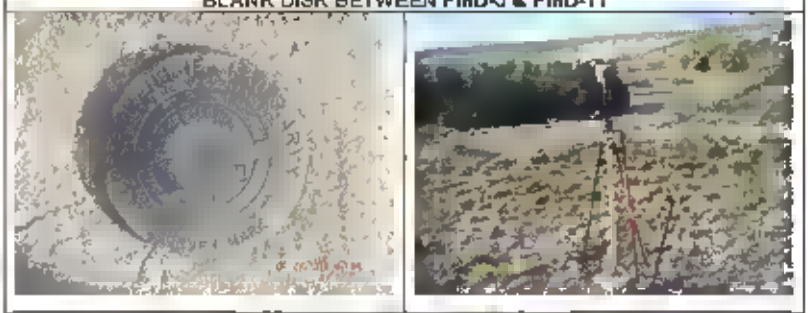
COCHITI CONTROL



47-1



BLANK DISK BETWEEN PMD-5 & PMD-11



BLANK DISK BELOW OVERLOOK

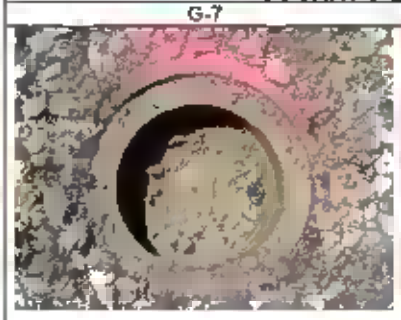
April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

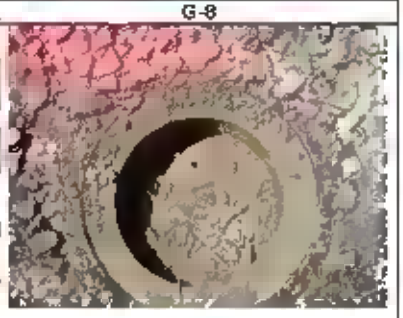
HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

COCHITI G LINE PHOTOS

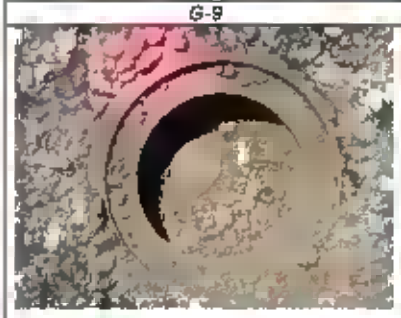
G-7



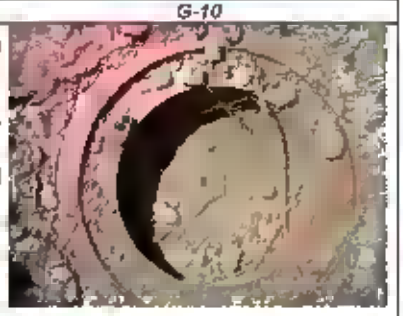
G-8



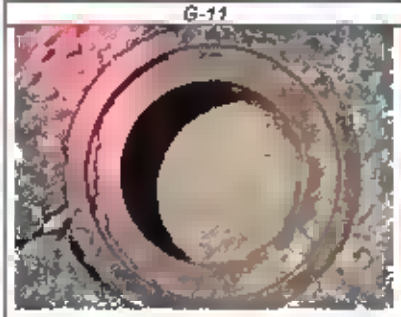
G-9



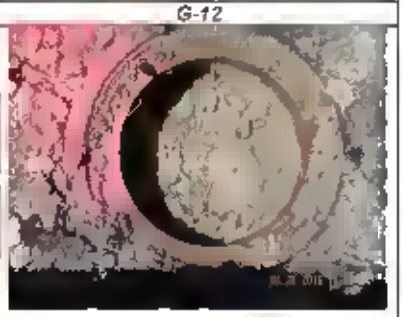
G-10



G-11



G-12



G-13

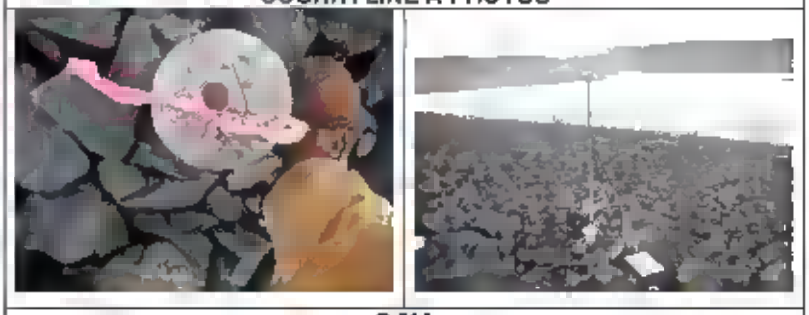
G-14

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

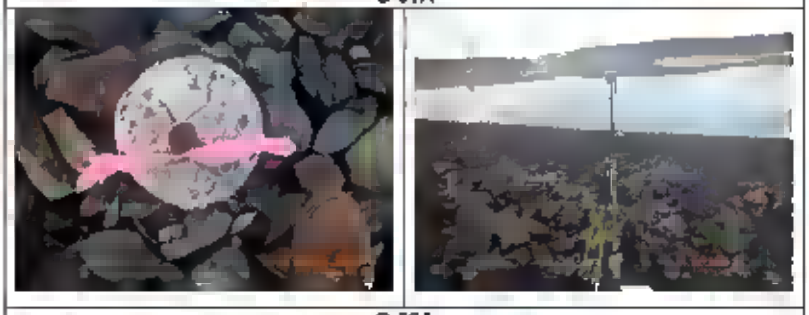
Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.. N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

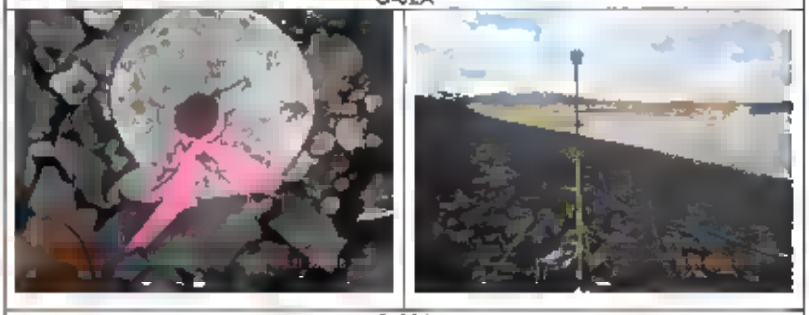
COCHITI LINE A PHOTOS



G-01A



G-02A



G-03A

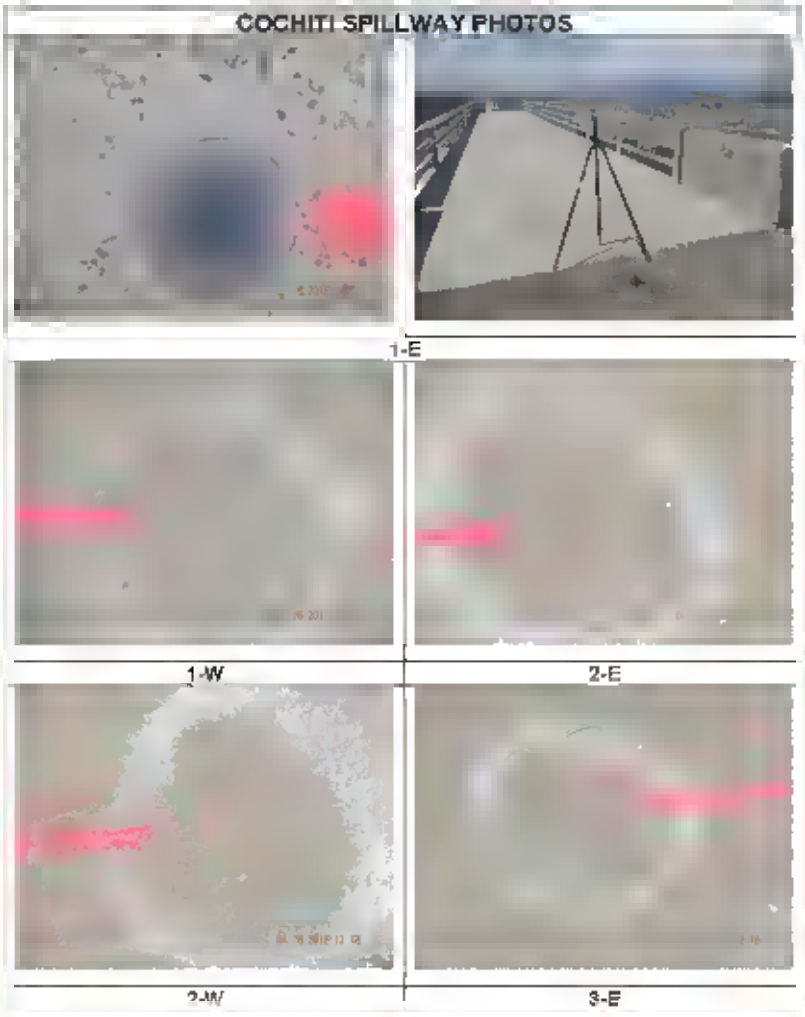
30-16-44

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

COCHITI SPILLWAY PHOTOS



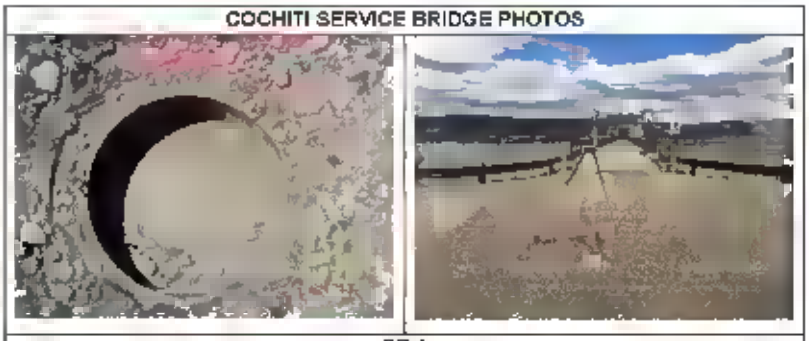
30-16-56

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.. LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

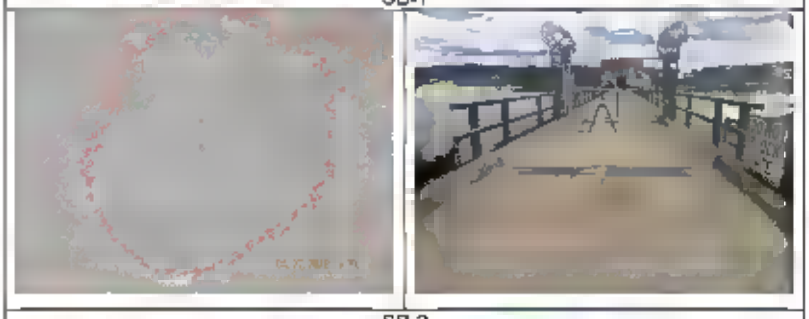
Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

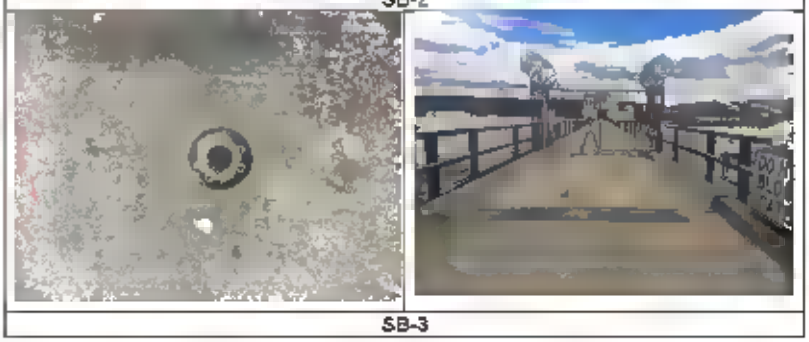
COCHITI SERVICE BRIDGE PHOTOS



SB-1



SB-2



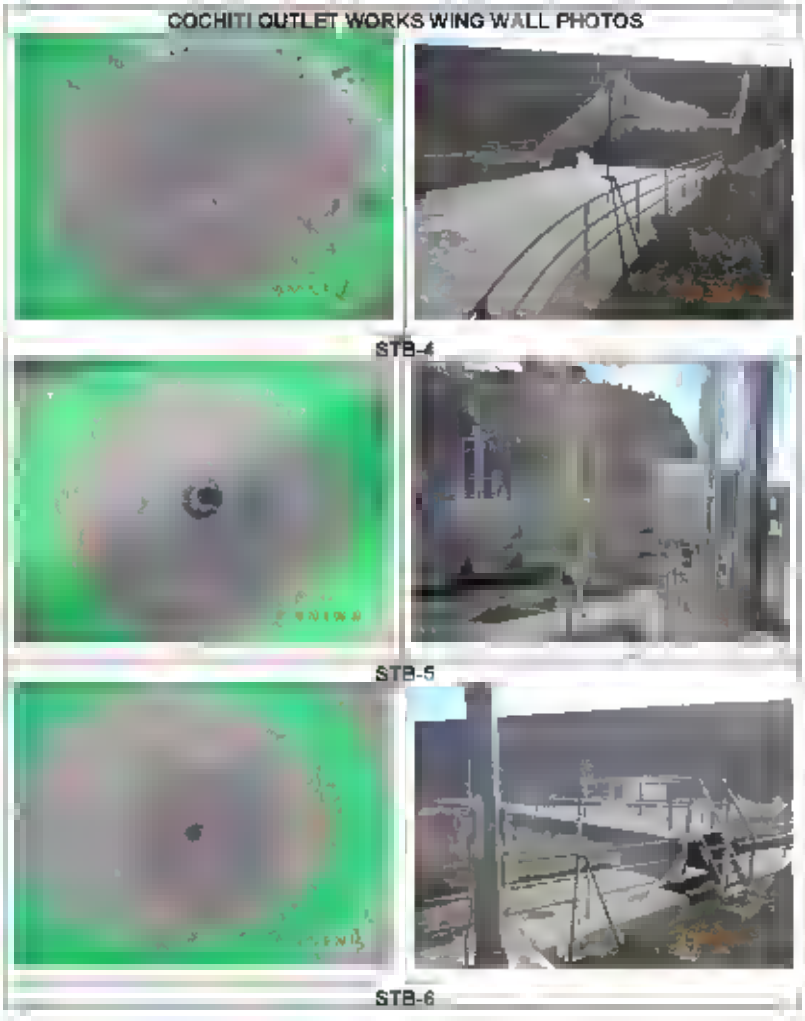
SB-3

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

COCHITI OUTLET WORKS WING WALL PHOTOS



STB-4

STB-5

STB-6

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16

Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.: N/A

Cochiti Dam

2016 Instrumentation Survey

PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)

SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell

G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

COCHITI PIEZOMETER DATA

NAME	NORTHING	EASTING	ELEV CAP	ELEV RIM	ELEV INNER PIPE	ELEV GROUND
EP-1	1679908 61	1620395 35	5383.99	5382 89	5382.91	5380 02
EP-2	1679923 89	1620220 27	5433.55	5432 30	5432.59	5429 00
EP-3	1679940 04	1620035 57	5498.10	5484 83	5485.12	5480 67
EP-4	1679953 92	1619908 97	5437 18	5435 85	5436 37	5433 97
EP-5	1679967 54	1619794 55	5406.18	5404 89	5405.03	5402 87
EP-6	1679976 58	1619674 04	5374.61	5373 40	5374 08	5369 48
EP-F1-1	1682630 56	1618471 93	5459 53	5458 25	5458.98	5455 12
EP-J1-1	1681586 20	1619046 79	5455.65	5454 38	5454.86	5451 30
EP-L1-1	1680953 33	1619393 52	5451 64	5450 42	5450 87	5448 52
EP-P1-1	1676810 25	1622113 90	5383 82	5382 73	5382 93	5380 25
EP-Q1-1	1676566 25	1622359 12	5399 94	5398 69	5399.29	5397 26
EPW-C1-1	1683363 46	1617852 18	5393.18	5393 16	N/A	5391 26
EPW-C2-1	1683266 33	1617678 64	5328 21	5328 19	N/A	5325 87
EPW-D1-1	1683430 55	1618023 08	5460 25	5460 23	N/A	5456 38
EPW-D1-2	1683440 84	1618030 78	5463.25	5463 23	N/A	5458 80
EPW-D2-1	1683193 90	1617950 53	5391 64	5391 62	N/A	5386 65
EPW-D3-1	1682915 03	1617872 79	5328.66	5328 66	N/A	5323 20
EPW-E1-1	1683170 54	1618175 20	5461 32	5461 30	N/A	5457 22
EPW-E1-2	1683181 11	1618172 63	5463.15	5463 13	N/A	5457 95
EPW-E2-1	1682934 96	1618096 43	5393.34	5393 32	N/A	5387 63
EPW-E3-1	1682644 51	1618016 85	5324.47	5324 45	N/A	5321 54
EPW-F1-1	1682435 27	1618125 59	5322 06	5322 04	N/A	5319 55
EPW-U1-1	1667227 35	1625958 58	5468.32	5468 30	N/A	5464 30
ESG-5	1676964 96	1622362 32	5483.47	5482 87	N/A	5480 48
FP-B1-1	1684293 46	1617765 76	5436 77	5435 94	5436.45	5432 95
FP-F1-1	1682701 62	1618598 36	5457 20	5456 92	5456.63	5451 74
FP-F1-2	1682701 62	1618598 36	5457 20	5456 92	5456.47	5451 74
FP-F2-1	1682630 56	1618471 93	5459 53	5458 25	5458 85	5455 12
FP-F2-2	1682630 56	1618471 93	5459 53	5458 25	5458 68	5455 12
FP-F3-1	1682558 91	1618342 28	5406 39	5405 14	5405.38	5402 77
FP-FA1-1	1683137 15	1618352 94	5456.16	5454 90	5455.63	5452 68
FP-FA2-1	1683059 56	1618223 87	5456 27	5454 49	5455 05	5452 84
FP-FB1-1	1682351 84	1618788 81	5459 79	5458 62	5458 91	5454 18
FP-FB2-1	1682284 34	1618672 97	5460.99	5459 73	5460.29	5456 77
FP-G1-1	1682732 35	1619076 75	5352.80	5351 75	5352.62	5350 12
FP-H1-1	1682266 34	1619269 79	5349 32	5348 29	5348.77	5346 70
FP-J1-1	1681685.71	1619211 04	5444 40	5443 12	5443 37	5440 12
FP-J2-1	1681586 20	1619046 79	5455 65	5454 38	5454.76	5451 30
FP-L1-1	1681041 42	1619531 91	5455.90	5454 67	5455.32	5450 27
FP-L2-1	1680953 33	1619393 52	5451 64	5450 42	5451 25	5448 52
FP-L3-1	1680882 11	1619268 88	5401 75	5400 47	5401 11	5398 32
FP-P1-1	1676896 46	1622420 55	5485 32	5484 05	5484 44	5481 33
FP-P2-1	1677071 04	1622638 41	5398 84	5397 62	5398.42	5395 96
FP-P3-1	1677372 87	1622879 02	5365.51	5364 24	5365.05	5362 57
FP-P4-1	1676610 25	1622113 90	5383 82	5382 73	5382.68	5380 25

30-16 COC Report And Compendium Package -Instrumentation.Docx

30-16-73

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.. LRH-30/16

Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

Cochiti Dam

2016 Instrumentation Survey

PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

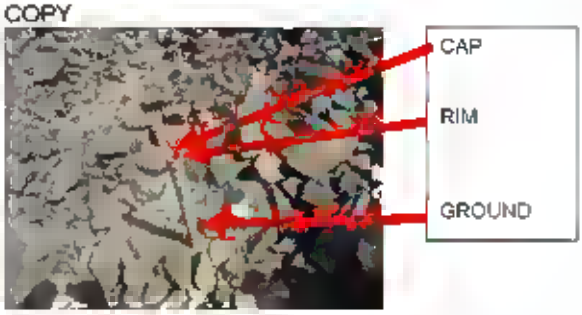
HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)

SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell

G F.. N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

EXAMPLE OF ELEVATION LOCATIONS ON PIEZOMETERS

COPY

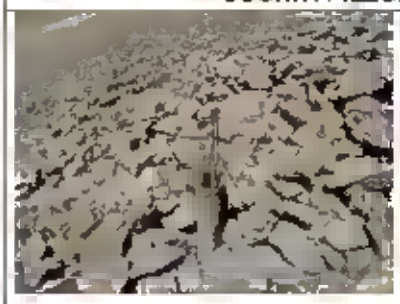


April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

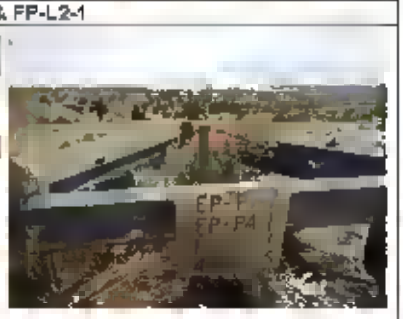
Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS.: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.. N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

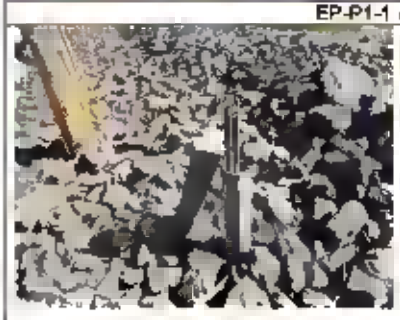
COCHITI PIEZOMETER PHOTOS

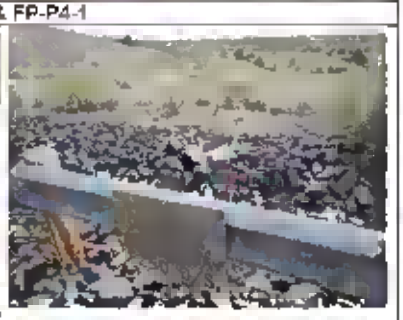


EP-L1-1 & FP-L2-1



EP-P1-1 & FP-P4-1





EP-Q1-1 & FP-Q4-1

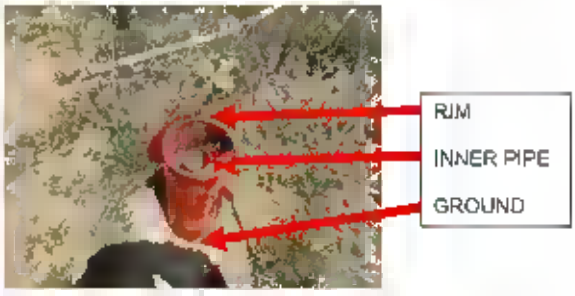
30-16-80

April 2016 | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.. LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PEÑA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ DATUM: NAD 83 | VERT DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone | Computed By: Caldwell | PC: Caldwell
G.F.: N/A | Checked By: McCarty | BOOK: As-Noted

Name	Northing	Easting	ELEV. TOP RIM/CAP	ELEV INNER PIPE	ELEV GROUND
OB E-11	1674936.95	1615987.98	5228.92	N/A	5227.84
OB W-1	1675605.02	1612464.30	5224.23	N/A	5223.05
OB W-2	1676320.61	1612928.32	5225.75	N/A	5225.25
OB W-3	1676627.73	1614351.83	5231.01	N/A	5229.79
OB W-4	1677056.48	1613929.18	5228.37	N/A	5227.24
OB W-5	1677743.01	1614053.20	5230.44	N/A	5228.09
OB W-6	1678428.21	1614240.16	5231.20	N/A	5230.98
OB W-7	1679138.38	1614436.42	5232.16	N/A	5231.53
OB W-7B	1679258.96	1614009.88	5233.22	N/A	5231.87
OB W-8	1679804.41	1614624.99	5233.37	N/A	5232.84
OB W-9	1681170.56	1615231.40	5237.43	N/A	5236.83
OB W-10	1681545.06	1614541.13	5240.18	N/A	5239.36
OB W-11	1681572.64	1616110.72	5238.86	N/A	5236.89
OB W-12	1681808.15	1616169.02	5239.35	N/A	5238.01
OB W-15	1681131.35	1614523.81	5238.61	N/A	5237.41
OB W-16	1680477.26	1614790.88	5235.00	N/A	5234.83



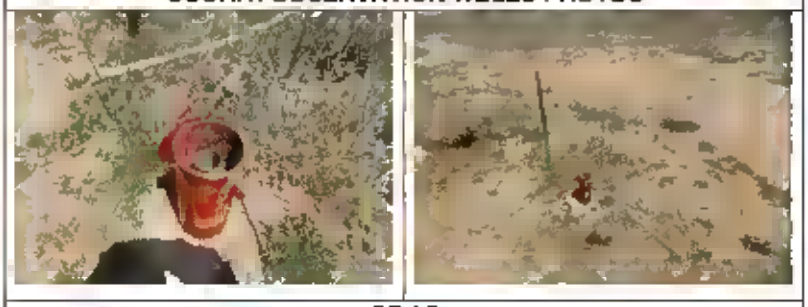
30-16-105

April 2016 | U S Army Corps of Engineers | JOB NO.: LRH-30/16
Huntington District-Geospatial Section (EC-TG) | WO NO.. N/A

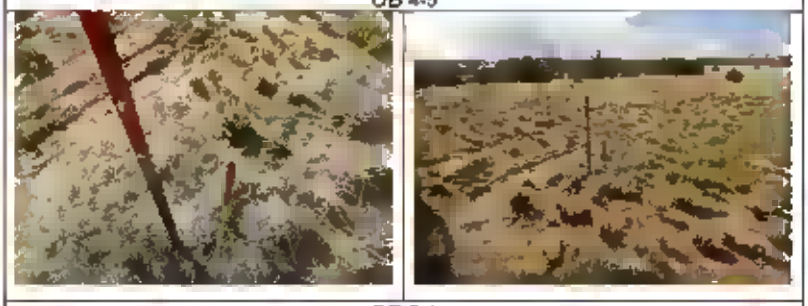
Cochiti Dam
2016 Instrumentation Survey
PENA BLANCA, SANDOVAL COUNTY, NEW MEXICO

HORIZ. DATUM: NAD 83
SPCS: New Mexico Central Zone
G.F.: N/A
Computed By: Caldwell
Checked By: McCarty
VERT. DATUM: NAVD88 (Geoid 09)
PC: Caldwell
BOOK: As-Noted

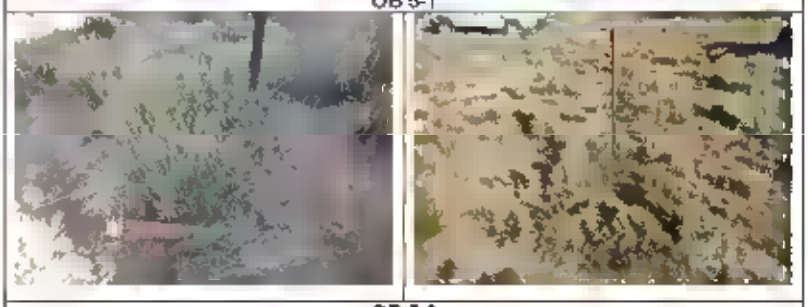
COCHITI OBSERVATION WELLS PHOTOS



OB 4-5



OB 5-1



OB 5-3

30-16-107

APPENDIX A

References

A-1. Required Publications.

PL 92-367
United States Code (1972) *National Dam Inspection Act*.
http://uscode.house.gov/statutes/pl/92/367.pdf

ER 1110-2-103
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1981) *Strong-Motion Instruments for Recording Earthquake Motions on Dams*. ER 1110-2-103. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerRegulations/ER_1110-2-103.pdf?ver=2013-09-08-233412-823

ER 1110-2-1150
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1999) *Engineering and Design for Civil Works Projects*. ER 1110-2-1150. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerRegulations/ER_1110-2-1150.pdf

ER 1110-2-1156
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2014) *Safety of Dams – Policy and Procedures*. ER 1110-2-1156. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerRegulations/ER_1110-2-1156.pdf

ER 1110-2-1806
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2016) *Earthquake Design and Evaluation for Civil Works Projects*. ER 1110-2-1806. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerRegulations/ER_1110-2-1806.pdf

ER 1110-1-8170
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2017) *Policies for Using the USACE Survey Monument Archival and Retrieval Tool (U-SMART) for Project Control and Boundary Monumentation*. ER 1110-1-8170. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerRegulations/ER_1110-1-8170.pdf?ver=2017-05-05-132910-107

EP 1110-2-13
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1996) *Dam Safety Preparedness*. EP 1110-2-13. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
https://planning.erdc.dren.mil/toolbox/library/EPs/EP1110-2-13_28Jun1996.pdf

EM 1110-1-1000
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2015) *Photogrammetric and LiDAR Mapping*. EM 1110-1-1000. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-1-1000.pdf?ver=2016-03-25-080019-613

EM 1110-1-1002
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2012) *Survey Markers and Monumentation*. EM 1110-1-1002. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-1-1002.pdf

EM 1110-1-1003
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1996) *NAVSTAR Global Positioning System Surveying*. EM 1110-1-1003. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-1-1003.pdf?ver=2013-09-04-075011-243

EM 1110-1-1005
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2007) *Control and Topographic Surveying*. EM 1110-1-1005. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-1-1005.pdf?ver=2014-04-01-094204-880

EM 1110-1-1904
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1990) *Settlement Analysis*. EM 1110-1-1904. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-1-1904.pdf?ver=2013-09-04-070854-997

EM 1110-2-1911
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1995) *Construction Control for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams*. EM 1110-2-1911. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-1911.pdf?ver=2013-09-04-161128-287

EM 1110-2-1003
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2004) *Hydrographic Surveying*. EM 1110-2-1003. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-1003.pdf?ver=2014-01-06-155809-307

EM 1110-2-1908
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1995) *Instrumentation of Embankment Dams and Levees*. EM 1110-2-1908. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-1908.pdf

EM 1110-2-2200
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1995) *Gravity Dam Design*. EM 1110-2-2200. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-2200.pdf

EM 1110-2-2300
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (2004) *General Design and Construction Considerations for Earth and Rock-Fill Dams*. EM 1110-2-2300. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-2300.pdf

EM 1110-2-4300
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (1980) *Instrumentation for Concrete Structures*. EM 1110-2-4300. Washington, DC: U.S. Army Corps of Engineers.
http://www.publications.usace.army.mil/Portals/76/Publications/EngineerManuals/EM_1110-2-4300.pdf

USATEC 1996
U.S. Army Topographic Engineering Center (1996) *Handbook for Transformation of Datums, Projections, Grids and Common Coordinate Systems*. TEC-SR-7.
http://www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/a307127.pdf

USATEC 1999
U.S. Army Topographic Engineering Center (1999) *Design and Evaluation of Geodetic Surveys for Deformation Monitoring at the U.S. Army Engineer District, Seattle*.

Federal Geodetic Control Committee 1984
Federal Geodetic Control Committee (1984) *Standards and Specifications for Geodetic Control Networks*. Rockville, MD.
http://maps.gis.co.brown.wi.us/web_documents/LIO/PDF/LION/GeographicFrameworks.pdf

Federal Geodetic Control Committee 1988
Federal Geodetic Control Committee (1988) *Geometric Geodetic Accuracy Standards and Specifications for Using GPS Relative Positioning Techniques*. Rockville, MD. https://www.ngs.noaa.gov/PUBS_LIB/GeomGeod.pdf

National Geodetic Survey 1977
National Geodetic Survey (1977) *Use of Calibration Base Lines*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NGS 10, Rockville, MD. https://www.ngs.noaa.gov/PUBS_LIB/TMNOSNGS10.pdf

National Geodetic Survey 1982
National Geodetic Survey (1982) *Establishment of Calibration Base Lines*. NOAA Technical Memorandum NOS NGS 8, Rockville, MD. https://www.ngs.noaa.gov/CBLINES/pubs/TMNOSNGS8.pdf

National Geodetic Survey 1988
National Geodetic Survey (1988) *Guidelines for Submitting GPS Relative Positioning Data to the National Geodetic Survey*. Rockville, MD.

National Geodetic Survey 1981
NOAA Manual NOS NGS 3 (1981) *Geodetic Leveling*. Rockville, MD. https://www.ngs.noaa.gov/PUBS_LIB/Geodeticleveling_nos_3.pdf

Office of Management and Budget 1990
Office of Management and Budget (1990) *Coordination of Surveying, Mapping, and Related Spatial Data Activities*. Circular No. A-16. Washington, D.C.

Chrzanowski and Ahmed 1971
Chrzanowski, A., and F.A. Ahmed (1971) *Alignment Surveys in a Turbulent Atmosphere Using Laser*. Washington, DC: Proceedings of the American Congress on Surveying and Mapping. 07-12 March, pp. 494-513. https://trid.trb.org/view.aspx?id=93616

Chrzanowski 1974
Chrzanowski, A. (1974) *Precision Alignment Surveys Using Laser*. Proceedings of the XIVth International Congress of Surveyors, Washington, D.C., 07-16 September, 6 pp.

Discol 1978
Discol, W. (Ed.). (1978) *Handbook of Optics*, New York: McGraw Hill.

Rüeger 1990
Rüeger, J.M. (1990) *Electronic Distance Measurement, An Introduction*. Berlin; New York: Springer-Verlag.

Smith 1993
Smith, F. G. (1993) *The Infrared & Electro-Optical Systems Handbook: Atmospheric Propagation of Radiation, Vol. 2*. SPIE Press. http://www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/a364018.pdf

Tatarskii 1971
Tatarskii, V. I. (1971) *The Effects of the Turbulent Atmosphere on Wave Propagation*. Moscow. http://adsabs.harvard.edu/full/1971etaw.book.....T

Williams et al. 1989
Williams, C.S., Becklund, O.A. and D.C. Williams (1989) *Optical Methods of Engineering Metrology*. (ISBN 0-412-39640-8), 477 pp.

Yoder 1986
Yoder, D. (1986) *Introduction to the Optical Transfer Function*. Wiley-Interscience, (ISBN: 0-471-94770-9), Opto-Mechanical System Design, New York.

A-2. Related Publications**.**

Although not necessarily referenced in this manual, the following publications contain technical background information that relates to the performance and analysis of precise structural deformation surveys.

Baker 1993
Baker, L.R. (1993) *Specification and Measurement of Optical Systems*. (ISBN 0-8194-0960-X), 250 pp.

Bomford 1980
Bomford, G. 1980. *Geodesy*. Clarendon, 855 pp.
http://onlinelibrary.wiley.com/doi/10.1002/gj.3350170108/full

Chen et al. 1989
Chen, Y.C., Chrzanowski, A., and J.M. Secord (1989) *A Strategy for the Analysis of the Stability of Reference Points in Deformation Surveys*. CISM Journal ACSGC, Vol 44, No. 2, Summer 1990, pp.141-149.
https://www.researchgate.net/publication/296725463_A_strategy_for_the_analysis_of_the_stability_of_reference_points_in_deformation_surveys

Chrzanowski et al. 1976
Chrzanowski, A., A. Jarzymowski, and M. Kaspar (1976) *A Comparison of Precision Alignment Methods*. The Canadian Surveyor, Vol. 30, No. 2, pp. 81-96.

Chrzanowski 1982
Chrzanowski, A. (1982) *Use of Tiltmeters in Continuous Monitoring of Ground Subsidence*. Proceedings of the 7th Conference of Southern African Surveyors, Johannesburg, 25-29 January, 9 pp. http://www2.unb.ca/ccge/publications/mines.php

Chrzanowski 1986
Chrzanowski, A., Chen, Y.C., and J.M. Secord (1986) *Geometrical Analysis of Deformation Surveys*. Proceedings of the Deformation Measurements Workshop, MIT, Cambridge, pp. 170-206. http://www2.unb.ca/ccge/publications/downloads/CCGE%20-%201986%20-%20Geometrical%20analysis%20of%20deformation%20surveys.pdf

Chrzanowski 1986
Chrzanowski, A. (1986) *Geotechnical and other Non-Geodetic Methods in Deformation Measurements*. Proceedings of the Deformation Measurements Workshop, MIT, Cambridge, pp. 207-220. http://www2.unb.ca/ccge/publications/deformationsurveys.php

Chrzanowski 1992
Chrzanowski, A., Avella, S., Chen, Y.C., and J. M. Secord (1992) *Existing Resources, Standards, and Procedures for Precise Monitoring and Analysis of Structural Deformations - Volumes 1-2*. U.S. Army Topographic Engineering Center, TEC-0025.
http://www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/a282964.pdf

Chrzanowski and Szostak-Chrzanowski 1995
Chrzanowski, A. and A. Szostak-Chrzanowski (1995) *Identification of Dam Deformation Mechanism*. Proceedings of the MWA International Conference on Dam Engineering, Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia, 01-02 August, pp. 179-187.
http://www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/a282964.pdf

Department of Defense 1991
Department of Defense (1991) *Department of Defense World Geodetic System 1984 - Its Definition and Relationships with Local Geodetic Systems*. DMA Technical Report 8350.2.
http://www.dtic.mil/dtic/tr/fulltext/u2/a280358.pdf

Kavanagh 1989
Kavanagh, B.F. (1989) *Surveying With Construction Applications.* Prentice Hall, 458 pp.

Kuang Shan-Long 1991
Kuang Shan-Long (1991) *Optimization and Design of Deformation Monitoring Schemes*. University of New Brunswick, TR No. 157. http://www2.unb.ca/gge/Pubs/TR157.pdf

Leick and Lambert 1990
Leick, Alfred, and Lambert, Steven. (1990) *GPS Satellite Surveying*, John Wiley, New York.

Mayoud et al. 1990
Mayoud, M., E. Menant, and J.P. Quesnel. (1990) *Technological Evolution of Measurement Tools: Dilemmas, Illusions and Realities*. Proceedings, International Workshops on Accelerator Alignment, Argonne, pp. 229-235.
http://www.slac.stanford.edu/econf/C9009106/papers/015.PDF

Mikhail and Ackermann 1976
Mikhail, Edward M., and Ackermann, Friedrich E. (1976) *Observations and Least-Squares,* IEP Series Civil Engineering, New York.

Nickerson 1978
Nickerson, B.G. (1978) *A Priori Estimation of Variance for Surveying Observables*. University of New Brunswick, TR No. 57, 50 pp. http://www2.unb.ca/gge/Pubs/TR57.pdf

Richardus 1984
Richardus, P. (1984) *Project Surveying*. A.A. Balkema, Boston, 650 pp.

Secord 1985
Secord, J.M. (1985) *Implementation of a Generalized Method for the Analysis of Deformation Surveys*. University of New Brunswick, TR. No. 117.

Soler and Hothem 1988
Soler, T., and Hothem, L. (1988) *Coordinate Systems used in Geodesy - Basic Definitions and Concepts*. Journal on Surveying and Engineering, American Society of Civil Engineers.
https://www.researchgate.net/publication/245291552_Coordinate_Systems_Used_in_Geodesy_Basic_Definitions_and_Concepts

Trolinger (ND)
Trolinger, J.D. (ND) *Optical Inspection and Testing*. (ISBN 00-8194-1039-X), 284 pp.

A-3. URL Addresses.

a. URL addresses for selected USACE Commands:

Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers HQ Publications: Engineer Manuals, Regulations Pamphlets & Circulars	www.usace.army.mil
Engineer Research and Development Center	www.erdc.usace.army.mil
Institute for Water Resources (IWR)	www.iwr.usace.army.mil
Army Geospatial Center (AGC)	www.agc.army.mil

b. URL addresses for selected Governmental agencies; and standards organizations:

Federal Geographic Data Committee (FGDC)	www.fgdc.gov
FGDC Bathymetric Subcommittee	www.csc.noaa.gov/fgdc_bsc
National Oceanographic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA)	www.noaa.gov
NOAA National Ocean Service (NOS)	www.nos.noaa.gov
NOAA Coast Survey	www.nauticalcharts.noaa.gov
NOAA National Geodetic Survey (NGS)	www.ngs.noaa.gov

APPENDIX B

Applications: Deformation Surveys of Locks and Dams
Central and Southern Florida Flood Control Project and Lock Dewatering Project

B-1. Example Project. The following A-E Scope of Work illustrates technical requirements for deformation surveys of typical concrete lock structures. This sample project requires four types of deformation observations:

-concrete crack measurements with inside micrometer,
-monolith deflection observations with a target micrometer,
-horizontal distance/coordinate trilateration observations with EDM, and
-vertical settlement observations with precise parallel plate differential leveling.

A project sketch is at Figure B-1.

TECHNICAL REQUIREMENTS

STRUCTURAL DEFORMATION MONITORING SURVEYS

CENTRAL AND SOUTHERN FLORIDA FLOOD CONTROL PROJECT

Spillway (Caloosahatchee River) S-77
WP Franklin Lock and Dam (Caloosahatchee River) S-79
St Lucie Lock and Dam (St. Lucie Canal) S-80
Port Mayaca Lock and Spillway (St. Lucie Canal) S-308B & S-308C
Moore Haven Lock (Caloosahatchee River) HGS-1

1. LOCATION OF WORK. The project is located in the vicinity of Clewiston, Florida.

2. SCOPE OF WORK.

2a. Perform Structural Deformation Monitoring Surveys (Periodic Inspection and Continuing Evaluation of Completed Civil Works Structures--i.e., PICES) for determination of long-term structural movements. Measurements are made from points external to the structure to determine horizontal, vertical, alignment, concrete crack, and structural joint movement.

2b. The services to be rendered by the Contractor include all the work described in these technical requirements. Details not specifically described in these instructions are nevertheless a firm requirement if they can be identified as an item, or items, commonly a part of professional grade work of a comparative nature.

2c. The Contractor shall furnish all necessary materials, labor, supervision, equipment (other than furnished by Government), and transportation necessary to execute and complete all work required by these specifications.

2d. The Corps of Engineers, Survey Section shall be contacted the same day that the Contractor plans to commence the work. The POC for this project is Bynum Lunsford at (904) 232-1602.

2e. Rights-of-Entry must be obtained verbally and recorded in the field book before entering private property. Enter the name and address of the property owner contacted.

2f. COMPLIANCE. All Surveying and Mapping products and related work shall be in strict compliance with the applicable Engineering Manuals and with related technical standards and publications:

- EM-1110-1-1000 (Photogrammetric Mapping)
- EM 1110-1-1002 (Survey Markers and Monumentation),
- EM-1110-1-1003 (NAVSTAR Global Positioning System Surveying)
- EM-1110-2-1003 (Hydrographic Surveying)
- EM-1110-1-2909 (Geospatial Data And System)
- Tri-Services A/E/C CADD Standards, Spatial Data Standards and related Spatial Data Products
- Florida Statues Chapter 177, Chapter 472 and Rule Chapter 61G17, Florida Administrative Code.

3. FIELD SURVEY EFFORT. The area of work is outlined on Enclosure 1 Quad map, Enclosure 2 structure drawings, Enclosure 3 PICES historic report tabulation, Enclosure 4 technical requirements, and Enclosure 5 PICES detailed field measurement procedures.

3a. STRUCTURAL MOVEMENT MEASUREMENTS. Obtain horizontal EODM trilateration observations and vertical settlement measurements for S - 77 Spillway (Caloosahatchee River), vertical settlement measurements and horizontal alignment measurements for S - 79 WP Franklin Lock and Dam (Caloosahatchee River), vertical settlement measurements, horizontal EODM trilateration observations, and horizontal alignment measurements for S - 80 St Lucie Lock and Dam (St. Lucie Canal), horizontal alignment measurements, vertical settlement measurements, and crack measurements for S -308B & S - 308C Port Mayaca Lock and spillway (St. Lucie Canal), vertical settlement measurements for Moore Haven Lock (Caloosahatchee River) structures on Central And Southern Florida Flood Control Project.

3b. VERTICAL SETTLEMENT MEASUREMENTS

3b1. GENERAL. Vertical settlement is determined by precision differential leveling methods. Fixed reference points (bedrock benchmarks) are used to check for potential movement of various settlement points on the structure. Leveling shall be performed in conformance with the methods and accuracy of 1st-Order Geodetic Leveling.

3b2. PROJECT REQUIREMENTS AND INSTRUCTIONS. Each structure has a drawing showing the locations of the benchmarks, structure settlement points and instrument stands along with a tabular report indicating differential changes from previous reading and columns for this year's data set.

3b3. EQUIPMENT. The Government will furnish a first-order level, self-supporting rods and turning pins.

3b4. RECORDING FORMATS. Micrometer leveling forms will be furnished. Level sketches and abstracts shall be prepared on 8 1/2" x 11" sheets.

3b5. OBSERVING PROCEDURES. Levels between reference BM's and structure points shall be run using single run/double rod precise leveling methods. Double run/double rod leveling methods are required when single run lines do not meet external misclosure tolerances.

3b6. INTERNAL MISCLOSURE TOLERANCES. Misclosure Tolerance = 3 mm x sqrt K (where K is distance in kilometers)

3b7. EXTERNAL MISCLOSURE TOLERANCE. If results do not compare with previously published report elevations double run line to verify that external misclosure excess is due to settlement of points and not due to internal problems.

3b8. INSTRUMENT CALIBRATION REQUIREMENTS. C - Factor calibrations shall be performed twice weekly, or at the beginning of leveling at a new structure, or daily if outside prescribed limits.

3b9. FIELD/OFFICE COMPUTATIONS AND REDUCTIONS. Leveling data sheets shall be checked in the field for resultant differential elevations for each run--sketches internal and external tolerances. Compile values into the current PICES report.

3c. HORIZONTAL EODM TRILATERATION OBSERVATIONS.

3c1. GENERAL. Distances to structural monitoring points are observed from one or more rigid instrument stands remote from (not influenced by) the structure. Observed structural movement vectors generally being perpendicular to the structures probable plane of failure.

3c2. PROJECT REQUIREMENTS AND INSTRUCTIONS. Each structure has a drawing showing the locations of the benchmarks, structure reference points and instrument stands along with a tabular report indicating differential changes from previous reading and columns for this year's data set.

3c3. EQUIPMENT. If available a short-range precision Electronic Distance Meter with numbered reflector and calibrated over a baseline. If unavailable equipment will be furnished by the Government.

3c4. RECORDING FORMATS. Standard field survey books, showing readings, atmospheric conditions, height, computations and reductions.

3c5. OBSERVING PROCEDURES. Two sets of five observations.

3c6. INTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. A spread for mean of 10 observations (2 sets of 5) shall not vary by more than +/- 0.002 meter' otherwise, reobserve series.

3c7. EXTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. Change of +/- 0.005 meter from previous PICES length observations.

3c8. CALIBRATION REQUIREMENTS. Calibration must be performed with each available reflector and the resultant system constants for the instrument/reflector pair clearly identified by serial numbers.

3c9. FIELD/OFFICE COMPUTATIONS AND REDUCTIONS. Final corrected (atmospheric, system constant, eccentricities, slope & elevation) horizontal distances will be computed and verified/checked in the field. Compile values into the current PICES report.

3d. HORIZONTAL ALIGNMENT DEFLECTION MEASUREMENTS.

3d1. GENERAL. Horizontal deformation of points on structural sections are monitored by observing magnitudes (by micrometer) with precision theodolite relative to fixed pints on a baseline not influenced by the structure.

3d2. PROJECT REQUIREMENTS AND INSTRUCTIONS. Each structure has a drawing showing the locations of the benchmarks, structure reference points and instrument stands along with a tabular report indicating differential changes from previous reading and columns for this year's data set.

3d3. EQUIPMENT. If available Wild T-2 with force centering tribrach targets, plug inserts and alignment micrometer. If unavailable equipment will be furnished by the Government.

3d4. RECORDING FORMATS. Standard field survey books, showing readings, atmospheric conditions, height, computations and reductions.

3d5. OBSERVING PROCEDURES. Two sets of five observations with micrometer left and right.

3d6. INTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. Plus or minus 0.02" spread from mean.

3d7. EXTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. None.

3d8. CALIBRATION REQUIREMENTS. None.

3d9. FIELD/OFFICE COMPUTATIONS AND REDUCTIONS. Mean left and right micrometer observations to the nearest 0.001". Variation for left or right mean in the 5 set series should not exceed +/- 0.02; if so reobserve. Compile values into the current PICES report.

3e. CRACK MEASUREMENTS.

3e1. GENERAL. Measurements are made relative to grouted plugs set across a concrete crack or structural construction joint.

3e2. PROJECT REQUIREMENTS AND INSTRUCTIONS. Each structure has a drawing showing the locations of the benchmarks, structure reference points and instrument stands along with a tabular report indicating differential changes from previous reading and columns for this year's data set.

3e3. EQUIPMENT. The Government will furnish Starrett Inside Micrometer

3e4. RECORDING FORMATS. Standard field survey books, showing readings, computations and reductions.

3e5. MEASUREMENT PROCEDURES. Read Micrometer in both directions between crack plugs and mean results to the nearest 0.001".

3e6. INTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. One thousand inch between each direction; +/-0.001" from nominal calibration bar.

3e7. EXTERNAL REJECTION CRITERIA. None.

3e8. CALIBRATION REQUIREMENTS. None.

3e9. FIELD/OFFICE COMPUTATIONS AND REDUCTIONS. Compile checked and verified values into the current PICES report.

3e. CONTROL. The vertical reference datum is assumed 100.00 meters. A horizontal reference datum is not required.

3f. All original field notes shall be kept in standard pocket size field books and shall become the property of the Government. The first four pages of the field books shall be reserved for indexing and the binding outside edge shall be free of all marking.

4. OFFICE REVIEW AND COMPUTATIONS. The Contractor shall make the necessary computations to verify the correctness of all measurements and apply the proper theory of location in accordance with the law or precedent and publish the results of the survey. The contractor shall submit the original field notes and horizontal and vertical abstract (computation abstract) to Survey Section.

5. CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL/GOVERNMENT QUALITY ASSURANCE.

- The Contractor is responsible for quality control.
- Government personnel may perform inspections of the Contractor's field operations at any time during the prosecution of this work. The Contractor shall explain calibration procedures and operational activities related to their field effort.
- If during the Government's review of the Contractor's products it becomes apparent that little or no review has been done, the Government will return the entire project to the Contractor for correction.

6. DELIVERIES. On completion, all data required shall be delivered or mailed to Design Branch, Survey Section at the address shown in the contract, and shall be accompanied by a properly numbered, dated and signed letter or shipping form, in duplicate, listing the materials being transmitted. All digital data shall be submitted on CD-ROM's. All costs of deliveries shall be borne by the Contractor. Items to be delivered include, but are not limited to the following:

6a. Horizontal and Vertical Field Books.
6b. Bound 8-1/2" x 11" abstracts, reductions, computations, adjustments, and tabular summaries fully annotated with independent checks.
6c. PICES report tabulations.

SUBMITTED BY_____B. Lunsford

Engineering Division
Design Branch

SUBJECT: Contract No. DACW17-99-D-0046

Mr. John Morgan
Morgan & Ekland, Inc.
8745 U. S. Highway 1
Wabasso, Florida 32970

Mr. Morgan:

Reference contract number DACW17-99-D-0046 for Surveying and Mapping Services. The Government desires to execute a delivery order under subject contract for the following project:

STRUCTURAL DEFORMATION MONITORING SURVEYS
CENTRAL AND SOUTHERN FLORIDA
FLOOD CONTROL PROJECT
CLEWISTON, FLORIDA (SURVEY NO. 00-211)

Please review the enclosed Scope of Work outlining the Technical Requirements and submit an itemized fee proposal for this work within 10 working days of receipt of this document. Please furnish this fee proposal to the attention of the Chief, Design Branch.

This request does not constitute a notice to proceed for the Delivery Order. Please do not commence work or incur any costs chargeable to the Government. You are cautioned that preparation of this fee proposal is entirely at your own risk and the Government can assume no obligation for payment of any related expenses incurred by your firm.

Bynum Lunsford of the Survey Section is the point of contact. Please call him at 904-232-1602 if you have questions or need additional information.

Sincerely,

Walter Clay Sanders, P.E
Assistant Chief, Engineering Division

Enclosures

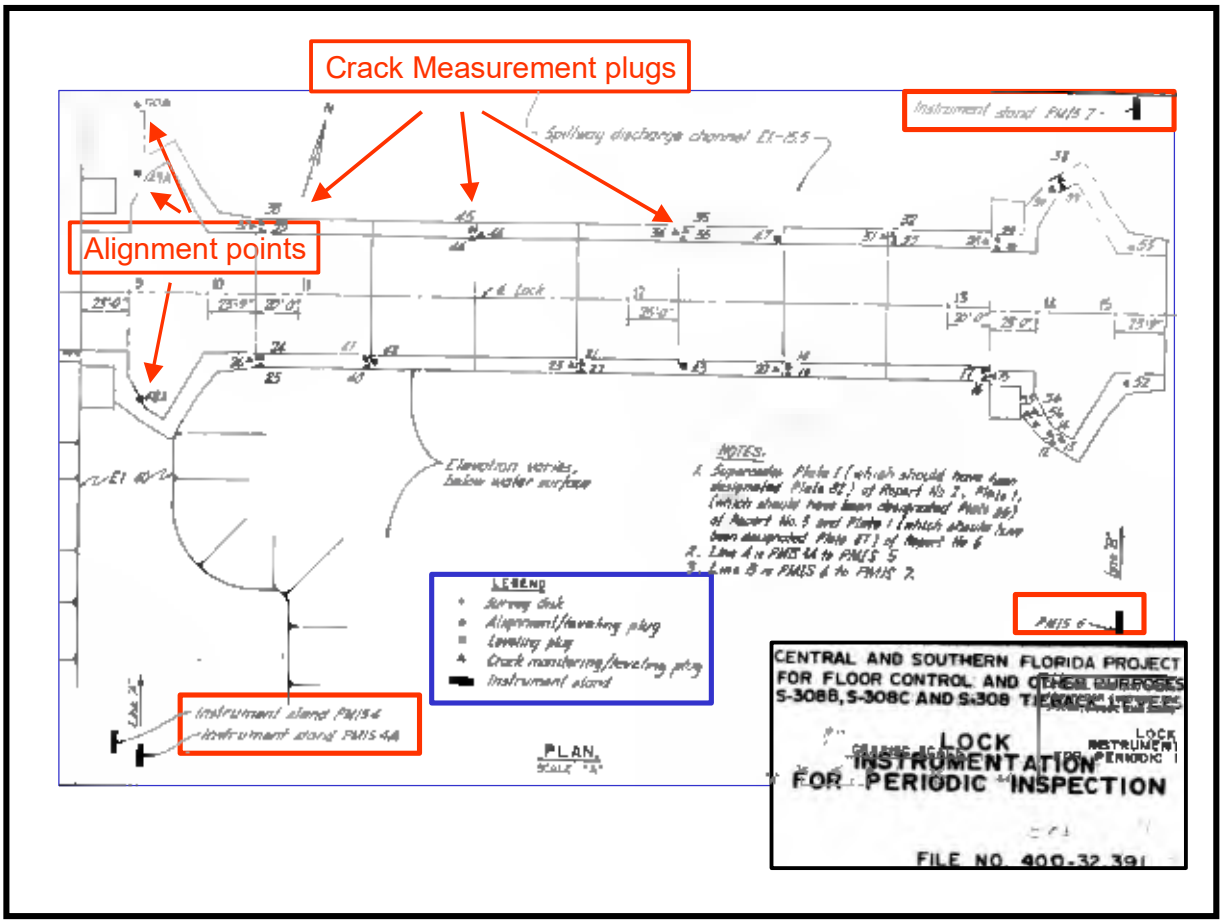


Figure B-1. Structural monitoring and target points for Port Mayaca Lock and Spillway, Central & Southern Florida Flood Control Project.

B-2. Project Illustration: Surveying for Lock Structure Dewatering Lock & Dam No. 4. The following project illustrates plans and procedures for deformation surveys of concrete lock structures. The most common lock structure uses concrete gravity walls founded on either piling or rock. Maintenance of navigation locks requires full dewatering of the lock chamber and most flow passages. Monitoring the relative position of the gate monoliths and wall movement is made to ensure safety and stability of the structure. This example represents a typical wall monitoring operation for lock dewatering. Deformation surveys of this type are usually short-term and include the following types of observations.

-Monolith deflection observations with inside micrometer
-Horizontal distance/coordinate observations with surveying instruments.
-Vertical settlement observations with differential leveling
-Water level measurements read inside the lock chamber

-Peizometer and well observations on the landside embankment

a. Project Location and Description. Lock No. 4 is located in Alma, Wisconsin, at river mile 752.8 on the upper Mississippi River—Figures B-2 and B-3. The lock is 600-feet long by 110-feet wide, and raises and lowers traffic 7 feet. The dam is 6,867-feet long, including movable gate sections and earth-fill dike. The movable gate section consists of six roller gates and 22 tainter gates. Pool 4 formed by this dam is 44.1 river miles encompassing 22-mile-long Lake Pepin, a natural lake in the main channel of the Mississippi. Lock and Dam No. 4 was completed in 1935, with major rehabilitation completed in 1994 adding 50 years to its serviceability.

Figure B-2. Aerial View of Lock and Dam No. 4, Alma, WI.

b. Preparation and General Procedures. Work will be conducted in 2–12-hour shifts, each consisting of Party Chief, Instrumentman, Rodman. The Wild T2002 will be checked and adjusted 48 hours before surveys start and per manufacturer's specifications. Tribrachs will be adjusted before starting instrumentation surveys. Barometric pressure (station pressure) will be recorded every hour on the hour. Temperature will be recorded every hour on the hour. Atmospheric correction (combination of pressure and temperature) will be recorded and applied to the instrument before each session of measurements. One person will measure the wells and piezometers, the gauge inside the chamber, and number and size of pumps that are running every two hours.

c. Equipment List.

Wild Leica TC2002, Di2000 with 2 Charged Batteries.

EDM Battery Charger
2 Single Prisms
8 Tripods
8 Tribrachs
30 Sand Bags ½ Filled with Dry Sand
Barometer (Station Type, Not Sea Level)
Thermometer
Wild TC2002 Hand Book with Graphs for Environmental Corrections
Piezometer Gauge Reader (Eng. Div)
Small Plastic Bags to Cover Tribrachs
Umbrella to Keep Instrument Dry If Raining
Water Gauge and Weight for Inside Chamber
Roto Hammer, Anchors, Washers, and Pedestals
Lead Wool 15#
4 Flashlights
Hammer and Chisel
10 lb. Maul
Field Books
Warm, Dry Clothes

d. Instrumentation Procedures. The following instrumentation procedures were followed during the Lock #4 dewatering project 2000. (Refer to Figures B-4 through B-9).

(1) A new baseline will be set along the landside parking lot and Hwy 35. The existing baseline monuments must be abandoned for a location greater than 25' from the Railroad tracks. The new base line monuments will be 1 inch steel rebar 4 feet in length with punch holes. They will be aligned dead center with each other. These monuments will be checked once per day to ensure there is no movement.

(2) Set Leica TC2002 at monument 0+00 on the Intermediate wall, back sight monument L-3 (Station 0+00) on the old baseline. Then turn right angles up and down the Intermediate wall (I-wall) and set lead plugs with brass tacks at station 2+97.09A, 3+65.86A, 4+01.32A, 1+73.68B and 2+68.18B. Align tacks dead center with each other.

(3) Set the instrument at each of the above stations on the I-wall and turn right angles across the lock chamber and set stainless steel pedestals. Station 0+00 on the landwall is a brass disc, do not set a pedestal here. At landwall station 4+01.32A and 3+65.86A, set a new pedestal at each station on Control Building. These pedestals on the building will be heated and bent to the vertical position on the building.

(4) With the instrument set at Stations 0+00 on the I-wall, back sight monument L-3 (Station 0+00) on the old base line and plunge line ahead to the parking lot to 0+00 on the new base line. Make punch hole.

(5) Move the instrument to station 0+00 on the new base line, back sight station 0+00 on the I-wall. Turn right angles to the other two base line monuments and make punch marks dead center with each other.

(6) All measurements will be made from the I-wall to the landwall, to the new base line, and to the building pedestals.

(7) Start with measuring the alignment on the new base line each day for three days.

-Move the instrument to I-wall station 4+01.32A, measure the distance in meters to station 4+01.32A on the opposite landwall and to station 4+01.32A on the building. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.
-Move the instrument to I-wall station 3+65.86A and measure the distance in meters to station 3+65.86A on the landwall and to the building. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.
-Move the instrument to I-wall station 2+97.09A and measure the distance in meters landwall station 2+97.09A and to the new base line station 2+97.09A. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.
-Move the instrument to I-wall station 0+00 and measure the distance in meters to landwall station 0+00 and to the new base line 0+00. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.
-Move the instrument to I-wall station 1+73.68B and measure the distance in meters to landwall station 1+73.68B. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.
-Move instrument to I-wall station 2+68.18B and measure the distance in meters to landwall station 2+68.18B on the landwall. Measure the distance 5 times to each station and record and average the readings.

(8) This procedure will be repeated two to three days before de-watering to initialize the system. When the drawdown starts, this system will be measured every two hours during drawdown. After the lock is de-watered, the system will be measured once per day for five days, then once per week thereafter until the chamber is refilled, then once per day for two days. The monitoring will then be completed.

e. Special Instructions. The water inside the lock chamber is not to drop faster than ½ foot per hour. This is a very critical task and pumps may need to be shut down to maintain this ½ foot per hour. There will be 6–8 inch Flyght pumps and 2–6 inch Flyght pumps operating to dewater the lock. If the water is dropping at a faster rate, shut down the 6-inch pumps first. Observe the water gauge in the chamber for the next hour and adjust the number of operating pumps accordingly.

(1) While observing the monitoring system and 0.006 m of movement is determined, notify the Structural Branch (POC and phone numbers are posted) that you have detected movement of

6 mm or more and then keep repeating the measurements at that station every ½ hour, or until instructed otherwise.

(2) The water level inside the wells and in the piezometers are very critical. Try to maintain the target level on the form provided. If large increases are detected, notify Geotechnical Branch (POC and phone numbers are posted) that you have detected a large change in water levels. If this happens, you will need to measure the water levels more frequently, and possibly adjust the valves on the wells.

Figure B-3. Lock and Dam No. 4 showing Intermediate Wall and Land Wall.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS, ST PAUL DISTRICT

Date	Time	Temp	Pumps	Gauge Reading In Chamber	Date	Time	Temp	Pumps	Gauge Reading in Chamber
12/10/00	2200	-1	4 - 8" Flyght	14.74	12/11/00	2230		5 - 8" Flyght	8.30
12/11/00	2400	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.60		2300		5 - 8" Flyght	8.20
	30	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.60		2330		5 - 8" Flyght	8.10
	100	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.60		2400		5 - 8" Flyght	8.10
	130	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.30	12/12/00	30		5 - 8" Flyght	7.9
	200	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.10		100		5 - 8" Flyght	7.9
	230	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	14.00		230		5 - 8" Flyght	7.5
	300	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	13.80		300		5 - 8" Flyght	7.5
	330	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.70		330		5 - 8" Flyght	7.2
	400	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.60		400		5 - 8" Flyght	7.0
	430	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.60		430		5 - 8" Flyght	6.9
	500	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.50		500		5 - 8" Flyght	6.5
	530	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.40		530		5 - 8" Flyght	6.4
	600	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.40		600	-7	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	630	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.40		630	-7	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	700	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.30		700	-10	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	730	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.30		730	-10	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	800	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.20		800	-10	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	830	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.20		830	-10	5 - 8" Flyght	6.3
	900	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	13.00		900	-3	5 - 8" Flyght	6.1
	1100	0	5 - 8" Flyght	12.40		1000	-3	5 - 8" Flyght	5.8
	1130	1	5 - 8" Flyght	12.00		1030	-3	4 - 8" Flyght	5.5
	1200	3	5 - 8" Flyght	11.70		1100	-2	4 - 8" Flyght	5.4
	1230	3	5 - 8" Flyght	11.50		1230	0	4 - 8" Flyght	5.0
	1300	2	5 - 8" Flyght	11.30		1330	1	5 - 8" Flyght	4.8
	1330	3	5 - 8" Flyght	11.15		1400	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	4.6
	1400	3	5 - 8" Flyght	11.00		1430	-1	5 - 8" Flyght	4.5
	1430	3	5 - 8" Flyght	10.80		1600	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	3.9
	1500	2	5 - 8" Flyght	10.50		1630	-2	5 - 8" Flyght	3.7
	1530	2	5 - 8" Flyght	10.35		1700	-3	5 - 8" Flyght	3.5
	1600	2	5 - 8" Flyght	10.10		1730	-4	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	3.3
	1630	2	5 - 8" Flyght	9.90		1800	-4	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	3.1
	1700	2	5 - 8" Flyght	9.70		1830	-4	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	2.8
	1730	2	5 - 8" Flyght	9.50		1900	-4	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	2.6
	1830	2	5 - 8" Flyght	9.30		2000	-4	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	2.3
	1900	2	5 - 8" Flyght	9.10		2030	-3	5 - 8" & 1 - 6"	1.8
	1930		5 - 8" Flyght	9.10		2230	-3	3 - 8" & 1 - 6"	1.5
	2000		5 - 8" Flyght	8.70	12/13/00	30	-3	3 - 8" & 1 - 6"	1.1
	2030		5 - 8" Flyght	8.60		100	-3	2 - 8" & 1 - 6"	Iced up
	2100		5 - 8" Flyght	8.50		400	-2	2 - 8" & 1 - 6"	Iced up
	2130		5 - 8" Flyght	8.40		600	-2	2 - 8" & 1 - 6"	Dewatered
	2200		5 - 8" Flyght	8.30					

Figure B-4. Water level (Gauge) readings recorded during dewatering operations.

U.S. ARMY CORPS OF ENGINEERS ST. PAUL DISTRICT
Lock #4 Monitoring Measurements

NEW BASELINE SURVEY (NBL)

Date	Time	Temp F	Press.	0+00 NBL	2+97.09A NBL	3+65.86A NBL
8-Dec-00	1300	12 Deg F	30.1	0.00	0.00	0.00
9-Dec-00	1400	12 Deg F	30.1	0.00	0.00	0.00

INITIAL SURVEY (Distances in Meters)

				0+00 l wall	0+00 l wall	2+97A l wall	2+97A l wall	3+66A l wall	3+66A l wall	4+01A l wall	4+01A l wall	1+74B l wall	2+68B l wall
				0+00 L wall	0+00 NBL	2+97A L wall	2+97A NBL	3+66A L wall	3+66A Bldg	4+01A L wall	4+01A Bldg	1+74B L wall	2+68B L wall
8-Dec-00	1400	12 Deg F	30.1	35.2018	86.3114	35.5933	86.3105	34.7282	42.1385	34.7468	42.1747	34.6993	34.6021
9-Dec-00	900	16 Deg F	30.0	35.2027	86.3095	35.5945	86.3125	34.7290	42.1395	34.7477	42.1742	34.6998	34.6065
9-Dec-00	1030	16 Deg F	30.0	35.2042	86.3092	35.5945	86.3122	34.7292	42.1386	34.7463	42.1752	34.7014	34.6065
INITIAL SURVEY (Average Values)				**35.2029**	**86.3100**	**35.5941**	**86.3117**	**34.7288**	**42.1389**	**34.7469**	**34.1750**	**34.7002**	**34.6050**

MONITORING SURVEY

				0+00 l wall	0+00 l wall	2+97A l wall	2+97A l wall	3+66A l wall	3+66A l wall	4+01A l wall	4+01A l wall	1+74B l wall	2+68B l wall
Date	Time	Temp F	Press.	0+00 L wall	0+00 NBL	2+97A L wall	2+97A NBL	3+66A L wall	3+66A Bldg	4+01A L wall	4+01A Bldg	1+74B L wall	2+68B L wall
11-Dec-00	2400	-1	30.05	35.2018	86.3090	35.5990	86.3122	34.7293	42.1395	34.7488	42.1785	34.6976	34.6050
11-Dec-00	200	-1	30.05	35.2032	86.3090	35.5935	86.3127	34.7291	42.1383	34.7557	42.1735	34.6981	34.6030
11-Dec-00	400	-2	30.05	35.2031	86.3086	35.5954	86.3140	34.7355	42.1440	34.7465	42.1736	34.6981	34.6037
11-Dec-00	600	-2	30.05	35.2020	86.3084	35.5959	86.3145	34.7313	42.1397	34.7471	42.1746	34.6996	34.6047
11-Dec-00	800	-2	30.05	35.2021	86.3082	35.5939	86.3136	34.7300	42.1400	34.7491	42.1763	34.6987	34.6031
11-Dec-00	1000	1	30.05	35.2029	86.3084	35.5951	86.3132	34.7320	42.1405	34.7494	42.1773	34.6983	34.6033
11-Dec-00	1200	3	30.00	35.2049	86.3078	35.5941	86.3119	34.7294	42.1392	34.7488	42.1769	34.6980	34.6042
11-Dec-00	1400	3	29.95	35.2038	86.3078	35.5947	86.3126	34.7292	42.1389	34.7479	42.1776	34.6986	34.6038
11-Dec-00	1600	2	29.95	35.2007	86.3077	35.5930	86.3126	34.7304	42.1396	34.7475	42.1752	34.6984	34.6030
11-Dec-00	1800	2	29.97	35.2015	86.3076	35.5945	86.3131	34.7295	42.1419	34.7482	42.1771	34.6978	34.6038
11-Dec-00	2000	2	29.98	35.2006	86.3075	35.5954	86.3111	34.7301	42.1402	34.7475	42.1753	34.6994	34.6028
11-Dec-00	2200	0	29.95	35.2015	86.3075	35.5942	86.3136	34.7288	42.1395	34.7466	42.1765	34.6970	34.6028
12-Dec-00	2400	-1	29.90	35.2025	86.3079	35.5949	86.3130	34.7326	42.1390	34.7470	42.1722	34.6999	34.6044
12-Dec-00	200	-1	29.95	35.2036	86.3079	35.5941	86.3136	34.7298	42.1377	34.7471	42.1746	34.6972	34.6042
12-Dec-00	400	-7	30.00	35.2040	86.3084	35.5937	86.3150	34.7287	42.1388	34.7441	42.1744	34.6989	34.6021
12-Dec-00	600	-7	30.09	35.2011	86.3083	35.5936	86.3122	34.7288	42.1404	34.7425	42.1749	34.6978	34.6030
12-Dec-00	800	-10	30.25	35.2024	86.3072	35.5949	86.3135	34.7288	42.1412	34.7430	42.1753	34.6990	34.6038
12-Dec-00	1000	-1	30.30	35.2021	86.3076	35.5941	86.3145	34.7315	42.1415	34.7497	42.1769	34.7000	34.6044
12-Dec-00	1200	9	30.30	35.2024	86.3077	35.5952	86.3136	34.7305	42.1417	34.7493	42.1770	34.6995	34.6053
12-Dec-00	1400	6	30.30	35.2024	86.3075	35.5945	86.3126	34.7314	42.1413	34.7486	42.1763	34.6996	34.6058
12-Dec-00	1600	0	30.30	35.2032	86.3075	35.5960	86.3139	34.7315	42.1411	34.7496	42.1760	34.7012	34.6060
12-Dec-00	1800	-4	30.30	35.2037	86.3077	35.5963	86.3142	34.7308	42.1412	34.7481	42.1755	34.7007	34.6051
12-Dec-00	2000	-4	30.30	35.2057	86.3075	35.5940	86.3124	34.7307	42.1422	34.7475	42.1780	34.6999	34.6027
12-Dec-00	2200	-3	30.30	35.2005	86.3072	35.5951	86.3132	34.7308	42.1389	34.7456	42.1727	34.6984	34.6019
13-Dec-00	2400	-3	30.30	35.2005	86.3073	35.5938	86.3125	34.7302	42.1403	34.7464	42.1726	34.7002	34.6024
13-Dec-00	200	-2	30.00	35.2004	86.3071	35.5966	86.3133	34.7329	42.1402	34.7473	42.1753	34.6996	34.6038
13-Dec-00	600	-2	30.00	35.2004	86.3068	35.5966	86.3121	34.7318	42.1401	34.7481	42.1750	34.6986	34.6046

Figure B-5. Distances measured across lock chamber walls using conventional instrumentation.

GPS Wall Monitoring - Baselines (meters)

Hours	I-wall 1	I-wall 2	I-wall 3	L-wall 1	L-wall 2	L-wall 3
0	113.9190	53.1768	112.2112	104.0844	25.1903	101.7617
2	113.9219	53.1775	112.2121	104.0818	25.1895	101.7612
5	113.9189	53.1768	112.2126	104.0806	25.1915	101.7619
9	113.9199	53.1789	112.2127	104.0792	25.1914	101.7589
15	113.9189	53.1782	112.2128	104.0815	25.1906	101.7589
22	113.9189	53.1739	112.2113	104.0825	25.1894	101.7599
28	113.9180	53.1775	112.2163	104.0823	25.1890	101.7619
35	113.9160	53.1768	112.2126	104.0798	25.1904	101.7596

Figure B-6. Processed GPS baselines from the reference station.

GPS Wall Monitoring - Differences (millimeters)

Hours	I-wall 1	I-wall 2	I-wall 3	L-wall 1	L-wall 2	L-wall 3
0	0.1	-0.3	-1.5	2.9	0.0	1.2
2	3.0	0.4	-0.8	0.7	-0.8	0.9
5	0.0	-0.3	-0.3	-0.5	1.2	1.6
9	1.0	1.8	-0.2	-1.9	1.1	-1.4
15	0.0	1.1	-0.1	0.4	0.3	-1.4
22	0.0	-3.2	-1.6	1.4	-0.9	-0.4
28	-0.9	0.4	3.4	1.2	-1.3	1.6
35	-2.9	-0.3	-0.3	-1.3	0.1	-0.7

Figure B-7. Processed GPS baseline differences from the initial survey.

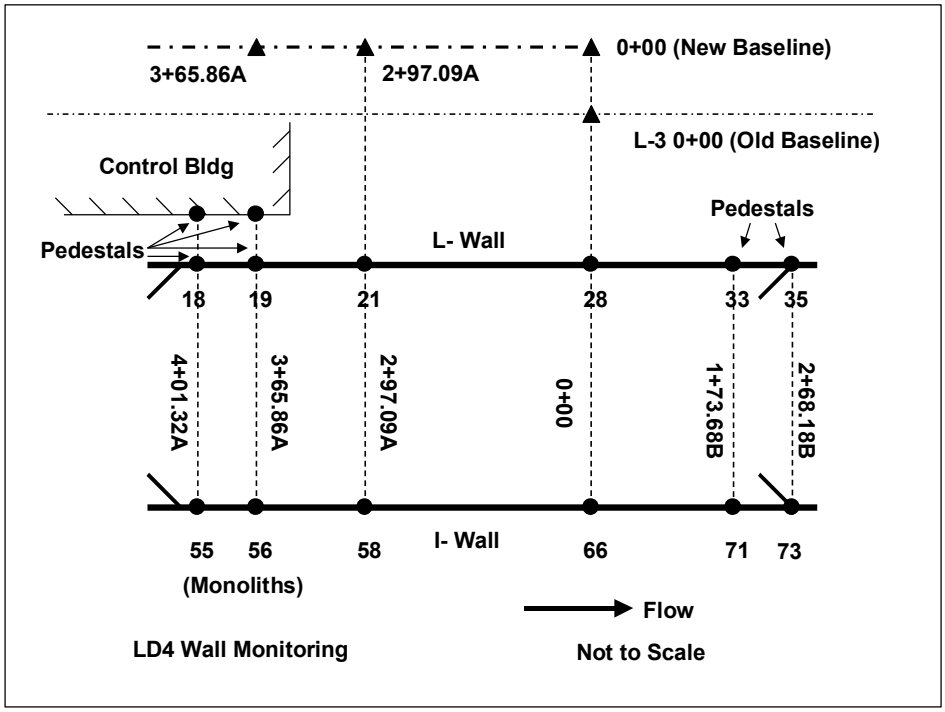


Figure D-3: Instrumentation Plan and Measurement Scheme for conventional deformation surveys.

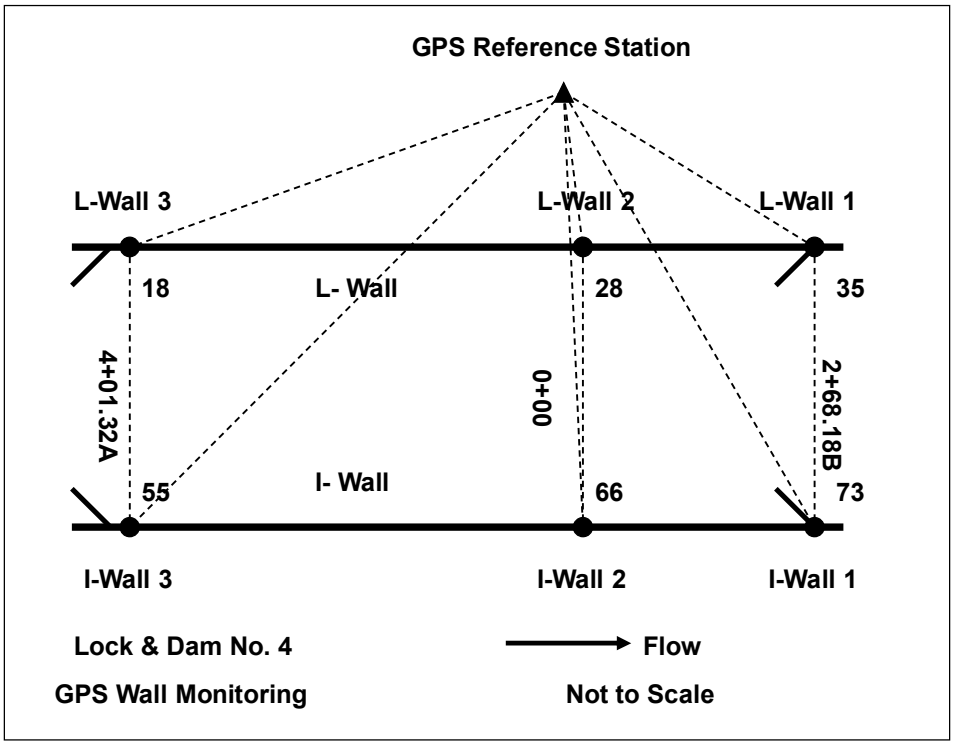


Figure B-9. Instrumentation Plan and Measurement Scheme for GPS-based deformation surveys.

APPENDIX C

Applications: Monitoring Schemes for Concrete Dams

C-1. Background. The following study is taken from a report prepared by the U.S. Army Topographic Engineering Center "Design and Evaluation of Geodetic Surveys for Deformation Monitoring at the U.S. Army Engineer District, Seattle." This study of monitoring requirements for Libby Dam illustrates many of the factors that need to be considered in establishing and maintaining a monitoring program.

C-2. Project Description. The Libby Dam project is located in Lincoln, County, Montana on the Kootenai River 17 miles upstream of the City of Libby (USGS 1:24,000 quad map - Alexander Mountain). Libby Dam (Figure C-1) consists of 46 concrete monoliths including spillway (monoliths 28-30) and intake (monoliths 20-27).

Figure C-1. Libby Dam.

It has a total length of 880 meters, and a maximum height of about 120 meters. It is classified as having a high downstream hazard potential in the event of failure. The Seattle District, USACE designed Libby Dam and its reservoir is used primarily for flood control and power production.

C-3. Reference Network**.** The reference network (Table C-1) proposed for Libby Dam consists of four reference stations (R1, R2, R3, and R4) on the surrounding abutments, and four stations (C06, C23, C35, and C46) located on the crest of the structure on monoliths 6, 23, 35, and 46. Reference station R1 is located on the southwest pillar of the structure enclosing an existing weather station upstream of the dam on the right abutment. Reference station R2 is located on an existing survey observation pillar on the right abutment near the picnic area upstream of the dam. Reference station R3 is located on the left abutment on top of the rock face used for monitoring potential abutment instability. Reference station R4 is an alternate located next to a monumented

gravity station near the observation deck on the right abutment. Structure reference points on the upper deck of the dam crest are located at monoliths 6, 23, 35, and 46, each collocated with existing suspended and inverted plumb lines. GPS control stations on monoliths 6 and 46 are not collocated with fixed points for the laser surveys. Alignment fixed points could be either re-situated to monoliths 6 and 46, or have measured ties to the plumb line station (i.e., at monoliths 6 and 46).

Table C-1. Approximate NAD83 state plane coordinates (MT West projection 1602 in meters), for Libby Dam reference network.

Station	Northing	Easting	Height
R1	479020.0	170214.0	765.0
R2	478690.0	169884.0	740.0
R3	478010.0	170590.0	838.0
R4	478420.0	169494.0	777.0
C06	478505.0	169771.0	736.0
C23	478315.0	170022.0	736.0
C35	478181.0	170198.0	736.0
C46	478058.0	170360.0	736.0

C-4. Reference Network Reconnaissance**.**

a. General. Photographs of proposed locations for reference stations are shown in Figures C-3 through C-5. Pillars have been installed for monitoring with conventional instruments, which also appear suitable for GPS occupations, being less than 2 kilometers from the farthest point on the dam crest and acceptable for precision baseline measurement. Monitoring to proposed locations at the top of the left abutment also would be within acceptable range for GPS surveys.

b. Intervisibility study. A study was undertaken of the Libby Dam site to identify zones on the surrounding abutments, and areas upstream and downstream where reference stations could be situated with a direct LOS to the structure. Figure C-2 shows reference station placements that will allow dual-use of GPS and conventional surveying equipment. Blue gridlines represent areas that are visible; red grid-lines represent areas that would be obstructed. The inter-visibility map was developed from a low resolution USGS Digital Elevation Model (DEM), draped with a B/W Digital Orthophoto Quarter Quad (DOQQ) raster image. Although the diagram only meets map accuracy standards, geology and soils maps could be overlain to identify candidate areas for stable reference points.

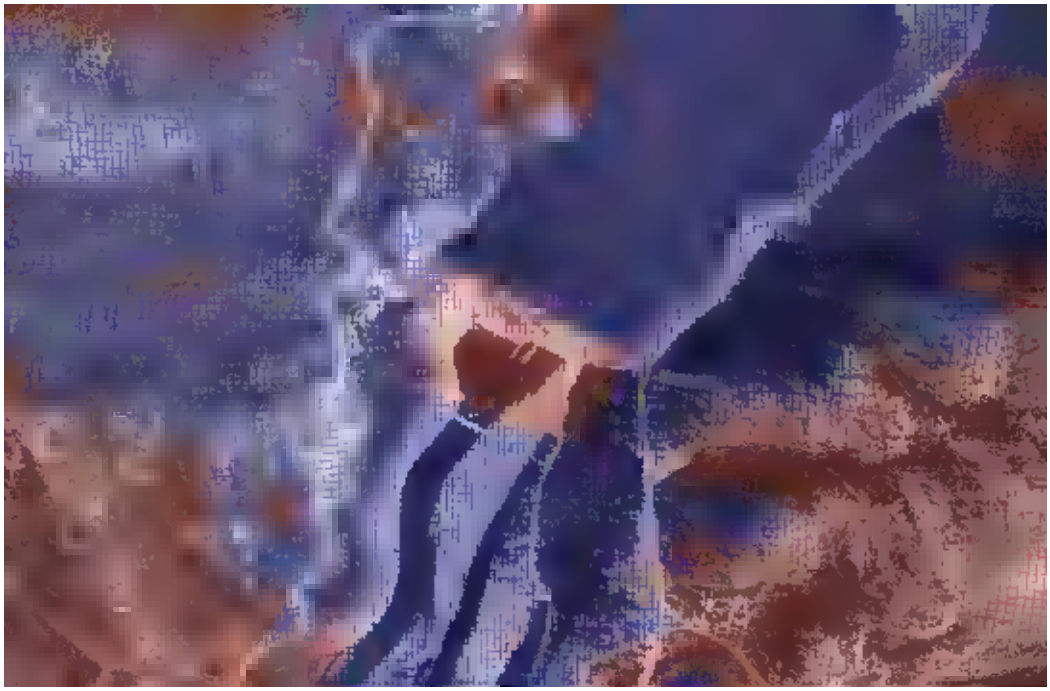


Figure C-2. Intervisibility diagram for reference station placements, blue areas visible, red areas obstructed.

Figure C-3. Reference Station (R1), Libby Dam.

Figure C-4. Reference Station (R2), Libby Dam.

Figure C-5. Existing survey station, Libby Dam.

C-5. Monitoring Requirements.

a. General. Displacements of the dam are related mainly to annual cyclic forces from changes in reservoir elevation and to a lesser extent temperature of the concrete mass. Measured displacements under normal operating conditions are typically no greater than 2 cm in the horizontal plane, and no greater than 0.5 cm in the vertical direction. Both the amount and direction of movement across different structural components (i.e., monolith sections near the powerhouse, spillway, abutment contact zones, foundation areas, etc.) can show a significant and

complex variation. Predicting detailed deformations would be difficult without further engineering analysis.

b. Expected deformation and monitoring tolerances. Libby Dam is exposed to significant seasonal water level changes of up to 46 m (Figure C-6) and seasonal temperature changes. Data on the expected deformation of the dam is crucial in evaluating instrumentation. Simplified analysis of the expected effects of the changeable pool level was conducted to learn what magnitude of accuracy tolerances should be accepted for designing the deformation measurements.

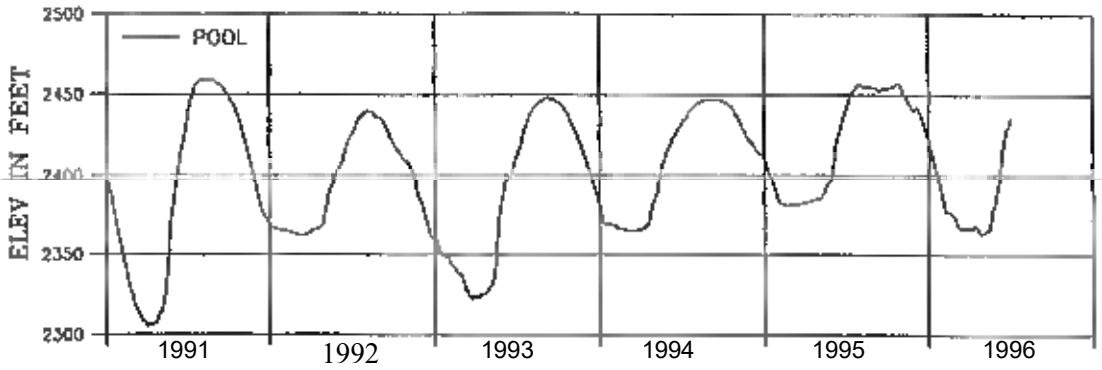


Figure C-6. Water level variations at Libby Dam.

c. Deterministic prediction of displacements. The Finite Element Method (FEM) has been used in analyzing a typical cross-section of Libby Dam at monolith 23. Figure C-7 shows the FEM mesh and the distortion of the dam when the water load reaches its highest level. As this was a simplified analysis, effects from galleries, penstocks, and other openings were neglected. Since no information on elasticity parameters were available, two FEM analyses of the effects of the changeable water level were performed for two values of the Young modulus:

(1) $E_1 = 15$ GPa
(2) $E_2 = 25$ GPa

with the Poisson ratio kept at:

$\nu = 0.30$.

Figures C-8 and C-9 show the expected tilts of the dam for the maximum (114 m) and minimum (68 m) expected water levels. The results show that the top of the dam (upper gallery) has a maximum total horizontal U/D displacement between:

Δd = -12.5 mm to +13 mm, or 25.5 mm for E_1
Δd = - 7.5 mm to + 8 mm, or 15.5 mm for E_2

at the center of the dam when the water level changes by 46 m. On average, one may expect a total maximum change of displacements between low and high water levels of about 20 mm. This estimate does not consider the effect of thermal variations of the structure. It may be expected, however, that temperature induced horizontal displacement in the upper gallery would be of a magnitude of very few millimeters, while vertical displacements at the top of the dam could reach about 20 mm (assuming a 20°C maximum change of concrete temperature at the upper levels). The monitoring surveys should be designed to detect:

(20 mm ÷ 3)/(√2) = 5 mm displacements at the 95% probability level.

The standard deviation of each positioning/offset component in an individual observation epoch should then be smaller than:

(20 mm)/9 = 2.2 mm.

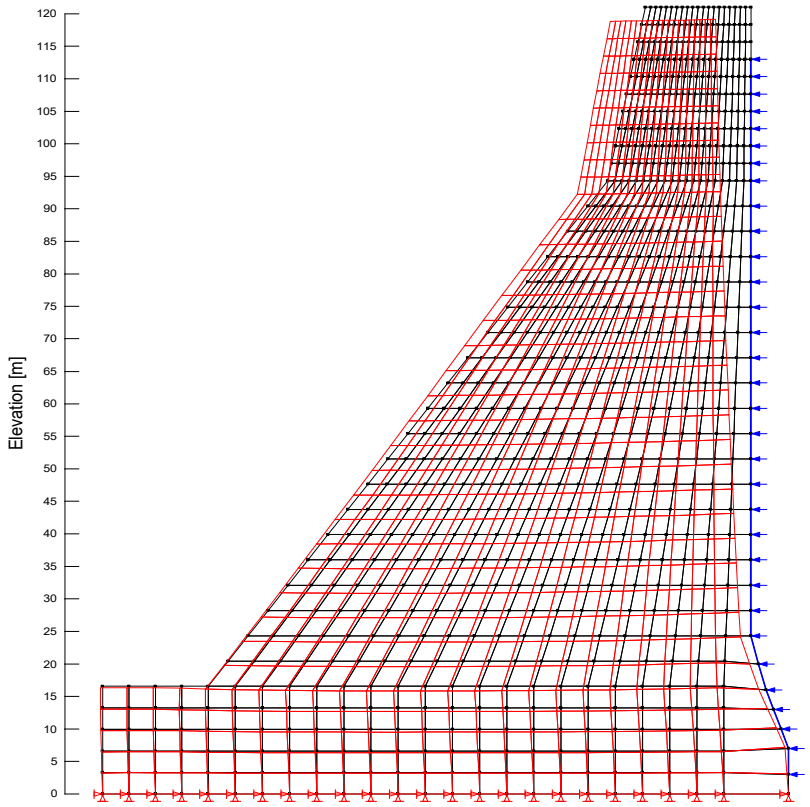


Figure C-7. FEM mesh and displacements (E = 25 GPa, water level = 114 m; displacements 1000 times).

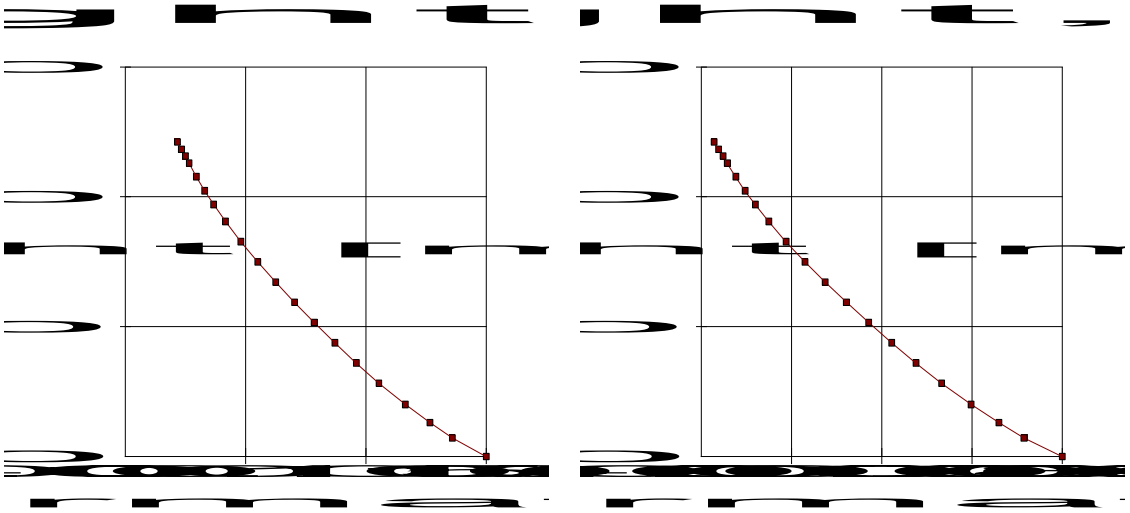


Figure C-8. Displacement due to water load at high pool.

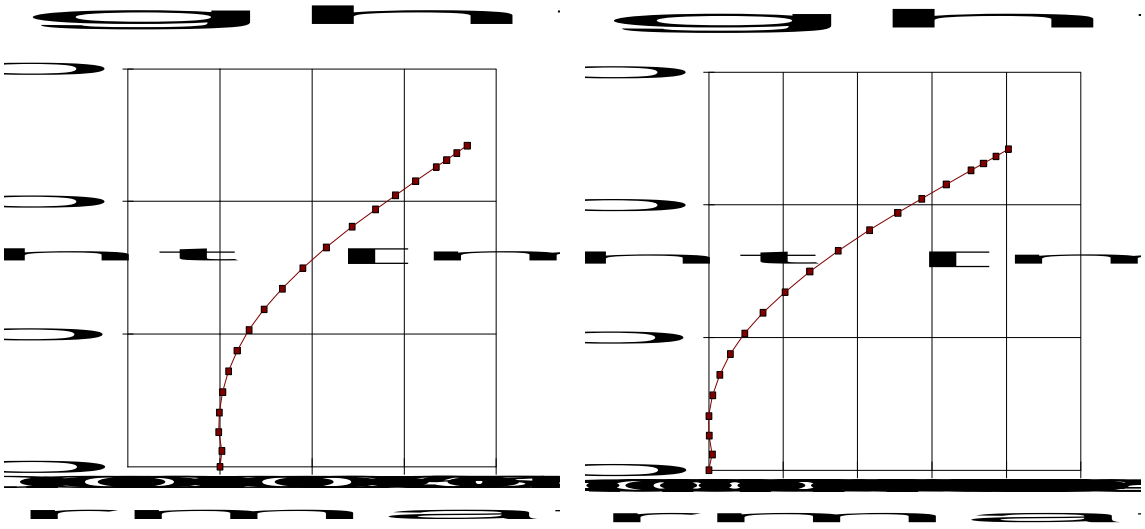


Figure C-9. Displacement due to water load at low pool.

C-6. Existing Measurement Systems.

a. General. Instrumentation is placed in Libby Dam to monitor the structural behavior; ensure safety; determine bending, tilting, and displacement; and check design assumptions and theoretical computations. Instrumentation includes measurement of interior concrete temperatures, joint movements, uplift pressures, structural deflections, and internal concrete

stresses. Instruments were also placed in the rock slope adjacent to and above the left abutment for a distance of 2,000 feet upstream to detect movement in the left bank slope. Some measurements are automatically recorded via remote phone line connections and the data are reduced and stored in the District office. A report summarizing the instrumentation evaluations, with data plots, is published twice a year and provided to Operations Division.

b. Instrumentation. Historical data for all instrumentation readings since 1981 have been published and are updated on an annual basis. Laser alignment surveys are conducted twice a year in the upper service gallery section of the dam. Data for plumb lines, uplift pressure cells, drains, and the left abutment are collected monthly with a review for data quality and interpretation made by personnel in the District Geotechnical and Environmental Restoration Branch. A geologist reviews left abutment data on a monthly basis and a structural engineer performs a quarterly dam information review.

c. Laser alignment surveys. The existing laser alignment system was installed in 1975 for monitoring the longitudinal alignment of the dam. The lateral offsets of a number of survey points are measured from a baseline established by a laser beam reference. Surveys are scheduled during expected maximum upstream and downstream deflections of the dam indicated by plumb line data.

d. Inverted and conventional plumb lines. Suspended plumb lines are installed in monoliths 23 and 35, both are collocated with inverted plumb lines set in observation rooms connected to the upper, lower, and drainage service galleries. Inverted plumb lines are installed in monoliths 6 and 46, and in monoliths 23 and 35. Until 1975, both sets of plumb line data in monolith 23 showed gradual downstream deflection believed to reflect structural and foundation stabilization. Subsequent data indicates movement is primarily related to reservoir pool and concrete temperature variations. Maximum displacement ranges between 1.5 and 0.5 cm respectively for suspended and inverted plumb lines. Isolated lateral movement toward the right bank of approximately 1 mm per year was observed at the base of monolith 35. Inverted plumb line stations are read automatically using optical sensing-reading systems connected to the local data communications network. Plumb line readings since 1991 indicate that both monoliths are stable within "0.25 mm (0.01") in the U/D direction and within "1 mm (0.04") along the axis of the dam. Monoliths 23 and 35 contain both suspended and inverted plumb lines. At each monolith, the suspended plumb lines extend from the upper inspection gallery to the drainage and grouting gallery. The inverted plumb lines extend from the drainage and grouting gallery to an anchor 10 m deep in the bedrock. Suspended and inverted readings at the drainage and grouting gallery can be combined to give the total displacement of the upper inspection gallery with respect to the bedrock. The combined readings at these two monoliths indicate very smooth cyclic deflections of the dam. Movement is well-correlated with the cyclic water load changes, with a maximum total range of deflections of about 18 mm (0.7").

This value agrees well with the predicted FEM value of about 20 mm. Due to the good performance of the plumb lines, their data create an excellent control for other instrumentation,

particularly alignment and tiltmeter surveys. Plumb lines indicate that the maximum U/S deflections occur in March and maximum D/S deflections occur in September, agreeing well with the time of maximum and minimum water levels.

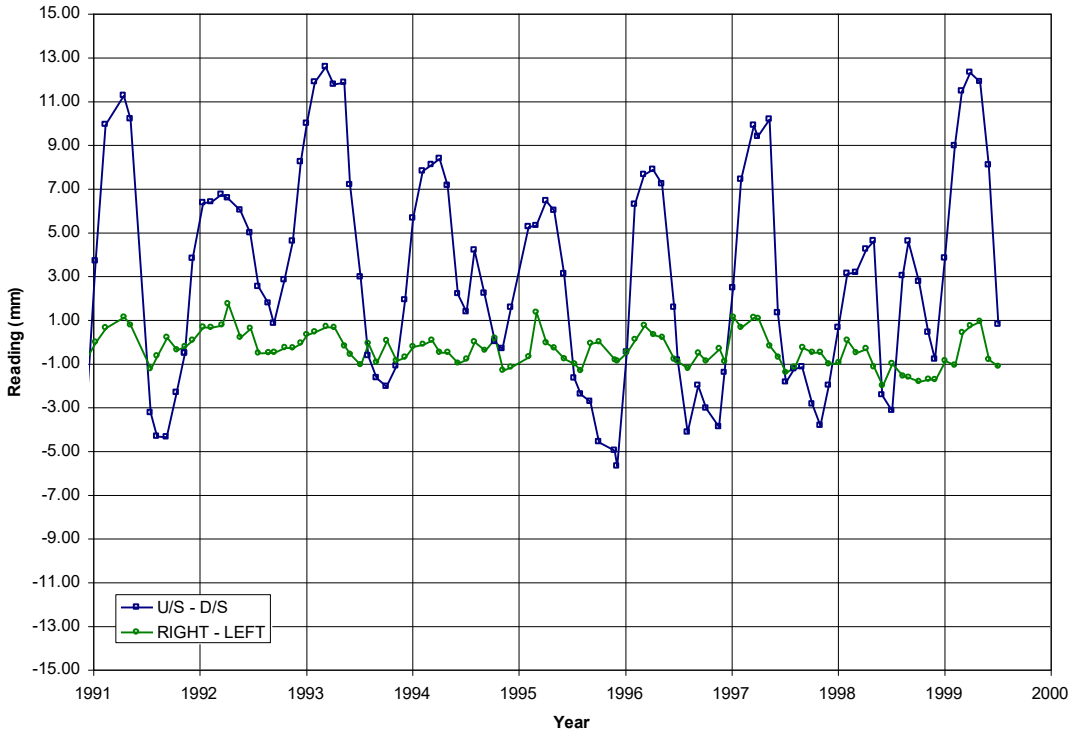


Figure C-10. Combined readouts from suspended and inverted plumb lines.

e. Jointmeters. Relative movement across monolith joints is measured by a set of joint meters embedded in concrete. Gauges are located at monolith joints 21/22, 22/23, and 32/33. Annual maximum displacements are on the order of 1-3 mm recorded during spring season. Monoliths adjacent to the left abutment were instrumented in 1992 with an additional twenty, 3D, joint meters to assist in the evaluation of possible deep-seated movement in the left abutment. As of 1995, no significant movement trends have been observed from these gauges.

f. Foundation deformation meters. Downstream of the axis of the dam (10 and 240 feet), deformation meters are installed 10, 20, and 60 feet deep in each of the foundation monoliths 18, 23, and 29. These measured foundation movement during construction and initial impoundment. Currently these meters are read monthly and show only minor movement (1–3 mm cyclic motion correlated to pool elevation).

g. Uplift pressure cells. Uplift pressure cells are installed at the foundation in monoliths 14, 18, 23, 29, 34, and 41. Pressure cells are used to monitor both drainage effectiveness and

foundation uplift pressure. Gradients downstream of the grout curtain are reported well below design assumptions.

h. Resistance thermometers. Temperature data to delineate the varying thermal profile through the monoliths is collected infrequently from resistance thermometers installed in monoliths 29 and 33. The stabilized mean ultimate interior temperature of the dam is 44–46 degrees Fahrenheit. Changing water and ambient air temperature mainly causes concrete temperature changes.

i. Strong motion accelerographs. Instruments to record the response of the dam to seismic motion are installed in the dam (2), powerhouse (1), and downstream above the right abutment. No earthquakes have occurred of sufficient magnitude to trigger the instruments.

j. Extensometers. Numerous types of wire and rod extensometers are installed to monitor potential movement in the left abutment nearby a series of rock tendons set after a rockslide that occurred in 1971. X-type (wire) extensometers are used to monitor movement at specific rock joints.

k. Tiltmeters. Tiltmeter stations are collocated with plumb lines in monoliths 23 and 35 in the upper and lower service gallery, and in the drainage and grouting gallery. Data from portable and installed tiltmeters are collected on a monthly basis. Automated tiltmeter data from the upper service gallery is collected on a weekly basis from the same elevation as the plumb line reading station. The portable tiltmeter system operates by a vertically oriented, uniaxial, force-balanced, servo accelerometer, with a tilt resolution of 10 arc seconds, assuming measurements are made in two orientations in a horizontal plane (instrument is rotated by 180 degrees between readings).

C-7. Dam and Powerhouse Structure Alignment Surveys. Laser alignment surveying represents a major part of the data collected about the overall behavior of the structure. Surveying provides a comprehensive picture of movement trends and/or anomalies unlike most other types of instrumentation. Alignment offsets are measured at a series of monuments located next to each monolith joint. The reference line is established using a projected laser beam between two fixed points located on monoliths 6 and 46. The laser beam does not directly occupy the alignment reference line during a given measurement campaign. Instead, four separate alignment segments are established between the endpoints of the primary alignment. No information is collected to tie the endpoints of the laser survey to reference monuments in stable areas outside of the structure.

C-8. Abutments and Surroundings.

a. Left Abutment. Analysis of several years of instrumentation data suggests that movement is occurring deep within the left abutment rib. Movements define a very large wedge of rock, failing at its toe by rotation and/or deflection slightly upstream and moving along a complex set

of joint surfaces. Forces from the main portion of the block projecting into the dam foundation where it could create unacceptable levels of residual stress. Movement of possibly several inches may be necessary before full resistance of the buttress fill is realized. Jointmeters were installed in 1992 to verify that the observed rock movement is not affecting left abutment monoliths. Evaluation of deep seated left abutment movement is not yet complete. Upgraded monitoring of left bank instrumentation is anticipated depending on the results of the completed evaluation. One to several monitoring points could be incorporated into surveying scheme to provide data about surface deformations at the left abutment.

b. Reservoir rim slide activity. Minor erosion, sliding, and isolated areas of rock slope instability along the left bank of the reservoir have been observed. Inspections indicate that the reservoir banks appear to be in good condition and any unstable areas pose no threat to Libby Dam. If the need arises to collect further information on localized settlements or displacements in upstream areas, some additional monitoring points could be incorporated into the survey design.

c. Regional effects. Local tectonic activity and cyclic loading of the reservoir were investigated early on by means of: a regional gravity network; a tiltmeter on the right bank 3 miles upstream; a five station seismic network for microearthquake monitoring; and a trilateration survey network in the vicinity of the dam to monitor horizontal displacements. In years of operation no significant seismicity related to impoundment was exhibited.

C-9**.** Summary of Instrumentation**.** The deformation monitoring scheme at Libby consists of two parts: structural monitoring of the dam itself and geotechnical monitoring of the unstable slope at the left abutment. The main deformation monitoring scheme at the dam consists of:

-Suspended plumb lines in monoliths 23 and 35 (from the top to the Drainage/Grouting gallery);
-Inverted (floating) plumb lines anchored about 10 m into bedrock and extended to the upper gallery at monoliths 6 and 46;
-Inverted (floating) plumb lines anchored about 10 m into bedrock and extended to the drainage and grouting gallery where they meet with the two suspended plumb lines;
-Laser Alignment System in the upper gallery between monoliths 6 and 46 of a total length of 760 m with two target stations at each monolith;
-Two in-situ installed and one portable tiltmeters in the upper gallery in monolith 35
-Jointmeters between a number of monoliths; and
-In addition, a number of pressure cells, thermistors, piezometers, strong motion accelerographs, and deformation meters with automatic data recording installed in the foundation monoliths are observed. No geodetic observations except the laser alignment system are conducted at Libby Dam. Several borehole extensometers (wire and rod Multi-Point Borehole Extensometer type) are installed and monitored at the slope of the left abutment

C-10. Upgrades to Gallery Traversing System**.**

a. General. The recent development of precision total stations (e.g., Leica TCA1800 and TCA2003) with self-pointing to corner cube reflectors permits efficient, semi-automatic measurements to a number of targets in a robotic mode. Monitoring deflections of the monoliths using geodetic measurement techniques consists of running a traverse along the center of the inspection gallery. Targets mounted on the monolith walls would be observed from the traverse stations. For maximum reliability and efficiency, the targets should be permanently mounted corner cube reflectors. It would then be possible to use ATR to perform the measurements. With appropriate data collection software, all the observer would have to do at each instrument setup is point the instrument approximately at each target in one round of observations. The total station would then be guided by the data collector to do the rest of the observations on its own.

b. Traversing system configurations. Because the measurements are made from tripod setups, each different survey configurations uses temporary theodolite stations, with control being defined by selected wall targets. Observations are made between adjacent theodolite stations, meaning that the surveys will require up to three tripods and the use of forced centering techniques. Two different possibilities have been considered for providing survey control.

-Endpoint Station Control. The first and last monoliths in the survey are considered to be stable. These two monoliths each have three permanently mounted prisms with fixed positions as the only control points in the survey (a datum bias is introduced if one of the end monoliths is unstable).
-Plumb line Station Control. The second method uses plumb line data control, which improves reliability and accuracy. Each monolith with a plumb line will have an additional, permanently mounted, reflector prism serving as control. Movements indicated by the differences in plumb line readings will be introduced as movements of these control points in the adjustment of the survey data.

Three different preanalysis trials were made for the traversing system. The first scheme is shown in Figure C-11, which uses the endpoint monoliths as survey control. Theodolite station spacing is 100 meters, or every 6th monolith, with a theodolite setup in each of the two end monoliths. The second scenario is shown in Figure C-12. It is similar to the first, but 200 m spacing between theodolites is used. The third observation scheme is shown in Figure C-13. It uses 200 m station spacing, but plumb line data is used to control the survey. All scenarios use a standard deviation of 1.0" for direction measurements, 2.0" for zenith angle measurements, and 1.0 mm for distance measurements; these specifications are based on, for example, a Leica TCA1800 total station.

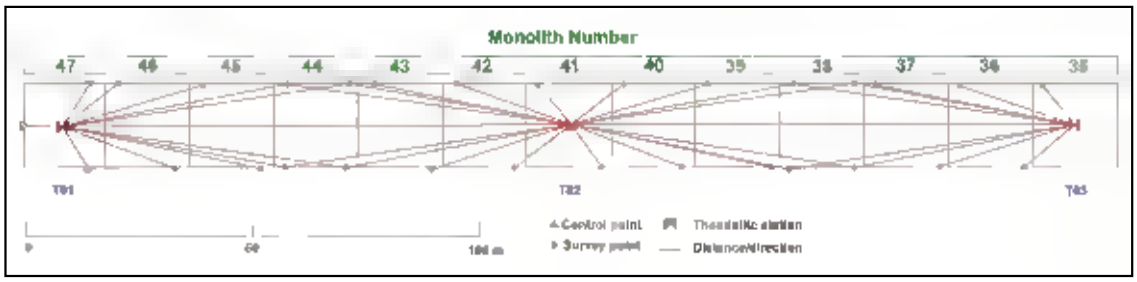


Figure C-11. 3D traverse survey with 100 m station spacing.

Figure C-11 shows a 3D traverse survey with sighting between adjacent theodolite stations. Maximum sight length to target is 60 m requiring 8 instrument setups, and 144 direction, distance, and zenith angle measurements. The largest U/D stream standard deviation is 1.2 mm or 3.3 mm at 95% confidence. This configuration gives good results in all three dimensions. The maximum dimension of any error ellipse for a single epoch is 3.0 mm at the 95% confidence level.

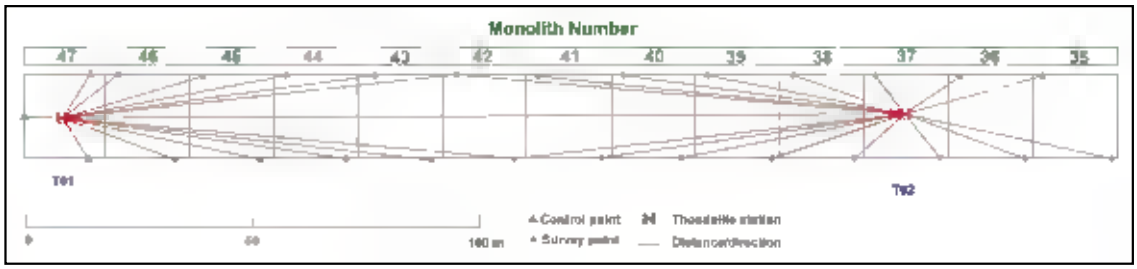


Figure C-12. 3D geodetic survey with 200 m station spacing.

Figure C-12 shows a 3D traverse survey with sighting between adjacent theodolite stations. Maximum sight length to target is 100 m requiring 5 instrument setups, and 99 direction, distance, and zenith angle measurements. The largest U/D stream standard deviation is 1.4 mm or 3.8 mm at 95% confidence. This configuration requires considerably less work than the survey with 60 m station spacing, with slightly lower precision.

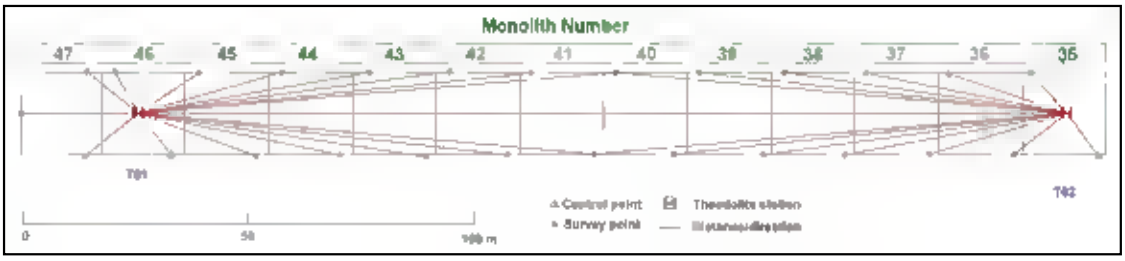


Figure C-13. 3D geodetic survey with 200 m station spacing and plumb line control.

Figure C-13 shows a 3D traverse survey with sighting between adjacent theodolite stations. Maximum sight length to target is 100 m (with plumb line control) requiring 6 instrument setups, and 108 direction, distance, and zenith angle measurements. The largest U/D stream standard deviation is 0.7 mm or 1.8 mm at 95% confidence. This configuration gives much better results than the other schemes because of the plumb line control distributed at points along the traverse. The survey using 200 m station spacing and plumb line control is the preferred alternative. It provides excellent precision, with a manageable number of observations. The observation effort could be further reduced by using only one target per monolith. It would then be very easy to complete the survey in a few hours by one observer.

C-11. Upgrades to Other Instrumentation**.**

a. Plumb lines. Suspended and inverted plumb lines are among the most reliable types of instrumentation that can be used for the measurement structural displacement and tilt. Data from the suspended and inverted plumb lines should be combined to yield displacements of the top of the suspended plumb line with respect to the anchor of the inverted plumb line. It would also be possible to monitor the movement of the suspension point by performing GPS measurements on the deck immediately above the plumb line.

b. Tilt measurements. Tiltmeters should be carefully calibrated for thermal and temporal drift. Changes in structural tilt indicated by the plumb line readings are of the order of 30 arc seconds (variation of approximately 18 mm at monolith 23, with a distance from the anchor point of 120 m assumed).

c. Geodetic leveling. The level of observed changes in tilt given by the plumb lines could easily be detected by using geodetic leveling. A good-quality geodetic level and careful observation procedures should be capable of determining height differences with a standard deviation of 0.1 mm. If the survey benchmarks are located a distance of 4 m apart, this gives an angular precision of 5 arc seconds for a single survey. Tilt differences would be determined with an accuracy of:

$$(5)(1.96)(\sqrt{2}) = 14 \text{ arc seconds.}$$

Tilt differences could be evaluated in both the upstream/downstream and left/right directions, as indicated in Figure C-14. This gives leveling a decided advantage over tiltmeter measurements, which have a stated standard deviation of 10 arc seconds and need frequent calibration.

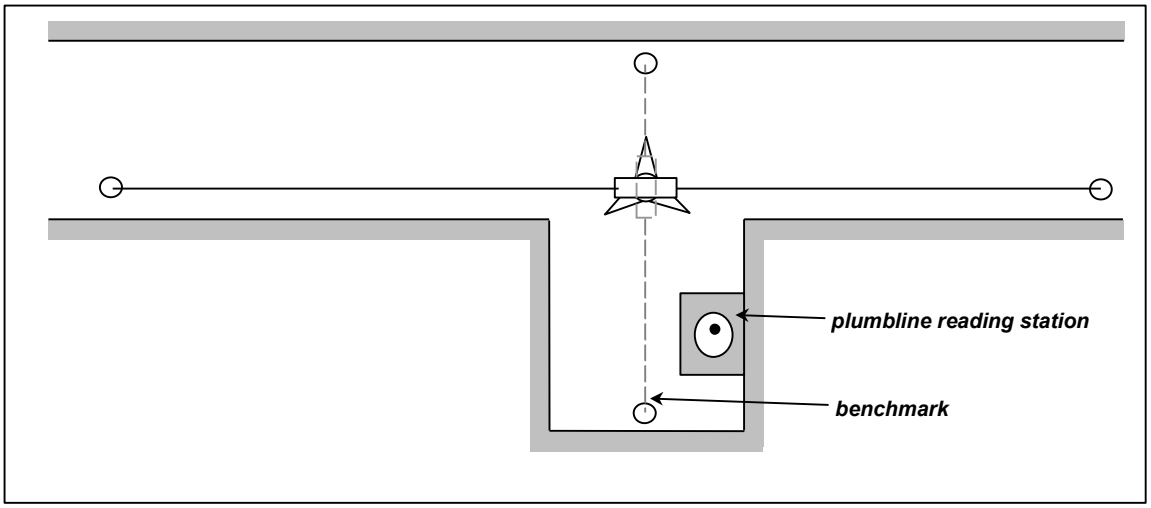


Figure C-14. Tilt measurement with a geodetic level.

d. Vertical movement within galleries. Monitoring schemes are primarily concerned with upstream/downstream structural movements. However, seasonal variations in water level and temperature can result in vertical structural movements as well, possibly with a greater magnitude than the upstream/downstream deflections. Instrumentation can provide verification of the expected vertical movements and/or structural expansion. Determination of vertical structural movements, and an evaluation of possible structural expansion, can be accomplished if an observation scheme is implemented as shown in Figure C-15. Within each gallery, a survey benchmark can be installed on each monolith to be monitored. Measurements in an individual gallery will yield the relative vertical displacements between monoliths at the gallery height.

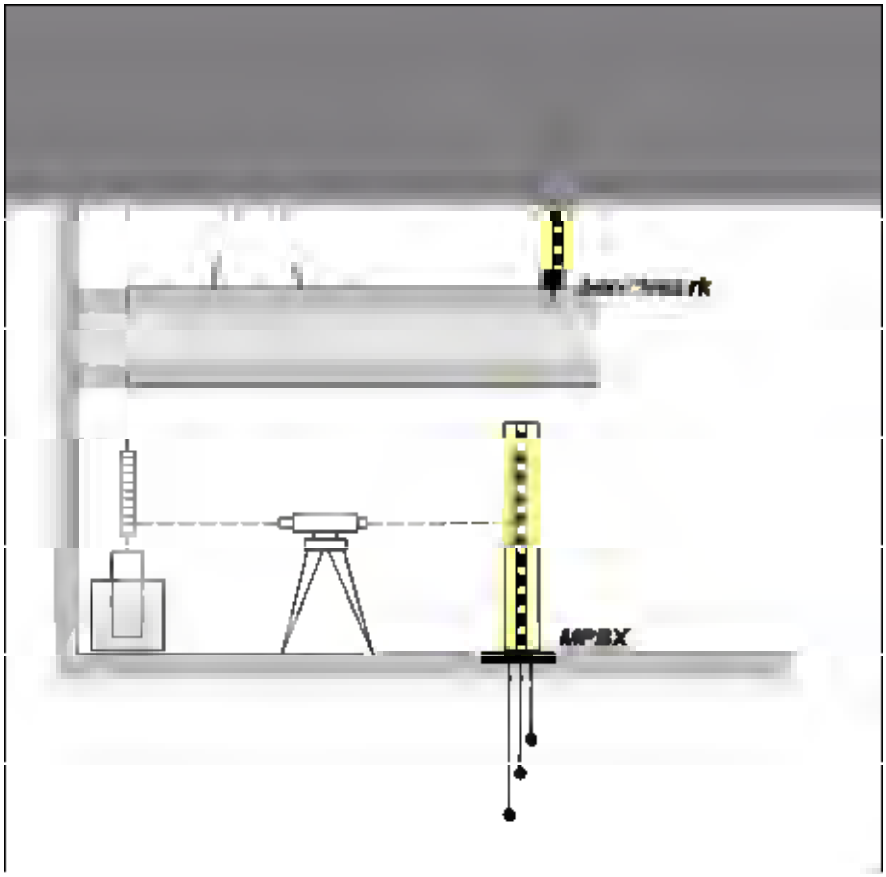


Figure C-15. Measurement of vertical structural expansion with invar wire.

e. Vertical movement between galleries. To determine the relative height changes between the different galleries (caused by expansion of the structure), a suspended invar wire with attached scales is used. At each gallery, the scale is observed along with the benchmarks. A change in height difference between the scale and a nearby benchmark (located in the same monolith) represents the change in height between the benchmark and the wire suspension point. This is valid only if the wire has a much lower coefficient of thermal expansion than does the structure, and this is why invar wire should be used.

f. Vertical movement between the dam and bedrock. The inter-gallery changes in height differences are all made with respect to the structure itself. To determine whether or not there is a rigid-body movement of the structure with respect to the underlying bedrock, a Multi-point Borehole Extensometer (MPBX) is installed near the lowest reading station. This MPBX must have anchors deep in the bedrock. If the height differences from the wire scale to the MPBX reference plate are combined with the MPBX readings, the change in height difference can then be derived for any of the wire scales with respect to the bedrock and thus for any of the gallery benchmarks with respect to the bedrock.

C-12. Upgrades to Geodetic Surveying Systems. Conventional geodetic surveying and GPS surveying systems are proposed for positioning points on the upper deck of the dam crest (Figure C-16). Representative preanalysis trials and measurement schemes developed for these surveys are illustrated in the Figures C-17 and C-18.

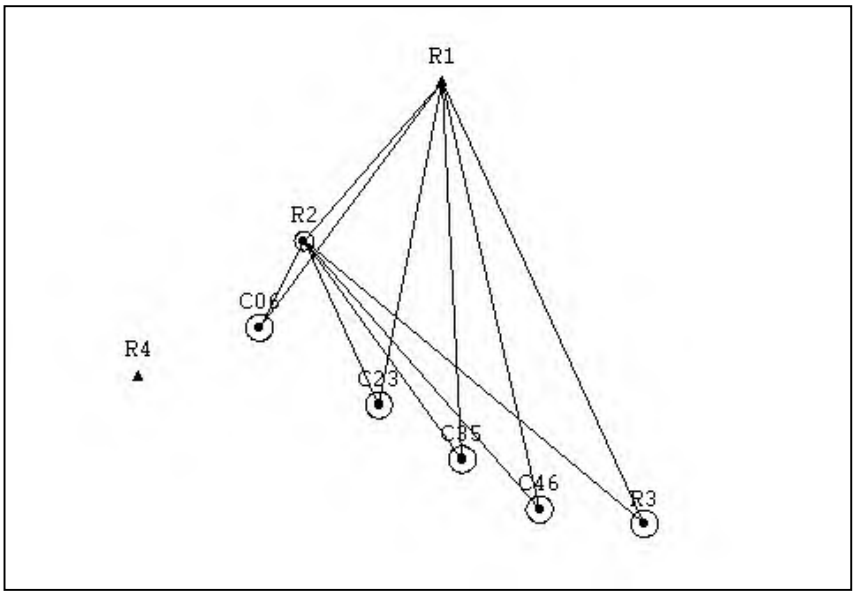


Figure C-16. Schematic plan of monitoring survey.

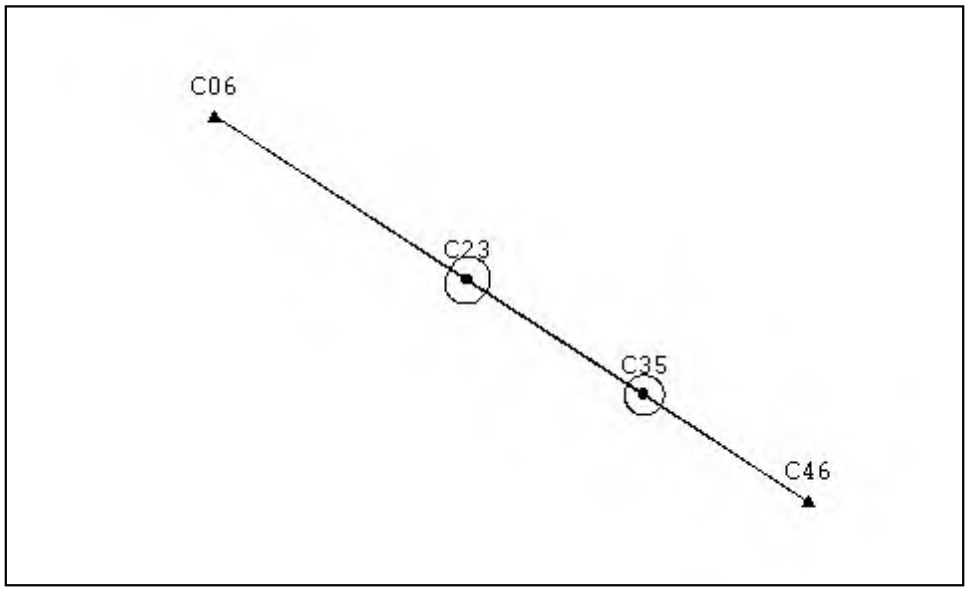


Figure C-17. GPS reference network preanalysis.

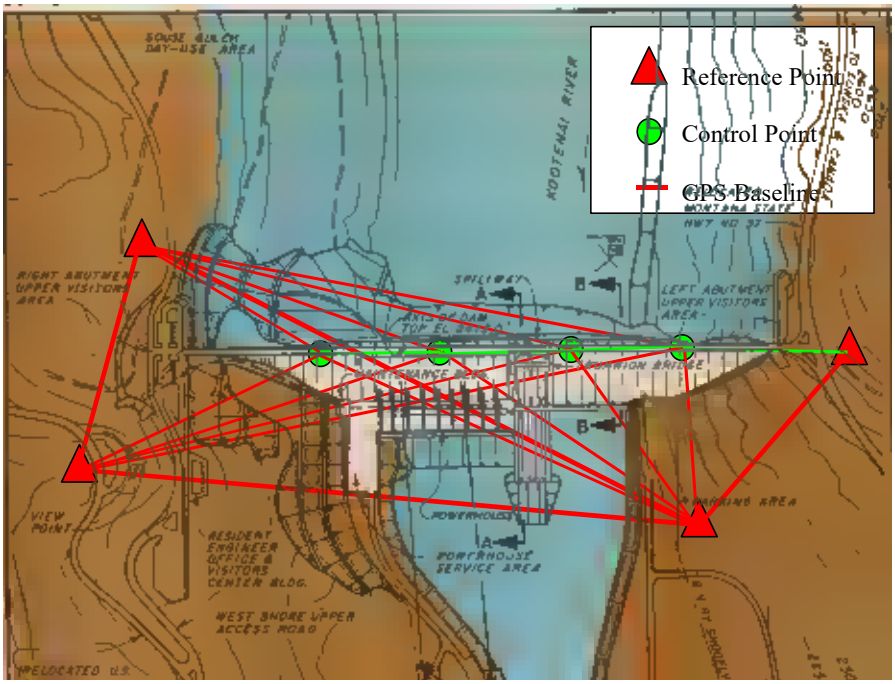


Figure C-18. Structure control network.

C-13. Schematic Design of Monitoring.

a. Reference network. Area monitoring network consists of 4 GPS stations with:
-2 GPS stations in a stable area within one kilometer from the dam (downstream areas may generally be more stable); and
-optionally, 1–2 GPS stations at the unstable slope to provide control for the results coming from the borehole extensometers.

b. Structure control network. Structural monitoring network consists of:

-2 GPS stations at the upper deck on monoliths 6 and 35, supplemented (if needed) by two survey stations (pillar type with the self-centering plates) at monoliths 23 and 46 to connect the network with the plumb lines in those monoliths.

c. Localized networks. Local Structural monitoring consists of:

-GPS or conventional geodetic surveys across the crest of the structure, or geodetic traversing in the upper service gallery, between plumb lines at monoliths 6, 23, 35, and 46;
-leveling between monoliths 6 to 46 with one benchmark in each of the intermediate monoliths;
-existing (four) inverted and (two) suspended plumb lines;
-existing jointmeters;

-one vertical invar wire extensometer with leveling scales at the upper gallery, lower gallery, and in the drainage gallery;
-one vertical borehole rod extensometer (MPBX type) in the drainage gallery, with three rods of 5m, 10m, and 15 m in the bedrock (if possible); and
-existing borehole extensometers at the face of the unstable slope.

Largest Position Error: 2.0 mm
Number of Stations: Total 5 (1-fixed and 4-unknown)
Number of Setups: 5 Occupations (Stations R1, R2, R3, C06, C46)
Number of Observations: 33 measurements
Repeated Observations: 2 (baselines)
Instrument: Geodetic Quality GPS receiver

2D and 1D Station Confidence Regions (99.000 percent):

STATION	MAJOR SEMI-AXIS (m)	VERTICAL (m)
C06	0.0020	0.0017
C23	0.0020	0.0017
C35	0.0020	0.0017
C46	0.0020	0.0017
R2	0.0014	0.0012
R3	0.0020	0.0017

Comments: Reference network surveys using only GPS systems. Survey scheme meets accuracy requirements using additional ties to points located on the structure.

Description: Structure Network
Largest 2D Position Error: 3.1 mm
Number of Stations: Total 4 (2-fixed and 2-unknown)
Number of Setups: 4 Occupations (C06, C23, C35, C46)
Number of Observations: 20 measurements
Repeated Observations: 2 (repeated sets)
Instrument: Total Station

2D and 1D Station Confidence Regions (99.000%):

STATION	MAJOR SEMI-AXIS (m)	VERTICAL (m)
C23	0.0031	0.0155
C35	0.0026	0.0113

Comments: 2-point structure control network on dam using only conventional surveys. Survey scheme ties the plumb line stations with observations from traversing only between endpoints. The survey meets accuracy requirements. Forced centering is used to reduce centering error in angle measurement.

APPENDIX D

Yatesville Lake Dam Network Adjustment Example

D-1. Sample Adjustment – Yatesville Lake Dam.

INPUT DATA

```
 TITL Yatesville Lake Dam 16th Observation
 ELIP GRS 80            6378137.0000  6356752.3141
 COMP ADJ
 PADJ YES NO  NO  NO  NO  NO
 PRES YES NO
 PSOL YES YES
 RTST TAU MAX
 PMIS YES YES
 CONV     0.0001
 MAXI         10
 VARF YES YES NO
 CONF YES YES NO  YES NO
 LUNT ft     0.3048006096
 CLEV       95.0
 LAMB KYN1601 n 37 30 w 84 15   0.0000  500000.0000 n 38 58 n 37 58  1.0 m

*Reference Station Coordinates

 NEO  111 R-1              231672.634      2087616.903    682.105  KYN1601
 NEO  111 R-2              231581.816      2086624.431    682.250  KYN1601
 NEO  111 R-3              231897.263      2087483.998    682.247  KYN1601
 NEO  111 R-4              231717.570      2086570.072    682.732  KYN1601

*Monitoring Station Coordinates

 NEO  000 C-1              231697.820      2087338.110    680.370  KYN1601
 NEO  000 C-2              231704.340      2087188.450    680.340  KYN1601
 NEO  000 C-3              231710.460      2087038.150    680.320  KYN1601
 NEO  000 C-4              231717.360      2086888.340    680.300  KYN1601
 NEO  000 C-5              231724.560      2086738.540    680.280  KYN1601
 NEO  000 D-1              231866.180      2087190.540    655.740  KYN1601
 NEO  000 D-2              231872.090      2087040.500    655.710  KYN1601
 NEO  000 D-3              231878.660      2086891.070    655.830  KYN1601
 NEO  000 U-1              231570.700      2087176.720    660.230  KYN1601
 NEO  000 U-2              231576.970      2087027.520    660.540  KYN1601
 NEO  000 U-3              231581.980      2086877.240    660.350  KYN1601

*Horizontal Angle Observations

 ANGL     R-1          R-4          U-1          344 30   18.50       1.97
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          U-2          348 19   23.00       1.75
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          U-3          350 33   15.30       1.64
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          C-1            2 42   19.50       2.69
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          C-2            1 46   28.70       2.01
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          C-3            1 16   55.10       1.76
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          C-4            1  3   16.80       1.65
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          C-5            0 55   31.30       1.59
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          D-1           21 57   27.50       2.26
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          D-2           16 37   48.20       1.74
 ANGL     R-1          R-4          D-3           13 23   18.90       1.64
```

ANGL	R-4	R-1	U-1	11	9	3.70	1.71
ANGL	R-4	R-1	U-2	14	37	36.10	1.91
ANGL	R-4	R-1	U-3	21	21	29.40	2.36
ANGL	R-4	R-1	C-1	359	0	53.20	1.62
ANGL	R-4	R-1	C-2	358	46	3.70	1.71
ANGL	R-4	R-1	C-3	358	24	40.50	1.92
ANGL	R-4	R-1	C-4	357	34	45.70	2.43
ANGL	R-4	R-1	C-5	355	9	53.30	3.18
ANGL	R-4	R-1	D-1	344	4	22.50	1.71
ANGL	R-4	R-1	D-2	339	21	32.60	1.88
ANGL	R-4	R-1	D-3	330	53	32.00	2.53

*Distance Observations

DIST	R-1	U-1	452.374	0.0051
DIST	R-1	U-2	597.508	0.0054
DIST	R-1	U-3	745.544	0.0057
DIST	R-1	C-1	279.948	0.0049
DIST	R-1	C-2	429.643	0.0050
DIST	R-1	C-3	580.016	0.0053
DIST	R-1	C-4	729.973	0.0057
DIST	R-1	C-5	879.943	0.0060
DIST	R-1	D-1	468.998	0.0049
DIST	R-1	D-2	610.542	0.0054
DIST	R-1	D-3	755.003	0.0059
DIST	R-2	U-1	552.872	0.0054
DIST	R-2	U-2	403.735	0.0051
DIST	R-2	U-3	253.770	0.0049
DIST	R-2	C-1	723.094	0.0058
DIST	R-2	C-2	577.216	0.0054
DIST	R-2	C-3	433.294	0.0051
DIST	R-2	C-4	296.703	0.0049
DIST	R-2	C-5	182.774	0.0047
DIST	R-3	C-1	247.126	0.0048
DIST	R-3	C-2	352.963	0.0050
DIST	R-3	C-3	483.427	0.0053
DIST	R-3	C-4	622.264	0.0057
DIST	R-3	C-5	765.236	0.0061
DIST	R-3	D-1	296.296	0.0049
DIST	R-3	D-2	445.017	0.0054
DIST	R-3	D-3	593.831	0.0058
DIST	R-4	U-1	624.623	0.0054
DIST	R-4	U-2	479.110	0.0051
DIST	R-4	U-3	336.535	0.0049
DIST	R-4	C-1	768.341	0.0058
DIST	R-4	C-2	618.551	0.0054
DIST	R-4	C-3	468.170	0.0051
DIST	R-4	C-4	318.295	0.0049
DIST	R-4	C-5	168.650	0.0047
DIST	R-4	D-1	638.628	0.0055
DIST	R-4	D-2	495.922	0.0052
DIST	R-4	D-3	360.176	0.0054

*Zenith Angle Observations

ZANG	R-1	U-1	92	46	23.50	2.00
ZANG	R-1	U-2	92	4	2.39	2.33
ZANG	R-1	U-3	91	40	25.10	2.75
ZANG	R-1	C-1	90	21	16.00	2.00
ZANG	R-1	C-2	90	14	8.70	2.03

```
 ZANG      R-1           C-3                          90 10   35.30        2.11
 ZANG      R-1           C-4                          90  8   35.70        2.23
 ZANG      R-1           C-5                          90  7   11.20        2.32
 ZANG      R-1           D-1                          93 13   22.60        2.20
 ZANG      R-1           D-2                          92 28   38.20        2.64
 ZANG      R-1           D-3                          91 59   38.90        2.85
 ZANG      R-4           U-1                          92  3   55.30        2.83
 ZANG      R-4           U-2                          92 39   15.70        2.57
 ZANG      R-4           U-3                          93 48   46.20        2.24
 ZANG      R-4           C-1                          90 10   37.60        2.42
 ZANG      R-4           C-2                          90 13   19.00        2.36
 ZANG      R-4           C-3                          90 17   44.50        2.24
 ZANG      R-4           C-4                          90 26   14.30        2.14
 ZANG      R-4           C-5                          90 49   54.70        2.06
 ZANG      R-4           D-1                          92 25   22.00        2.77
 ZANG      R-4           D-2                          93  7   23.20        2.56
 ZANG      R-4           D-3                          94 17    0.40        2.29

*Orthometric Height Difference Observations

 OHDF      R-1           C-1                            -1.733       0.006
 OHDF      C-1           C-2                            -0.027       0.003
 OHDF      C-2           C-3                            -0.025       0.003
 OHDF      C-3           C-4                            -0.014       0.003
 OHDF      C-4           C-5                            -0.022       0.003
 OHDF      C-5           R-4                             2.451       0.006
 OHDF      R-1           U-1                           -21.882       0.012
 OHDF      U-1           U-2                            0.3208       0.003
 OHDF      U-2           U-3                            -0.193       0.003
 OHDF      U-3           R-2                            21.883       0.012
 OHDF      R-3           D-1                           -26.484       0.012
 OHDF      D-1           D-2                            -0.027       0.003
 OHDF      D-2           D-3                             0.116       0.003
 OHDF      D-3           R-4                            26.886       0.012

 END
```

ADJUSTMENT OUTPUT

```
================================================================================
Yatesville Lake Dam 16th Observation
GeoLab V2.4d      UNITS: ft,DMS     GRS 80     08:15:19, Thu Jun 16, 1998
================================================================================
INI file:    C:\WINDOWS\GEOLAB.INI
Input file:  C:\GEOLAB2\YATES\YLD16.IOB
Output file: C:\GEOLAB2\YATES\YLD16.LST
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
              PARAMETERS                          OBSERVATIONS
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    Description          Number          Description           Number
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
  No. of Stations            15         Directions                 0
  Coord Parameters           33         Distances                 38
  Free Latitudes             11         Azimuths                   0
  Free Longitudes            11         Vertical Angles            0
  Free Heights               11         Zenithal Angles           22
  Fixed Coordinates          12         Angles                    22
  Astro. Latitudes            0         Heights                    0
  Astro. Longitudes           0         Height Differences        14
  Geoid Records               0         Auxiliary Params.          0
  All Aux. Pars.              0         2-D Coords.                0
  Direction Pars.             0         2-D Coord. Diffs.          0
  Scale Parameters            0         3-D Coords.                0
  Constant Pars.              0         3-D Coord. Diffs.          0
  Rotation Pars.              0
  Translation Pars.           0
                           --------                              --------
Total Parameters            33         Total Observations        96
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Degrees of Freedom = 63

                        SUMMARY OF SELECTED OPTIONS
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    OPTION                                  SELECTION
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------
    Computation Mode                        Adjustment
    Maximum Iterations                      10
    Convergence Criterion                   0.00010
    Confidence Level for Statistics         95.000
    Covariance Matrix Computation           Full
    Residual Rejection Criterion            Tau Max
    Confidence Region Types                 1D 2D Station
    Variance Factor (VF) Known              Yes
    CMULT (Multiply Parm Cov With VF)       Yes
    RMULT (Multiply Res Cov With VF)        No
    Full Inverse Computed                   Yes
    Normals Reordered                       Yes
    Coordinates Generated                   No
    Geoid Interpolation Method              Bi-Linear
```

MISCLOSURES

TYPE AT	FROM	TO	OBSERVATION	STD.DEV.	MISC
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-1	344 30 18.5	2.0	-4.9
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-2	348 19 23.0	1.8	-1.5
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-3	350 33 15.3	1.6	1.5
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-1	2 42 19.5	2.7	-4.7
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-2	1 46 28.7	2.0	-1.3
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-3	1 16 55.1	1.8	-1.9
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-4	1 3 16.8	1.6	1.2
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-5	0 55 31.3	1.6	-0.4
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-1	21 57 27.5	2.3	-0.3
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-2	16 37 48.2	1.7	-2.0
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-3	13 23 18.9	1.6	-0.2
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-1	11 9 3.7	1.7	1.8
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-2	14 37 36.1	1.9	2.0
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-3	21 21 29.4	2.4	5.3
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-1	359 0 53.2	1.6	1.1
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-2	358 46 3.7	1.7	-0.1
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-3	358 24 40.5	1.9	3.7
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-4	357 34 45.7	2.4	1.7
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-5	355 9 53.3	3.2	4.7
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-1	344 4 22.5	1.7	-0.8
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-2	339 21 32.6	1.9	-2.4
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-3	330 53 32.0	2.5	1.6
DIST	R-1	U-1	452.3740	0.0051	0.0102
DIST	R-1	U-2	597.5080	0.0054	0.0087
DIST	R-1	U-3	745.5440	0.0057	0.0101
DIST	R-1	C-1	279.9480	0.0049	0.0005
DIST	R-1	C-2	429.6430	0.0050	0.0078
DIST	R-1	C-3	580.0160	0.0053	0.0052
DIST	R-1	C-4	729.9730	0.0057	0.0023
DIST	R-1	C-5	879.9430	0.0060	0.0019
DIST	R-1	D-1	468.9980	0.0049	0.0046
DIST	R-1	D-2	610.5420	0.0054	-0.0023
DIST	R-1	D-3	755.0030	0.0059	0.0004
DIST	R-2	U-1	552.8720	0.0054	-0.0036
DIST	R-2	U-2	403.7350	0.0051	-0.0116
DIST	R-2	U-3	253.7700	0.0049	-0.0010
DIST	R-2	C-1	723.0940	0.0058	-0.0080
DIST	R-2	C-2	577.2160	0.0054	-0.0086
DIST	R-2	C-3	433.2940	0.0051	-0.0086
DIST	R-2	C-4	296.7030	0.0049	0.0010
DIST	R-2	C-5	182.7740	0.0047	-0.0060
DIST	R-3	C-1	247.1260	0.0048	-0.0009
DIST	R-3	C-2	352.9630	0.0050	0.0026
DIST	R-3	C-3	483.4270	0.0053	0.0026
DIST	R-3	C-4	622.2640	0.0057	0.0046
DIST	R-3	C-5	765.2360	0.0061	0.0089
DIST	R-3	D-1	296.2960	0.0049	0.0070
DIST	R-3	D-2	445.0170	0.0054	0.0100
DIST	R-3	D-3	593.8310	0.0058	0.0076

MISCLOSURES

TYPE AT	FROM	TO	OBSERVATION	STD.DEV.	MISC
DIST	R-4	U-1	624.6230	0.0054	-0.0114
DIST	R-4	U-2	479.1100	0.0051	-0.0030
DIST	R-4	U-3	336.5350	0.0049	-0.0092
DIST	R-4	C-1	768.3410	0.0058	-0.0049
DIST	R-4	C-2	618.5510	0.0054	0.0058
DIST	R-4	C-3	468.1700	0.0051	-0.0071
DIST	R-4	C-4	318.2950	0.0049	-0.0008
DIST	R-4	C-5	168.6500	0.0047	-0.0103
DIST	R-4	D-1	638.6280	0.0055	-0.0072
DIST	R-4	D-2	495.9220	0.0052	-0.0039
DIST	R-4	D-3	360.1760	0.0054	0.0002
ZANG	R-1	U-1	92 46 23.5	2.0	3.5
ZANG	R-1	U-2	92 4 2.4	2.3	-6.5
ZANG	R-1	U-3	91 40 25.1	2.8	1.8
ZANG	R-1	C-1	90 21 16.0	2.0	-3.7
ZANG	R-1	C-2	90 14 8.7	2.0	-0.8
ZANG	R-1	C-3	90 10 35.3	2.1	-2.3
ZANG	R-1	C-4	90 8 35.7	2.2	2.1
ZANG	R-1	C-5	90 7 11.2	2.3	-0.9
ZANG	R-1	D-1	93 13 22.6	2.2	-1.0
ZANG	R-1	D-2	92 28 38.2	2.6	-4.9
ZANG	R-1	D-3	91 59 38.9	2.9	-4.5
ZANG	R-4	U-1	92 3 55.3	2.8	-0.2
ZANG	R-4	U-2	92 39 15.7	2.6	-4.2
ZANG	R-4	U-3	93 48 46.2	2.2	-4.1
ZANG	R-4	C-1	90 10 37.6	2.4	-0.3
ZANG	R-4	C-2	90 13 19.0	2.4	-1.7
ZANG	R-4	C-3	90 17 44.5	2.2	-0.5
ZANG	R-4	C-4	90 26 14.3	2.1	-3.3
ZANG	R-4	C-5	90 49 54.7	2.1	-5.3
ZANG	R-4	D-1	92 25 22.0	2.8	-1.7
ZANG	R-4	D-2	93 7 23.2	2.6	-3.9
ZANG	R-4	D-3	94 17 0.4	2.3	-1.9
EHDF	R-1	C-1	-1.7330	0.0060	-0.0020
EHDF	C-1	C-2	-0.0270	0.0030	-0.0030
EHDF	C-2	C-3	-0.0250	0.0030	0.0050
EHDF	C-3	C-4	-0.0140	0.0030	-0.0060
EHDF	C-4	C-5	-0.0220	0.0030	0.0020
EHDF	C-5	R-4	2.4510	0.0060	0.0010
EHDF	R-1	U-1	-21.8820	0.0120	0.0070
EHDF	U-1	U-2	0.3208	0.0030	-0.0108
EHDF	U-2	U-3	-0.1930	0.0030	0.0030
EHDF	U-3	R-2	21.8830	0.0120	0.0170
EHDF	R-3	D-1	-26.4840	0.0120	-0.0230
EHDF	D-1	D-2	-0.0270	0.0030	-0.0030
EHDF	D-2	D-3	0.1160	0.0030	0.0040
EHDF	D-3	R-4	26.8860	0.0120	0.0160

ADJUSTED NEO COORDINATES (Reference Stations)

CODE	FFF	STATION	NORTHING STD DEV	EASTING STD DEV	O-HEIGHT STD DEV	MAPPROJ
NEO	111	R-1	231672.6340 0.0000	2087616.9030 0.0000	682.1050 0.0000	KYN1601
NEO	111	R-2	231581.8160 0.0000	2086624.4310 0.0000	682.2500 0.0000	KYN1601
NEO	111	R-3	231897.2630 0.0000	2087483.9980 0.0000	682.2470 0.0000	KYN1601
NEO	111	R-4	231717.5700 0.0000	2086570.0720 0.0000	682.7320 0.0000	KYN1601

ADJUSTED NEO COORDINATES (Monitoring Stations)

CODE	FFF	STATION	NORTHING STD DEV	EASTING STD DEV	O-HEIGHT STD DEV	MAPPROJ
NEO	000	C-1	231697.8239 0.0024	2087338.1127 0.0025	680.3734 0.0017	KYN1601
NEO	000	C-2	231704.3414 0.0026	2087188.4534 0.0023	680.3451 0.0018	KYN1601
NEO	000	C-3	231710.4664 0.0026	2087038.1552 0.0023	680.3205 0.0018	KYN1601
NEO	000	C-4	231717.3605 0.0025	2086888.3414 0.0023	680.3052 0.0016	KYN1601
NEO	000	C-5	231724.5637 0.0019	2086738.5470 0.0024	680.2838 0.0012	KYN1601
NEO	000	D-1	231866.1792 0.0030	2087190.5461 0.0024	655.7464 0.0025	KYN1601
NEO	000	D-2	231872.0906 0.0028	2087040.5051 0.0025	655.7199 0.0023	KYN1601
NEO	000	D-3	231878.6622 0.0030	2086891.0720 0.0027	655.8359 0.0023	KYN1601
NEO	000	U-1	231570.7087 0.0028	2087176.7277 0.0025	660.2268 0.0023	KYN1601
NEO	000	U-2	231576.9741 0.0028	2087027.5281 0.0025	660.5493 0.0022	KYN1601
NEO	000	U-3	231581.9820 0.0027	2086877.2482 0.0024	660.3560 0.0022	KYN1601

RESIDUALS

(critical value = 3.504):

TYPE AT	FROM	TO	OBSERVATION	RESIDUAL	STD RES
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-1	344 30 18.5	-1.8	-1.4
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-2	348 19 23.0	-0.5	-0.4
ANGL R-1	R-4	U-3	350 33 15.3	1.7	1.3
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-1	2 42 19.5	-1.7	-1.0
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-2	1 46 28.7	-0.5	-0.3
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-3	1 16 55.1	0.5	0.4
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-4	1 3 16.8	1.3	0.9
ANGL R-1	R-4	C-5	0 55 31.3	0.6	0.4
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-1	21 57 27.5	0.5	0.3
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-2	16 37 48.2	-1.3	-1.0
ANGL R-1	R-4	D-3	13 23 18.9	0.5	0.4
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-1	11 9 3.7	-1.6	-1.2
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-2	14 37 36.1	-0.8	-0.6
ANGL R-4	R-1	U-3	21 21 29.4	2.2	1.6
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-1	359 0 53.2	-0.0	-0.0
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-2	358 46 3.7	-0.5	-0.4
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-3	358 24 40.5	0.9	0.7
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-4	357 34 45.7	1.4	1.0
ANGL R-4	R-1	C-5	355 9 53.3	0.6	0.4
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-1	344 4 22.5	-0.0	-0.0
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-2	339 21 32.6	-1.9	-1.6
ANGL R-4	R-1	D-3	330 53 32.0	0.9	0.6
DIST	R-1	U-1	452.37400	0.0009	0.2281
DIST	R-1	U-2	597.50800	-0.0003	-0.0556
DIST	R-1	U-3	745.54400	0.0015	0.3063
DIST	R-1	C-1	279.94800	-0.0019	-0.4906
DIST	R-1	C-2	429.64300	0.0045	1.0975
DIST	R-1	C-3	580.01600	0.0004	0.0859
DIST	R-1	C-4	729.97300	0.0009	0.1864
DIST	R-1	C-5	879.94300	-0.0050	-0.9516
DIST	R-1	D-1	468.99800	-0.0016	-0.4173
DIST	R-1	D-2	610.54200	-0.0074	-1.6738
DIST	R-1	D-3	755.00300	-0.0011	-0.2223
DIST	R-2	U-1	552.87200	0.0041	0.9087
DIST	R-2	U-2	403.73500	-0.0041	-0.9908
DIST	R-2	U-3	253.77000	0.0067	1.6943
DIST	R-2	C-1	723.09400	-0.0047	-0.9416
DIST	R-2	C-2	577.21600	-0.0050	-1.0598
DIST	R-2	C-3	433.29400	-0.0018	-0.3996
DIST	R-2	C-4	296.70300	0.0024	0.5768
DIST	R-2	C-5	182.77400	0.0012	0.2831
DIST	R-3	C-1	247.12600	-0.0057	-1.3969
DIST	R-3	C-2	352.96300	-0.0011	-0.2477
DIST	R-3	C-3	483.42700	-0.0046	-0.9979
DIST	R-3	C-4	622.26400	0.0031	0.6163
DIST	R-3	C-5	765.23600	0.0012	0.2193
DIST	R-3	D-1	296.29600	0.0005	0.1289
DIST	R-3	D-2	445.01700	0.0042	0.9480

RESIDUALS

(critical value = 3.504):

TYPE AT	FROM	TO	OBSERVATION	RESIDUAL	STD RES
DIST	R-3	D-3	593.83100	0.0053	1.1113
DIST	R-4	U-1	624.62300	-0.0058	-1.3055
DIST	R-4	U-2	479.11000	0.0031	0.7507
DIST	R-4	U-3	336.53500	-0.0030	-0.7783
DIST	R-4	C-1	768.34100	-0.0023	-0.4694
DIST	R-4	C-2	618.55100	0.0092	1.9861
DIST	R-4	C-3	468.17000	-0.0020	-0.4592
DIST	R-4	C-4	318.29500	0.0005	0.1364
DIST	R-4	C-5	168.65000	-0.0032	-0.8759
DIST	R-4	D-1	638.62800	-0.0017	-0.3722
DIST	R-4	D-2	495.92200	0.0006	0.1438
DIST	R-4	D-3	360.17600	0.0025	0.6040
ZANG	R-1	U-1	92 46 23.5	1.8	1.2
ZANG	R-1	U-2	92 4 2.4	-3.4	-1.6
ZANG	R-1	U-3	91 40 25.1	3.4	1.3
ZANG	R-1	C-1	90 21 16.0	-1.2	-0.9
ZANG	R-1	C-2	90 14 8.7	1.7	1.0
ZANG	R-1	C-3	90 10 35.3	-2.1	-1.1
ZANG	R-1	C-4	90 8 35.7	3.5	1.6
ZANG	R-1	C-5	90 7 11.2	-0.0	-0.0
ZANG	R-1	D-1	93 13 22.6	1.7	1.0
ZANG	R-1	D-2	92 28 38.2	-1.6	-0.6
ZANG	R-1	D-3	91 59 38.9	-2.9	-1.1
ZANG	R-4	U-1	92 3 55.3	-1.2	-0.4
ZANG	R-4	U-2	92 39 15.7	-0.0	-0.0
ZANG	R-4	U-3	93 48 46.2	-0.1	-0.1
ZANG	R-4	C-1	90 10 37.6	0.7	0.3
ZANG	R-4	C-2	90 13 19.0	0.0	0.0
ZANG	R-4	C-3	90 17 44.5	-0.3	-0.1
ZANG	R-4	C-4	90 26 14.3	0.1	0.1
ZANG	R-4	C-5	90 49 54.7	-0.5	-0.5
ZANG	R-4	D-1	92 25 22.0	0.4	0.2
ZANG	R-4	D-2	93 7 23.2	0.3	0.1
ZANG	R-4	D-3	94 17 0.4	1.6	1.0
OHDF	R-1	C-1	-1.73300	0.0014	0.2570
OHDF	C-1	C-2	-0.02700	-0.0014	-0.7042
OHDF	C-2	C-3	-0.02500	0.0004	0.2296
OHDF	C-3	C-4	-0.01400	-0.0013	-0.6835
OHDF	C-4	C-5	-0.02200	0.0006	0.2837
OHDF	C-5	R-4	2.45100	-0.0028	-0.4848
OHDF	R-1	U-1	-21.88200	0.0038	0.3277
OHDF	U-1	U-2	0.32080	0.0017	1.0556
OHDF	U-2	U-3	-0.19300	-0.0003	-0.1841
OHDF	U-3	R-2	21.88300	0.0110	0.9415
OHDF	R-3	D-1	-26.48400	-0.0166	-1.4262
OHDF	D-1	D-2	-0.02700	0.0005	0.3296
OHDF	D-2	D-3	0.11600	-0.0000	-0.0223
OHDF	D-3	R-4	26.88600	0.0101	0.8668

ADJUSTMENT STATISTICS

```
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
S T A T I S T I C S  S U M M A R Y
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Residual Critical Value Type                    Tau Max
     Residual Critical Value                          3.5042
     Number of Flagged Residuals                           0
     Convergence Criterion                            0.0001
     Final Iteration Counter Value                         3
     Confidence Level Used                           95.0000
     Estimated Variance Factor                        0.6826
     Number of Degrees of Freedom                         63

-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
Chi-Square Test on the Variance Factor:

                  4.9528e-01  <  1.0000  <  1.0013e+00

                            THE TEST PASSES

 NOTE:  All confidence regions were computed using the following factors:
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
     Variance factor used      =          0.6826
     1-D expansion factor      =          1.9600
     2-D expansion factor      =          2.4477

For relative confidence regions, precisions are computed from the ratio of the
major semi-axis and the spatial distance between the two stations.
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
2-D and 1-D Station Confidence Regions (95.000 percent):
STATION        MAJOR SEMI-AXIS      AZMTH    MINOR SEMI-AXIS      VERTICAL
-------------------------------------------------------------------------------
C-1              0.0066               128      0.0052               0.0033
C-2              0.0067               149      0.0052               0.0036
C-3              0.0067               155      0.0052               0.0036
C-4              0.0066               148      0.0052               0.0032
C-5              0.0061               106      0.0045               0.0024
D-1              0.0074               178      0.0060               0.0049
D-2              0.0069                 3      0.0062               0.0045
D-3              0.0074                17      0.0065               0.0046
U-1              0.0068                11      0.0061               0.0046
U-2              0.0068               175      0.0060               0.0043
U-3              0.0068               162      0.0058               0.0043
```

HISTOGRAMS

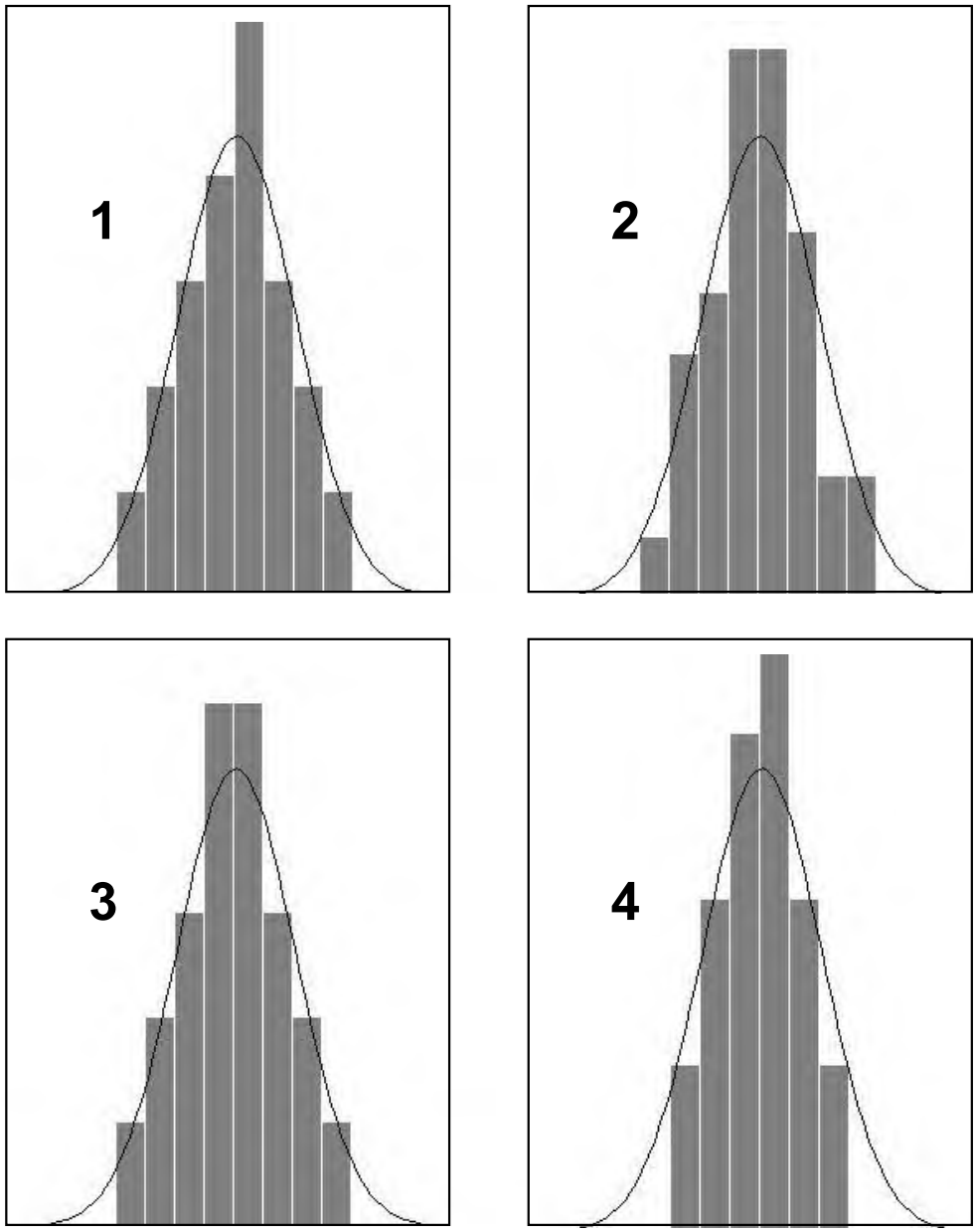


Figure D-1. Adjustment histograms of the measurement residuals plotted for different observation types. (1) Histogram of horizontal angle observations. (2) Histogram of distance observations. (3) Histogram of zenith angle observations. (4) Histogram of height difference observations. Each example is normally distributed with no observation outliers present. The horizontal axis indicates the magnitude of the residual. Residuals are grouped into different classes, each covering a portion of the total range of observed values. The vertical axis indicates the relative frequency or number of residuals found in each class.

NETWORK MAPS

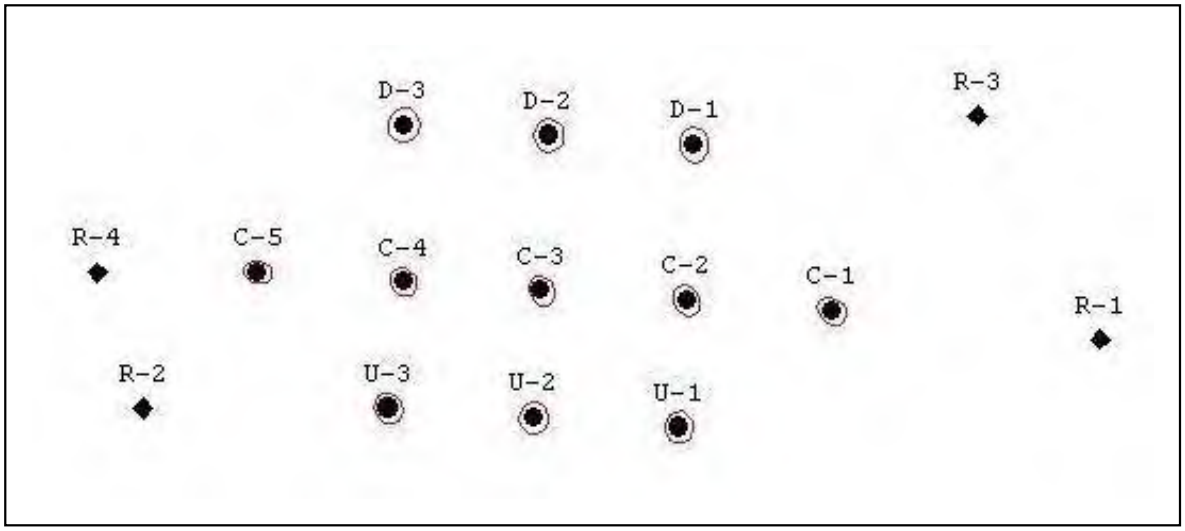


Figure D-2. Adjustment network map (plan view) showing station names, relative locations, and the point confidence ellipse (95%) for horizontal positioning plotted around each point. Network map and confidence ellipses are plotted at different scales. Circles indicate monitoring points and diamonds represent reference stations.

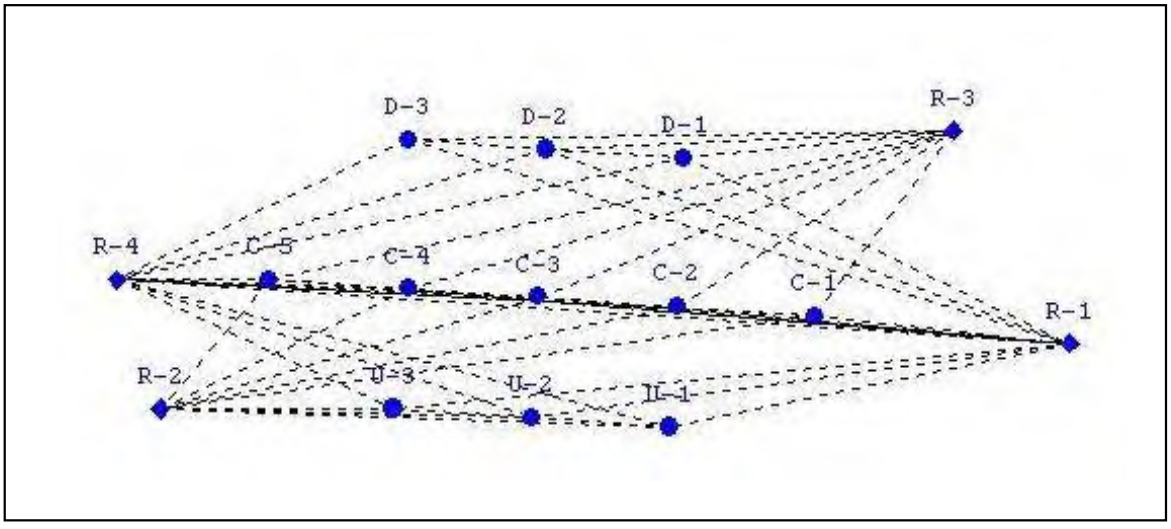


Figure D-3. Adjustment network map showing station names and connections between points based on observations made during data collection. R-1 through R-4 are reference stations, C-1 through C-5 are centerline monitoring points, U-1 through U-3 are upstream monitoring points at the base of the structure, D-1 through D-3 are downstream monitoring points at the base of the structure.

APPENDIX E

Laser Alignment Surveys and Instrumentation

E-1. Laser Alignment Techniques.

a. General. Different techniques for conducting laser alignment surveys are presented in this section. These are related to methods for conducting surveys using single target alignments, two target alignments, and laser scanning systems.

b. Single target laser alignment. The main disadvantage of early laser alignment systems is that they only employed a single target. The target placed at a reference station establishes one end of the LOS and the center of the laser beam is the other end of the LOS. For single target surveys, the laser source is first carefully aimed at the center of the target, then the operator moves the target from its reference position to use it at intermediate locations. There are two problems with single target laser alignment:

(1) the operator is unaware of any movement of the laser beam; and

(2) alignment errors are introduced unless the reference laser position is frequently checked.

The only way to check for beam movement is to stop alignment operations, remove the target from its working location, and move it to the reference station position. The position of the laser beam on the target at the reference station is then checked, and the laser beam re-aimed if necessary. This method is only useful for detecting slow variations in laser beam position at the reference station, for example, caused by thermal disturbances in the structure being aligned, or in long-term (e.g., geologic) instabilities at the laser source location. High frequency disturbances such as vibration cannot be corrected at all.

c. Two target laser alignment. If two targets are used, then the measurement becomes more accurate because of the addition of a reference target situated at the far end of the LOS that constantly monitors beam position. The intermediate target used by the operator must allow for passage of light through to reach the reference target. The intermediate target is called the alignment or transparent target. In this approach, two different pointing compensation methods are used with transparent targets, namely, passive and active systems.

(1) Passive pointing compensation. If the 2D coordinates of the laser beam on the reference and alignment target are measured simultaneously, then the position of the alignment target with respect to a line between the laser and the reference target can be measured independent of any pointing error of the laser. The laser beam need not even be precisely aimed onto the center of the reference target. Instead, the coordinates of the laser beam at both targets are used to compensate for any laser beam movement. When the position of the laser beam is sampled rapidly, the system compensates for thermal pointing errors, initial alignment errors, and vibration errors. In Figure E-1 the line between the center of the reference target and the center

of the laser beam source defines the LOS, not the laser beam. The laser beam is shown directed upward representing a laser pointing error. The transparent alignment target is shown centered with respect to the LOS. The pointing or wedge error as measured at the reference target is (h), because of similar triangles the pointing error is h' or (d/D) · (h) at the alignment target. Subtracting this error from the measured beam position at the alignment target results in a compensated (C_{XY}) alignment measurement, or true position of the target in both the x and y axes:

$$C_{XY} = h'_{XY} - (d/D)(h_{XY}) \qquad \text{(Eq E-1)}$$

The LOS is defined by two points: one point being the center of the laser case and the other being the center of the reference target. The constants d and D are measured in the field or have been previously entered into the computer. Absolute target distances are not required, only the ratiometric distance, d/D. In some applications, absolute distances are known and entered into the computer interface. In other applications, ratiometric distances are more convenient to use. This technique is particularly useful at long laser-to-target distances, as angular errors at the laser create large position errors at the targets. Another advantage of passive pointing compensation is that the operator does not have to precisely aim the laser to dead center on the target. This allows operators to quickly set up the system. Because of how this technique uses geometric principles, it is called similar triangle compensation or passive pointing compensation.

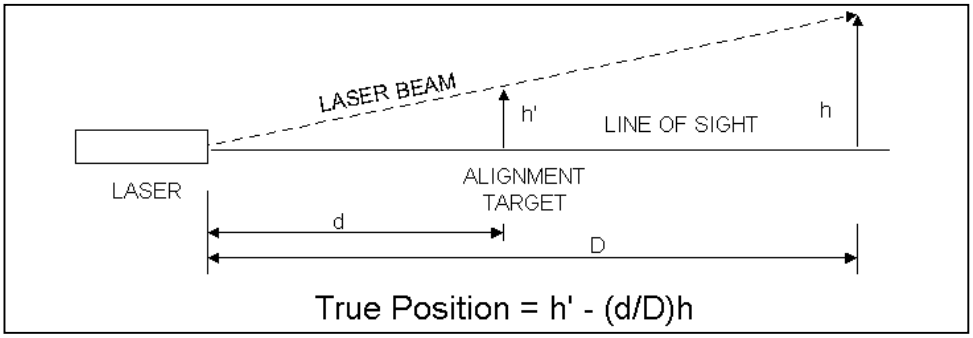


Figure E-1. Geometry of a two target laser alignment.

(2) Active pointing compensation. Perhaps the most recent method to compensate for errors in steering the laser beam, due to thermal, mechanical or atmospheric effects, is to actively steer the laser. This technique uses all of the same components as passive pointing compensation, except the laser is now fitted with internal or external pitch and yaw pointing actuators. The reference target sends its error signals back to the laser where beam steering occurs to null out the error. The system acts as an optical servo mechanism. One advantage of this method over that of the similar triangle method is that absolute or ratiometric distances are not needed. Since the laser is always on the reference target center, no mathematical compensation needs to be applied. Any transparent target placed in the beam at any distance from the laser simply determines beam position. In this method the laser beam is the LOS.

(3) Scanning systems. Scanning systems can be a simple single-axis laser system that is manually rotated, or have 3 axes with each axis motor driven. The simplest laser sources for these types of system are small boxes with leveling feet and bubble vials. The user must set up the source to a level condition before it can be used. For three axis systems, once a level has been established, the other two axes will sweep out vertical planes of light that are perpendicular to each other. The most sophisticated scanning sources sweep out the beam automatically via a motor and they also contain internal level sensors. Some even control the degree of "levelness" by servo correcting the source if it moves off of level. A simpler method uses a pendulum on which a lightweight laser diode source is attached. The targets for these type of sources are always one dimensional. For a manually rotated source, the electronics are similar to 2D targets; the user must aim the beam by hand into the target's window. For dynamic scanning, the targets use very fast detectors as the beam sweeps by in only a few microseconds for a target located at some distance and a scan rate of 60 RPMs or higher. Sometimes LEPs are used as the sensor. For very high speed systems a bi-cell sensor is used. The sensor is rectangular and oriented in its long direction. A typical size would be 30 mm tall by 5 mm wide. But this sensor is split along its diagonal into two triangular shaped photodetectors. The two triangular shaped parts of the bi-cell are each connected to a timing circuit. When the time the laser beam spends on each segment is equal, the beam is exactly in the middle of the bi-cell. Deviations up or down produce a difference in timing that is exactly proportional to distance. The main advantage of scanning systems is that many targets can be placed in the scan zone. It has a 360 degree scanning window and is designed mainly for leveling applications with accuracy the same as simple laser alignment.

E-2. Laser Alignment Error Sources**.**

a. General. Any laser alignment system has associated measurement errors. Even if active and passive pointing compensation is not employed, any transparent target must not produce steering or deviation of the laser beam as it passes through it. The system's accuracy depends on the laser beam traveling in a straight line from the laser, through (possibly several) transparent target(s) and finally to the reference target. The transparent target will usually have: some sort of a beam splitter; and have windows on each end of it. Each window and the beam splitter possess a small amount of wedge error that acts to mis-steer the beam. Although the wedge error of these components is usually small (tens of arc seconds), at long distances the displacement error can become large. There are two types of errors which can be injected into the error compensation equation; those due to steering of the laser beam by the transparent target (wedge angle error), and those due to the target being slightly tipped (deviation error).

b. Wedge angle error. Rotation adjustment of the wedge prisms on the transparent target allows for the refractive error to be adjusted to less than one arc second. Figure E-2 shows a two target system with the laser beam initially centered on the alignment target. The alignment target is shown with a wedge error of δ and it steers the incident laser beam away from the LOS. The laser beam strikes the surface of the reference target at a distance of (D-d) δ from its center. The compensation equation then produces an error, ε, of magnitude:

$$\varepsilon = (d/D)\ \delta\ (D-d) \qquad \text{(Eq E-2)}$$

due to the wedge error δ of the transparent alignment target. Inspection shows this error is zero when the alignment target is situated at a distance of 0 or D from the laser source. If the alignment target was situated next to the reference target (d = D), then it would impart no significant steering error at the reference target. If it were located next to the laser (d = 0), then the wedge error as seen at the alignment target is also zero. The error is greatest when the alignment target is located halfway between the laser source and the reference target. Table E-1 below shows how transparent target wedge error affects system alignment accuracy as a function of laser-to-reference target distance (D). The table assumes the alignment target is situated at D/2, or at one-half of the laser-to-reference target distance.

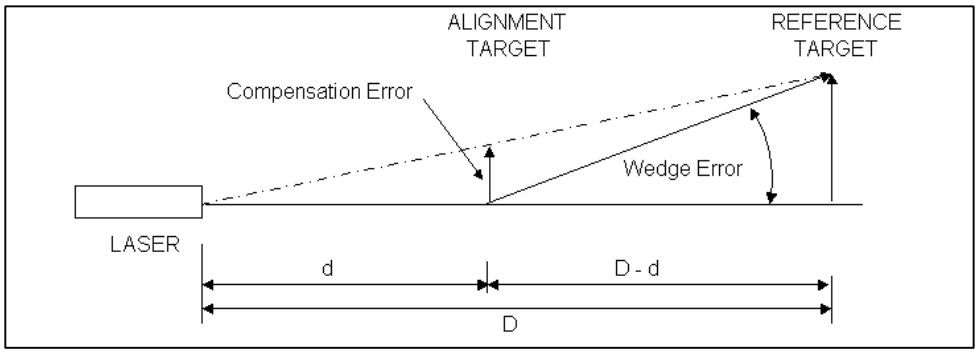


Figure E-2. Two target alignment showing wedge error.

Table E-1. Compensation error due to residual target wedge angle.

Wedge(δ)	50-ft	100-ft	300-
10 arcsec	0.0075 in.	0.015 in.	0.045 in.
1 arcsec	0.00075 in.	0.0015 in.	0.0045 in.
.5 arcsec	0.00037 in.	0.00075 in.	0.0022 in.

c. Target deviation. Another error source is due to tipping of the target, causing a deviation of the laser beam as it passes through the windows and/or beam splitter. Deviation errors do not grow with distance as do pointing errors. Table E-2 below indicates the magnitude of deviation error due to target tipping in yaw or pitch for a total glass thickness of 8 mm. This thickness represents the thickness of the windows and beamsplitter in a transparent target.

d. Target accuracy. Most modern position sensitive targets used in alignment contain dedicated microprocessors. They can communicate their data over a bus or through the air with optical data links. The electronics of each target usually consist of a microprocessor; non-volatile, electrically erasable programmable memory (EEPROM); analog-to-digital converters;

filters; and serial communication drivers. Targets come in a variety of different sensing areas and virtually all use lateral photodiode detectors to sense laser beam position. Quad-cells are almost never used due to their small sensing range. Since each lateral photodiode detector has slightly different linearity, manufacturers now calibrate each target on a precision motion platform. Stored within each target are corrections for its detector. The result is that all targets are metrologically identical. A good rule of thumb for target accuracy is 1 part in 500 of a target's sensor diameter. For example, a target with a LEP sensor diameter of 1 inch would have a position accuracy of $\pm$0.002 inches.

Table E-2. Deviation error due to target tipping.

Tipping Angle	Error
1 degree	0.0018 in.
3 degrees	0.0054 in.

E-3. Laser Beam Propagation.

a. General. A propagating laser beam does not remain parallel as is frequently assumed. Even with "perfect" projection optics, the laser beam obeys the laws of physics; the dominant law here is diffraction. All laser beams follow a prescribed propagation characteristic that depends on two conditions:

(1) how the beam was launched, and

(2) what type of disturbances it encounters along it path.

The first is greatly controllable; the second is usually not.

b. Laser beam launch conditions. The only two parameters which govern how a laser beam behaves after it is launched are: initial diameter and wavelength (Yoder, 1986). For a given wavelength, the larger the initial diameter the less the beam will spread with distance. For a given distance, a laser beam with a long wavelength will grow in diameter faster than a laser beam of a shorter wavelength. These propagation characteristics are embedded in the exact equation below which is a result of electromagnetic theory.

$$\varpi_z = \varpi_0 \cdot \text{sqrt}\,[1+(\lambda z/\pi\varpi^2_0)^2] \qquad \text{(Eq E-3)}$$

where $\varpi 0$ is the initial laser beam radius; ϖz is the laser beam radius at a distance z from the source, and λ is the wavelength of light. At long distances the equation simplifies to:

$$\varpi_z = (\lambda z/\pi\varpi 0) \qquad \text{(Eq E-4)}$$

It can be seen how two quantities govern beam spread; wavelength, and initial diameter. A laser whose beam is approximately parallel over a reasonable distance is called a collimated beam. Approximately is an appropriate term, because any propagating laser beam has associated with it, a waist, or the place along the beam path where it has the smallest diameter. Sometimes this waist is located some distance from the laser source. At other times, the beam waist is at the laser source. The beam waist is chosen to be located at a certain point, and to possess a particular diameter, depending on desired beam propagation characteristics. There is a distance over which the laser beam remains essentially parallel which is called its depth of field. The depth of field of a propagating laser beam is defined as the distance over which the laser beam does not grow by more than sqrt (2) of its initial diameter or its waist diameter. Table E-3 below illustrates the relationship between initial beam diameter and depth of field. The beam waist is located exactly in the middle of the depth of field. The diameter of the beam waist is 1/sqrt (2) or 0.707 of the initial beam diameter. The chart assumes a wavelength (λ) of 635 nanometers, which is the wavelength of the visible diode lasers used in laser tooling. The z-range over which this conditions holds for an initial beam diameter of d_i is:

$$Z_R = (\pi d^2{}_i) / (4\lambda) \qquad \text{(Eq E-5)}$$

Table E-3. Depth of field for different laser beam diameters.

Initial Diameter	Depth of Field (m)	Depth of Field (feet)
1 mm	1.2	4
4 mm	20	64
10 mm	123	403
20 mm	492	1614
25 mm	769	2522

c. Atmospheric conditions. A beam of light propagating in a vacuum obeys the laws of diffraction and is not affected by any other source. The index of refraction for a vacuum is defined as exactly equal to one (1). However, in an atmosphere the beam will behave differently. The index of refraction of air being slightly larger (than one) causes changes in the propagation characteristics of a light beam. Two dominant effects on the beam are to make it move or quiver, and another that is commonly called "scintillation;" which means the intensity of the light beam varies as a function of time.

(1) Refraction. Much work has been conducted on the effects of atmospheric turbulence on propagating light. The index of refraction of air being different along the path length causes these two effects. The index of refraction of air is strongly affected by temperature, and to a lesser extent pressure and water vapor pressure (humidity). An expression for the index of refraction (n) due to temperature (T), pressure (P), and humidity (H) is given by:

$$n = 1+10^{-6}(79/T)\,[P+(4800H/T)] \qquad \text{(Eq E-6)}$$

where T is in degrees Kelvin ($K^o = C^o+273$), and where P and H are in millibars. It can be appreciated that it is a weak effect by the 10^{-6} factor in front of the second term. For most applications, the expression is simplified by keeping pressure at a normal 1013 millibars and ignoring humidity.

(2) Scintillation. Perhaps the best known treatise on how the atmosphere affects light and sound propagation was by Tatarskii (1959). He identified how wind velocity affects scintillation and what the power spectral density was of the scintillations. He also determined how random side-to-side motions are scaled with distance and how propagation was affected by different atmospheric conditions. Measurements were made for all regions of the atmosphere, from the ground, through the troposphere, and into the stratosphere. Most of the measurements involved the frequency of the scintillations and not the positional shift of the light beam. Precision optical displacement devices and even lasers were not available when most measurements were made in the mid-1940's and early 1950's. Perhaps the most important contribution made was the introduction of atmospheric structure constants. These parameters provided information on how turbulent the atmosphere was including correlation distance as one of these important constants.

(3) Correlation distance. This is lateral distance from a propagating beam of light under which the scintillation and turbulence would be completely different for a neighboring beam. For a quiet atmosphere where there is gentle and thorough mixing of the air layers, the correlation distance ρ is equal to (Smith, 1993):

$$\rho = \text{sqrt}(\lambda L) \qquad \text{(Eq E-7)}$$

where λ is the wavelength of the light and L is the distance from the source. The correlation distance is important because it affects the choice of beam diameter. For example, if a range of L = 123 meters is used (from Table E-3, depth of field for a 10 mm diameter beam), then for a λ of 0.635 microns (0.635×10^{-6} m) the correlation distance is 8 mm. What this means is that since the laser beam diameter required for good collimation is approximately the same size as the correlation distance, the beam will undergo a slight amount of fading. The fading is due to one side of the beam interfering with the other side, after traveling a long distance, and so experiencing a different atmosphere. If the beam were less than the correlation distance this effect would not happen. Indeed, experience has shown in the field that on "long shots" if one holds a piece of paper up to beam at a long distance from the source, the spot on the paper will change shape quickly. It will be circular one moment and highly elliptical the next. A non-circular beam will cause errors in laser beam position measurement, because LEP targets measure the centroid of the laser beam.

d. Remedies to atmosphere effects. There are a few ways to remedy these atmospheric error effects. One is to make certain that there is no cross-beam wind component. This can be achieved with tubes physically enclosing the beam path. Another method is to blow air down the laser beam path with fans. The idea is to eliminate cross beam wind components with a down beam velocity component. If air conditioning is used in the building, it should be turned off as

the extremely cold air mixing with hot air gives rise to the worst beam deflections possible. Some other remedies are to change either the range or the wavelength used. For example, decreasing the alignment range to 50 meters would decrease the correlation distance to 5.6 mm. Conversely, if a blue wavelength laser were used with a λ of 0.42 microns, the correlation distance would be about 6.4 mm at 123 meters. The basic consideration in long distance shots is to have the beam diameter as small as or smaller than the correlation distance. The highest expected frequency of scintillations is:

$$f(\mathbf{v}) = \mathbf{v}/(\text{sqrt}\ (\lambda L)) \qquad \text{(Eq E-8)}$$

where **v** the cross-beam velocity component of the wind. It should be noted that L in this equation and the above one cannot take on any value—in this instance., the range L must be located in the far field of the source. Usually, this distance is on the order of 10 meters. For the same situation as above with L = 123 meters, λ of 0.635 microns, and a 1 meter/sec velocity, the maximum frequency of beam scintillation is 113 Hz. As in any data acquisition system, if one samples laser beam position at the target at least twice this frequency, then aliasing errors will not occur.

E-4. Laser Alignment Survey Example.

a. General. Laser alignment is a major tool in deformation monitoring surveys at both Libby and Chief Joseph Dams (Seattle District). The technology currently used dates back to the late 1960's when laser was still a novelty in engineering applications. At that time, intensive research was conducted on the propagation of laser in turbulent atmosphere (Chrzanowski and Ahmed, 1971), and on development of time integrated and self-aligning laser centering targets (Chrzanowski, 1974). The equipment employed at the Libby and Chief Joseph Dams is the simplest available at that time, consisting of a low power HeNe laser (with expected large thermal directional drift of its output), collimated with a 50 mm diameter collimator lens and a simple divided (Wheatstone bridge balancing) photodetector for sensing the center of energy of the laser beam. Since the detector does not perform a time integration of the scintillating laser spot, the alignment distance is limited by air turbulence to only about 250 m. The translation stage of the photodetector is also of a very old design equipped with a vernier readout whereas newer translation stages have micrometer or digital readout systems. Although the system can still give a resolution of better than 1 mm, it is cumbersome and labor intensive to use. The accuracy of the deflection measurements is designed to meet a 3 mm tolerance at the 95% confidence level. An upgraded laser system should have a beam-center detection precision in the range of $\pm$1-2 mm at the 95% confidence level at its maximum operating range. At most, a total uncertainty in deflection measurement should be no greater than 5 mm at the 95% confidence level.

b. Alignment equipment. The existing laser system has the following potential weaknesses:

-uses out-of-date technology;
-has a limited working range;
-requires excessive warm-up time;
-exhibits low reliability in beam centering at long range;
-lacks internal checks for station centering;
-lacks direct referencing to the alignment end-points;
-relies on manual reading and manual target alignment;
-experiences systematic drift in orientation during the survey;
-sensitive to atmospheric disturbances; and
-affected by refraction errors in the measurements.

The current laser system uses a Spectra-Physics LT-3, Stabilite model 120T HeNe gas laser, (model 257 exciter), with a Model 336 Multiwavelength Collimating Lens, 450-650 nm, 50 mm CA, 200 mm EFL@ 587.6 nm. The target system is a custom fabricated light sensor (detector). The target housing consists of a 6-inch diameter cylinder with a single vertical splitter plate dividing the casing into two chambers (bi-cell). A cadmium sulfide photo resistive cell is mounted to each chamber and wired into a Wheatstone bridge circuit. In use, the target sensor is known to be centered on the laser beam when the light intensity on the two photo resistive cells is equal as indicated by a null reading on a microamp meter. A translucent diffusion screen allows coarse beam centering to be performed by eye before fine measurement is attempted. The target sensor has both horizontal and vertical motion provided by a manually operated translation stage. Vertical travel range is 1.7 inches, horizontal travel is 4.0 inches. Target adjustments are made by threaded-rods (actuators) with the amount of travel referenced to horizontal and vertical vernier scales that are rigidly mounted to the target assembly.

c. Alignment surveys. Laser targets are forced centered into permanent floor or wall inserts next to each monolith joint. Offsets are recorded in the U/D stream direction between the target's zero position over the survey monuments, and the center of the laser beam. The operator translates the target onto the alignment by mechanical adjustment (actuators). Beam-position centering is made visually from meter readings and by moving the target until a null readout is obtained. The meter tends to display more erratic output as the target is moved to its maximum operating distance. Offset measurements are repeated three times on a vernier scale with 0.001-inch resolution. Reading errors are related mainly to system and operator bias, and to the operating resolution of the vernier scale. Data is recorded by hand on standard data cards that are printed on sheets of paper and then the data is transferred to a PC text file.

d. Gallery environment. Each gallery has overhead lamps that are turned off during the survey. Flashlights are needed to navigate between target stations. Movement in the gallery is restricted to avoid creating air currents across the laser beam or near the targets. Disturbed atmospheric conditions may delay work for up to 10 minutes after walking near a target station. This slows down the measurements and moving equipment during the surveys. Localized air turbulence also influences beam collimation and laser accuracy/detection performance. It takes

roughly 3–15 minutes to finish the readings at a single laser target station. Setup and warm-up times are approximately 30–40 minutes for each time the laser is moved to a new base segment station. Average survey completion times are on the order of 7–8 hours per gallery.

e. Laser survey procedures. Due to the length of the laser survey at the two dams (760 m at Libby Dam and 590 m at Chief Joseph Dam), the survey is broken into a number of segments. The adjacent segments are oriented relative to one another using common points observed in the overlap region. This observation scenario is depicted in Figure E-4. The offset measurements from the different laser segments are referred to the baseline between the two reference endpoints. Deterioration of the laser beam image with distance from the transmitter has restricted the segment length to approximately 800 feet (240 m), with about 250–340 feet (75–100 m) of overlap between segments. This results in a five-segment survey at Libby Dam and a four-segment survey at Chief Joseph Dam.

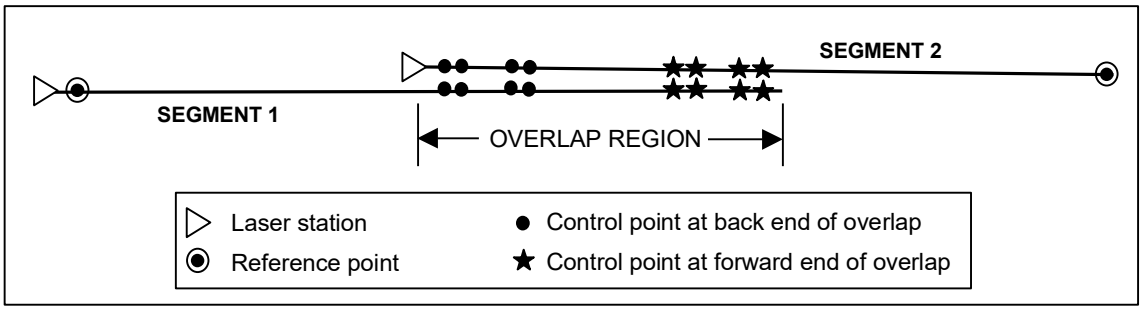


Figure E-3. Connection of laser survey segments by observation of common points.

f. Laser surveys and refraction. It has been observed that there is no way to quantitatively evaluate the problem of long-period distortions of the reference line due to refraction (which could be caused by horizontal temperature gradients), while the high-frequency, small-amplitude oscillations caused by atmospheric turbulence could be reduced by limiting the length of the traverse segments. High-frequency oscillations caused some difficulties for the observer in photo-electrically centering the target on the laser beam. Therefore, a survey procedure was developed which minimized the effects of atmospheric turbulence. At each survey segment, the survey would proceed from the end target (the one farthest away from the laser) to the closest target, so as to minimize the disturbance of air between the target and the laser. This procedure minimizes the effect of atmospheric turbulence on the readings, and allows the observer to collect a set of readings which have good internal precision (i.e., they are close to the same value). However, the effect of atmospheric turbulence is random, and thus will be averaged out if enough measurements are taken. The survey procedure does nothing to minimize the much more serious and difficult-to-detect problem of systematic refraction caused by horizontal temperature gradients. In fact, the effect of refraction is most pronounced when the measurements are collected in this way, because the air between laser and target is allowed to settle into thermal layers. The refraction problem can be reduced by disturbing or mixing the air

between laser and target, which causes the refraction to be randomized. This would also affect the internal precision of the survey, but the overall accuracy would be improved. At both Chief Joseph and Libby Dams, a horizontal temperature gradient could exist due to the fact that one wall of the gallery is closer to the pool while the other wall is closer to the outside air. Even if there is no gradient due to the two walls being different temperatures, it is quite possible that the walls themselves have a different temperature than the air in the gallery. For this reason, it is crucial to keep any optical lines of sight as far from the wall as possible. At Chief Joseph Dam, the laser survey is run down the center of the gallery; this is the best possible place for the survey. At Libby Dam, however, the survey is performed very close to the wall (less than 30 cm).

g. Alignment calculation procedures. To determine the relative orientation of the laser segments, a procedure is used as illustrated in Figure E-5. For each overlap region, a number of points are called 'forward' overlap points and others are called 'back' overlap points. Numerous trials are conducted to fit each possible pair of back and forward overlap points as 'control' points. In each trial, two control points are fixed to be coincident, and the average error of superposition is calculated for the rest of the overlap points. The combination of control points that yields the lowest average error of superposition is chosen to define the relative orientation of the adjacent segments. For the remaining overlap points, readings from the forward segment (i.e., the segment where the overlap points are closer to the laser) are used in the offset calculation, and data from the back segment is discarded. When all of the segments have been processed for relative orientation, the whole line is constrained by setting the offsets of the two endpoints to zero.

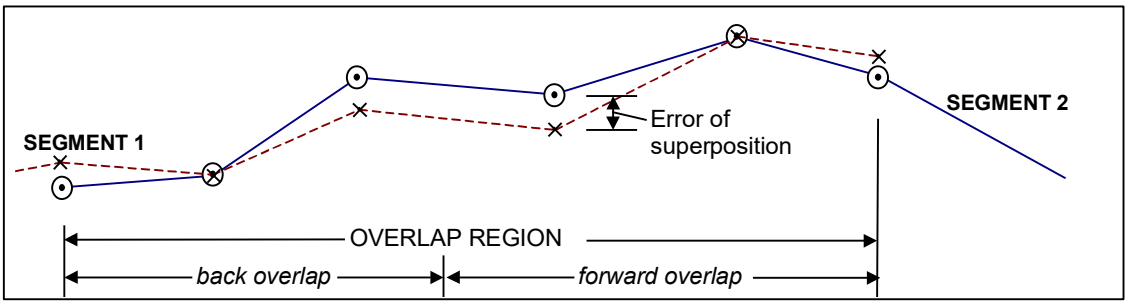


Figure E-4. Segment orientation using two overlap points.

Reducing the laser survey data by this method has several drawbacks.

-The overlap error at two points is artificially constrained to be zero, when it is known that these two points are observed with the same level of accuracy as the other overlap points.
-The method does not make optimal use of all available data. For example, data from the back segment of the overlap is discarded. Although the readings from the forward segment should be higher quality (due to the fact that the targets are closer to the laser in

this segment), this is not enough to justify ignoring the only redundant observations made in the survey. A better procedure for orienting traverse segments is to use data from all of the overlap points, while incorporating the knowledge that measurements from the back segment have a higher standard deviation than those in the forward segment.
-There is no way to include any external information to yield a better estimate of the offsets. The laser alignment procedure has the same error propagation characteristics as a straight survey traverse; where the uncertainty perpendicular to the survey line increases with distance from the control points. If additional information is used to constrain the measured offsets along the traverse (e.g., from plumb line data), it would dramatically improve the precision of the results.
-Statistical assessment of the offset solution is restricted to an analysis of the superposition error between individual segments. There is no calculation made of the estimated precision of the derived offset values based on the survey data.

In conclusion, it is recommended to use a more flexible and rigorous data reduction scheme, based on least squares methods, for processing the relative orientation of laser alignment segments.

h. Laser survey accuracy evaluation. From previous studies evaluating the precision of the laser system, it was concluded that the probable error (i.e., at the 50% confidence level), of the derived offset is $\pm$0.031 inches (0.79 mm). This corresponds to a standard deviation of:

$\sigma = \pm$ 0.042 inches (1.07 mm),

meaning that the derived deflections would have a 95% confidence value of:

(1.07) (sqrt (2)) (1.96) = 2.97 mm.

This accuracy evaluation is useful for understanding the internal precision of the alignment system. However, this evaluation does not account for the effect of systematic environmental influences and therefore does not indicate a real accuracy for the system. The data was reduced using four independent sets of survey control, but, all of the observations in each epoch were collected as part of the same observation campaign, and thus could have been affected by the same amount of systematic refraction. In order to get a valid accuracy assessment, there are two choices:

(1) Run the alignment survey several times under different atmospheric conditions and observe the spread in offset values. In this case, all of the surveys would have to be completed over a short period of time, so that movement of the structure does not affect the results.

(2) Compare the deflections obtained from the alignment surveys with collocated deflection data obtained from a different independent source.

The first option would require entirely new field observations. The second option, however, has been investigated using deflection data from plumb line readings at Libby Dam. A summary of this comparison indicates a standard deviation of 5.3 mm for the two sets of deflection values (i.e., differencing of pairs of data at the same epoch). A 95% confidence value of:

(5.3 mm) (1.96) = 10.4 mm

was obtained, and is a more realistic assessment of the accuracy of deflections from the laser alignment system. This result assumes that the Libby Dam plumb lines have been properly installed and carefully observed. This accuracy level can also be used to approximate accuracies for the Chief Joseph surveys, bearing in mind that it is slightly shorter than Libby Dam, and that it is run down the center of the gallery rather than close to one wall.

E-5. Suspended and Inverted Plumb lines. Suspended and inverted (floating) plumb lines are among the most accurate, easy to maintain, and reliable instruments used in structural monitoring. The two inverted plumb lines at Libby Dam Monoliths 6 and 46 monitor the stability of the end points of the laser alignment system. Plumb line readings since 1991 indicate that both monoliths are stable within $\pm$0.25 mm (0.01 inch) in the U/D direction and within $\pm$1 mm (0.04 inch) along the axis of the dam. Monoliths 23 and 35 contain both suspended and inverted plumb lines. At each monolith, the suspended plumb lines extend from the upper inspection gallery to the drainage and grouting gallery. The inverted plumb lines extend from the drainage and grouting gallery to an anchor 10 m deep in the bedrock. Therefore, suspended and inverted readings at the drainage and grouting gallery can be combined to give the total displacement of the upper inspection gallery with respect to the bedrock. The combined readings at these two monoliths indicate very smooth cyclic deflections of the dam (particularly at Monolith 23 as shown in Figure E-6. Movement is well correlated with the cyclic water load changes, with a maximum total range of deflections of about 18 mm (0.7 inch).

E-6. Comparison of Alignment and Plumb line Systems**.**

a. General. The results of the laser alignment have been treated as an independent survey without any attempt to correlate or integrate the results with indications of other instruments, particularly with the reliable plumb line measurements. As such, there was no control on the stability of the end points of the alignment line and no check on possible refraction effects. For example, at Libby Dam, alignment surveys have been carried out twice yearly, in May and in November. One should note that these two epochs of observations do not coincide with the maxima and minima of the dam deflections that occur in March and in September as indicated by the plumb line results. This is working against the principal rule stated earlier for monitoring the maximum expected deformation. Figures E-7 and E-8 how plots of the May and November laser survey displacements for the years 1991–1999, respectively. There are large changes in the displacements of individual monoliths from one year to another, reaching a maximum of 20 mm between 1997 and 1999. One cannot explain or correlate the results with water level or temperature changes. In order to interpret those deflections, the results at station 23R have been compared with plumb line readings interpolated to the time of the alignment surveys (see Table E-4. Discrepancies between the two types of surveys far exceed the errors of plumb line

readings that are estimated at 0.3 mm. The maximum discrepancy (31 October 1994) reaches 8.1 mm, exceeding by 10 times the actual (plumb line survey) deflection of the dam in comparison with 1991 data. Using the discrepancies (Δ) from Table E-4 as indicating true errors of the alignment survey, the error in the laser deflection survey is equal to 10.4 mm at 95% confidence level. This means, that when employing currently used procedures and calculation methods, the alignment surveys cannot detect displacements smaller than 10.4 mm.

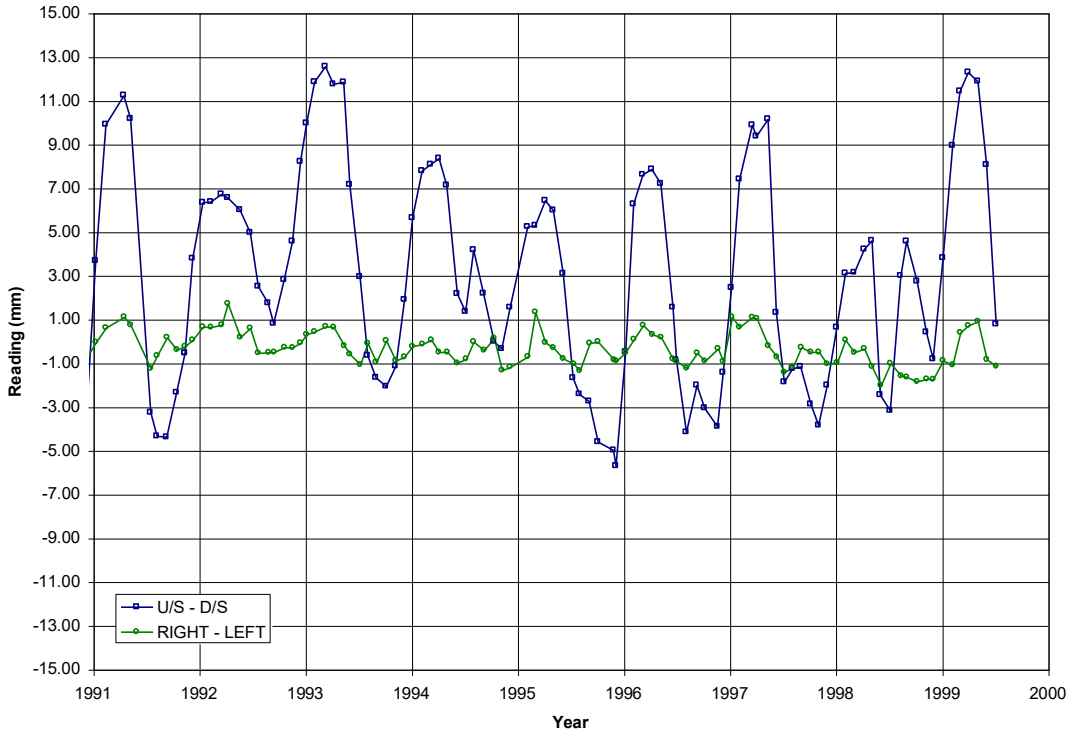


Figure E-5. Combined readouts from suspended and inverted plumb lines at Monolith 23, Libby Dam.

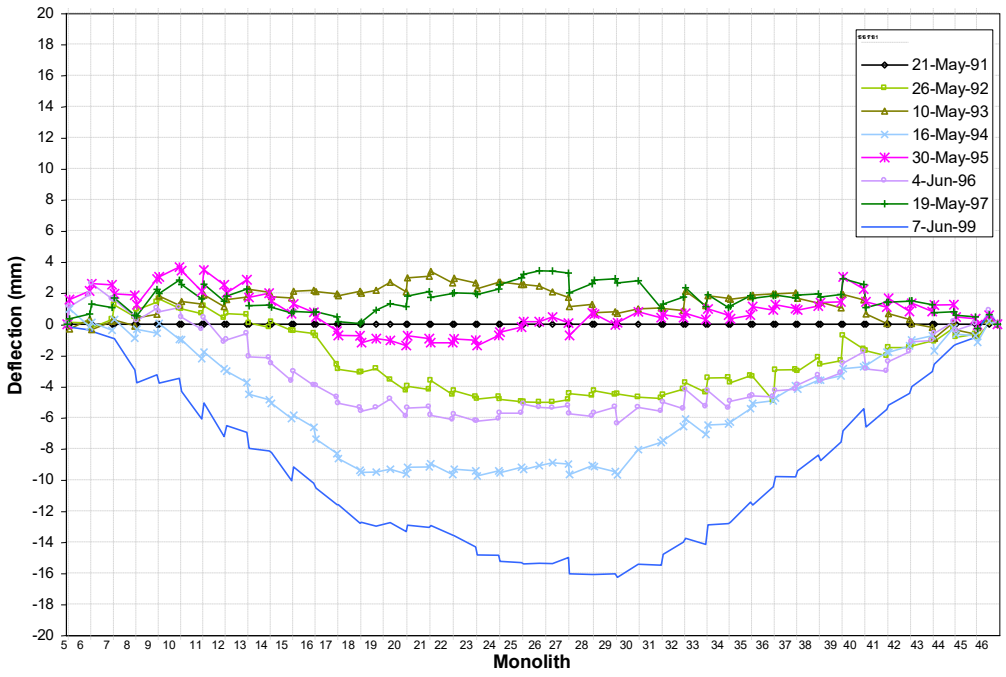


Figure E-6. May results of Libby laser alignment (1991 base).

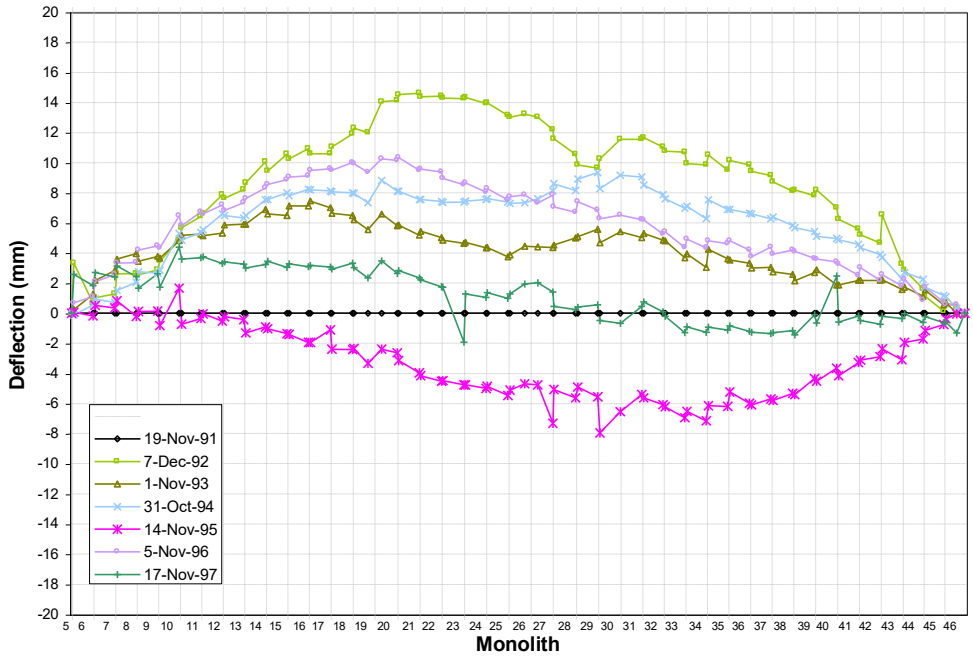


Figure E-7. November results of laser alignment (1991 base).

Table E-4. Comparison of laser alignment with plumb line data

Date	Plumb (mm)	Reduced (1991)	Laser (mm)	Diff Δ (mm)	Temp (°C)	ΔT/Δy (°C/m)
1991-05-21	6.9	0.0	0.0	0.0	13	
1992-05-26	5.8	-1.1	-4.6	-3.5	14	-0.05
1993-05-10	11.8	4.9	2.5	-2.4	11	-0.03
1994-05-16	5.2	-1.7	-9.4	-7.7	14	-0.11
1995-05-30	3.7	-3.2	-1.0	2.2	18	0.03
1996-06-04	3.5	-3.4	-6.1	-2.7	14	-0.04
1991-11-19	0.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	8	
1992-12-07	7.1	6.7	14.2	7.5	3	0.10
1993-11-01	-1.3	-1.7	4.6	6.3	12	0.09
1994-10-31	-0.3	-0.7	7.4	8.1	12	0.12
1995-11-14	-5.0	-5.4	-4.3	1.1	8	0.02

b. Refraction effects. The only reasonable explanation for the large error of the laser alignment surveys is the influence of atmospheric refraction. Using the values of (Δ) from Table E-4 one can calculate the expected changes of gradients of temperature between the 1991 survey and subsequent epochs of observations. Those values are listed in the last column of Table E-4 assuming a survey length of 760 m and atmospheric pressure of 1000 mb. The results vary between -0.11 degees C/m and +0.12 degees C/m. Considering the fact that the alignment surveys are performed within a few inches from the wall of the gallery, those values of gradient changes would be quite realistic.

E-7. Tiltmeter Observations. Tiltmeters require extremely careful and frequent calibration for temporal drift of the output, effect of temperature changes, and linearity of the conversion factor (Volts vs. angular units). Therefore, tiltmeters are among the least reliable instruments for permanent installations.

a. Drift calibrations. Accelerometer type tiltmeters should be calibrated for drift on a stable tilt-plate station, situated off of the structure, having a known or monitored reference tilt value. Drift error is modeled by solving for changes in tilt as a function of time at a reference tilt station immediately prior to and after each survey. Corrections are interpolated for each tilt measurement using observed time and drift rate from the model.

b. Temperature corrections. Before drift calibrations are computed, a thermal correction needs to be applied to account for changes in the shape of the accelerometer unit at ambient temperature. This is especially important when comparing tilt measurements made over

different seasons of the year. A correction is based on a temperature coefficient ($\Delta\alpha$) supplied by the manufacturer:

$$\Delta\alpha/\Delta T = \pm(0.03\ \%\ \text{reading} + 3\ \text{arc sec})/\ ^\circ F$$

Actual temperature readings are made in the gallery during the tiltmeter surveys. Readings in areas exposed to sunlight should be taken in the early morning before thermal instabilities affect the shape of the structure. Final tilt angle values are converted to a length-to-distance ratio using a pre-selected base length distance. Linear horizontal displacements are found using the elevation difference between each tilt plate and the bottom of the monolith (as a radius of rotation) assuming the monolith behaves as a rigid body. Higher resolution electrolytic tiltmeters are available that operate by a liquid bubble level sensor (50 mm vial length). These instruments are permanently fixed to the structure and have a repeatability of $\pm$3 arc seconds with automated reading systems

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX F

Relative Distance Ratio Assessment Methods

F-1. Introduction. Certain EDM biases such as refraction and scale error in EDM distance measurements can be minimized between two survey epochs, without calculating corrections, by application of "reference line ratio" methods. This method uses the fact that distance measurements made over similar line lengths under similar atmospheric conditions are affected equally by refraction (i.e., scale error). If measurements are made initially between two reference stations separated by a known distance, the ratio between the measured and known distance will provide a scale bias value for the network. The true distance to any other station will be proportional to the scale bias determined for the known baseline. This is also true for surveys conducted at any later epoch, where the atmospheric conditions will be different, but the ratio between a reference line and the measured line can be used to detect changes in the ratio of their distances. Thus, it is not necessary to explicitly determine EDM scale error or refractive index when using this technique. Although significant accuracy improvements are reported (when compared to results based on applying calculated refraction corrections), the disadvantage of using this method is that its accuracy is based on assumptions about uniform local atmospheric conditions. Techniques to reduce refractive index errors in measurements by using ratios, or reference lines, include two important rules:

Rule 1: Refractive index errors, resulting from end point measurements of temperature and pressure, tend to be the same for all lines measured from one point within a short period of time.

Rule 2: The ratios of observed distances, measured from one point within a short period of time, are constant.

Note: For both rules, a short period of time is 30 minutes or less.

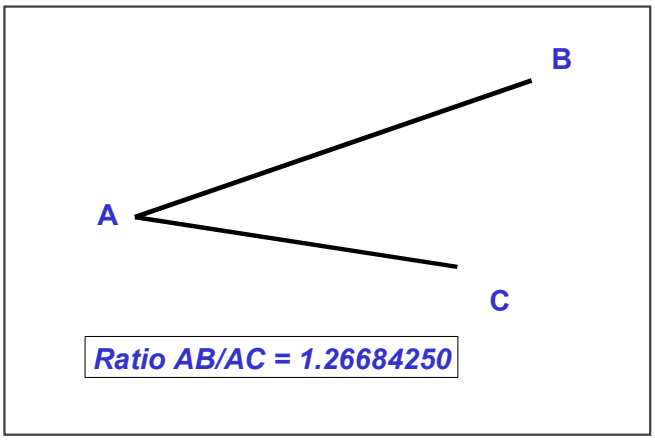


Figure F-1. Ratio of two lines.

a. General principle. In Figure F-1, lines AB and AC are measured from a common point. Rule 1 states that if refractive index measurements are made at points A, B, and C within a short period, the errors in the measurements tend to be the same at all three points. If the true temperature along line AB is 20°C, but the mean of measurements made at A and B is 24°C (a condition typical of daytime), then the mean of temperature measurements at the end points of line AC would also be expected to be 4°C higher than the true temperature along that line. Because 1°C is approximately equivalent to 1 ppm of distance, both lengths will be in error by 4 ppm. However, if the measured length of AB is divided by the measured length of AC, the resulting ratio will equal the ratio of the true lengths. Thus, the *ratio* of two measured lengths will be more accurate than either of the lengths that were used to form the ratio. For example:

AB was measured to be 2839.611 meters, and
AC was measured to be 2241.487 meters.

Their ratio is:

AB/AC = 1.26684250.

Both lines were in error by 4 ppm because of temperature-measuring errors; therefore, the true lengths were:

AB = 2839.611 + 0.0114 (4 ppm), and
AC = 2241.487 + 0.0090 (4 ppm).

The ratio of the true lengths is:

2839.6224/2241.4960 = 1.26684250,

the same as the ratio of measured lengths.

b. Corrected and observed ratios. When ratios are formed from measurements that have had refractive index corrections applied, they will be called *corrected ratios*. The property of the corrected ratio is that it is very accurate. From corrected ratios, angles may be computed that are frequently within a few tenths of an arc second of their true values. A second set of ratios can be obtained from the same measurements by using the data before the application of the refractive index corrections. These are called *observed ratios*, and they have been formed from lines that have had no temperature of pressure corrections applied. Rule 2 states that the observed ratio is constant. This means that the observed ratio of two lines measured today will agree with the observed ratio of the same two lines measured months or years later. This will be true even though the observed lengths of the individual lines have changed greatly because of changes in atmospheric conditions between the two sets of measurements. The observed ratios will not, however, be the same as the corrected ratios unless certain conditions are met. To understand this, let us assume for a moment that an instrument has been set upon a hilltop. In the valley

below, two points have been selected that are equidistant from the hilltop stations and are and the same elevation. The observed distances to the two points would appear the same because the distances are equal and both lines pass through roughly the same atmosphere. A point is then selected that is the same distance from the hilltop station as the other points, but with a higher elevation. When the observed distances are recorded, the two lengths to the valley points are the same, but the observed length to the higher elevation point is shorter. Because air density decreases with elevation, the light traversing the higher line travels faster and returns sooner. The instrument then shows the distance to be shorter. Two lessons can be learned from this. The first lesson is that if the mean elevations of two lines measured from a point are the same, the ratio of the observed distances is equal to the ratio of the corrected distances. In the example above, the observed distances to the valley points are the same, and the ratio of the two observed lengths is 1. The true lengths to the two points are the same so that the ratio of the corrected lengths is also 1. This is often the case with dams where the alignment markers along the crest of the dam are all within a few meters of the same elevation. This property of *observed ratios* will be used later on. The second lesson is that when the elevations of the end points to which measurements are being made are different, the ratio of observed lengths is not the same as the ratio of corrected (true) lengths because the refractive indices along the two lines are different. Even though it is not accurate, the observed ratio does not change with time and it may be used to detect changes in position. Furthermore, the observed ratio may be corrected by means of an atmospheric model. In many respects, ratios have properties similar to those of angles. In triangulation, the sum of the three angles of a triangle must equal 180 degrees, and a knowledge of two angles permits calculation of the third. Similarly, the product of three ratios obtained from a triangle must equal 1, and a knowledge of two ratios permits calculation of the third. For a triangle with sides A, B, and C as measured from vertices 1, 2, and 3 (Figure F-2), the ratio measured from vertex 1 is A_1 / B_1, using a counterclockwise convention (A_1/B_1 rather than B_1/A_1) with the subscript designating the vertex from which the ratio was measured. Two other ratios, B_2/C_2 and C_3/A_3, may also be measured. If the measurements are perfect, then:

$$A_1 = A_3$$
$$B_1 = B_2$$
$$C_2 = C_3$$

and the ratios are simplified to:

$$(A_1 / B_1) (B_2 / C_2) (C_3 / A_3) = 1$$

If the measurements are not perfect (the usual case), the degree to which the product failed to equal 1 is a measure of the precision of the measurements. If only two ratios were measured, the third may be calculated. For example:

$$A_1 / B_1 = (C_2 / B_2) (A_3 / C_3)$$

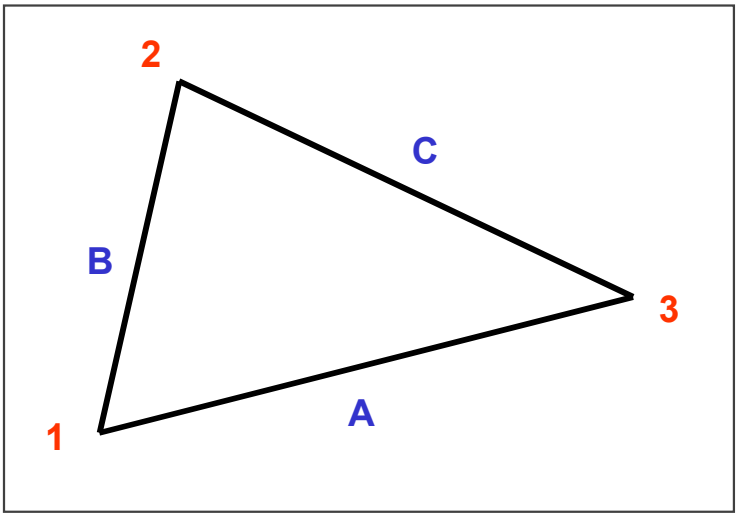


Figure F-2. Ratios in a triangle.

Angles may be calculated directly from the ratios by using a modified cosine formula. The use of ratios yields angles as a result, and the angles determined from the ratios are more accurate than those determined from the lengths alone because a ratio is more accurate than either of the lengths from which it is derived. When the angles of a triangle do not sum to 180, the triangle may be adjusted by taking one-third of the difference between 180 and the sum of the angles and by applying it as a correction to each angle. With ratios, a correction may be made to each ratio. In measuring dams or other large structures, with the ratio method, refractive index errors are less important because relative displacement values are needed, and therefore relative, rather than absolute, distances may be used.

F-2. Deformation Monitoring Using Ratio Methods**.** This section provides guidance on performing deformation surveys using EDM ratio difference techniques. These surveys are done using an EDM or total station. Standard trilateration techniques are used to compute movements. This process requires measurement of the reference control network and the structure itself.

a. The reference control network. In monitoring possible movements of the structure with this technique, points on the structure, object points, must be related to points that that have been selected for stability, usually at some distance from the structure itself. All movements of the structure are related to one or more of these reference points. It is important that these reference points not move (i.e., they are stable), and for this reason, they should be placed in geologically stable positions. They should also afford a good geometry for trilateration measurements. Good geometry, in turn, consists of measuring along the line where movement is expected. For example, if measurements of upstream or downstream movements are required, the reference point should be located correspondingly either upstream or downstream. Also, the point should be at a sufficient distance from the structure so that the end points, as well as the center, can be monitored with good geometry. In Figure F-3, a dam is shown with both an upstream and

downstream control monument. Geometrically, measurements from both the upstream side of the dam will be poor, while those from the downstream side will be much stronger. If movement in two dimensions is desired, a point off the end of the dam should also be chosen. For best results, the angle of intersection should be as close to 90 degrees as possible. Figure F-4 depicts two acceptable selections of reference network control figures.

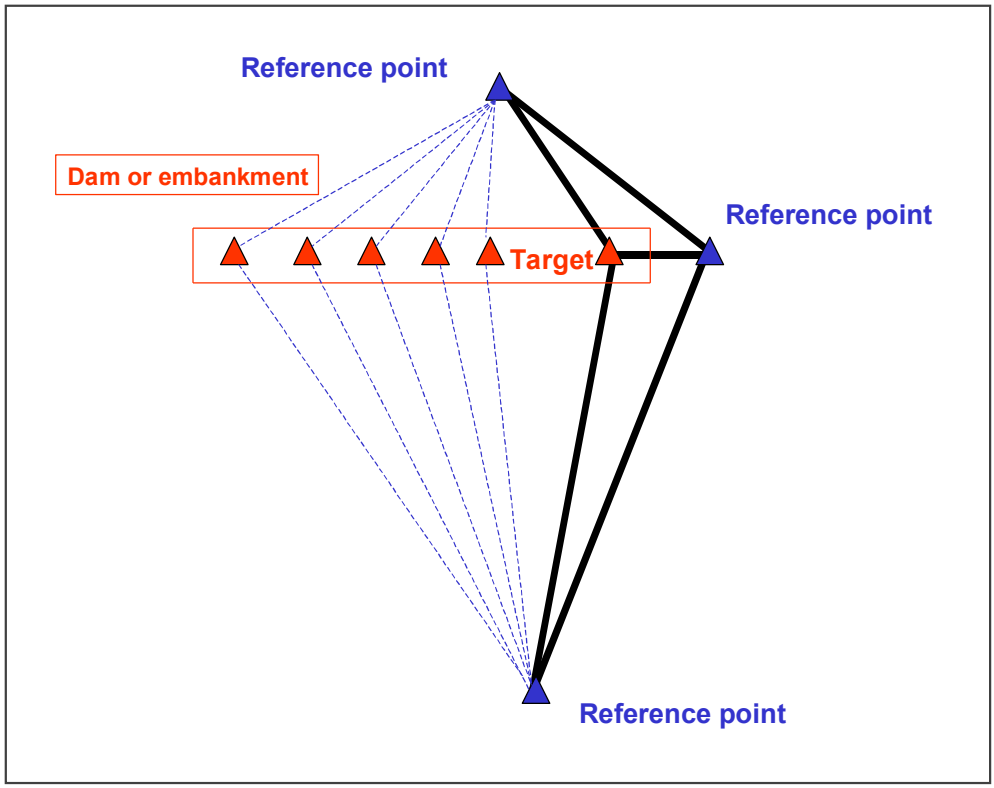


Figure F-3. Control monuments for a dam.

(1) A final criteria for the selection of reference control monuments is intervisibility. Because the control figure also provides a means of correcting for refractive index when optical electronic instrumentation is used, the points selected for control at the ends of the dam must be visible from the upstream and/or downstream points.

(2) In trilateration, lengths to an unknown station from each of two control points will give the position of the unknown station in two dimensions. Measurements from three control stations will give three positions of the unknown station and may be used as a check of survey accuracy. Figure F-4a and F-4b show good control figures for the measurement of a dam. In the figures, A, B, C, and D are control monuments, and all are intervisible. In Figure F-4b, point P is an unknown station on the dam and is measured from control points A, B, and C. Positions of P are calculated from measurements of lines AP and BP, from lines BP and CP, and from lines AP

and CP. The agreement between the three positions obtained for point P is a measure of the accuracy of the survey.

(3) When measurements are made of lines exceeding 600 meters, a major source of error is the inability to determine accurately the refractive index along the line. An error in temperature of 1 degree or in pressure of 2.5 mm (0.1 inches) of mercury will cause an error in length of one part per million. These errors may be minimized by considering the ratio of two lines that have been measured within 30 minutes of each other. The errors of each line tend to be the same so that taking a ratio greatly reduces the magnitude of the error. This may be shown by again referring to Figure F-4a. Point D has been selected as a reference point. Its position was chosen so that it would be in stable ground, it would be visible from the other control points, and the lines to it from the other control points would pass through similar atmospheric conditions to those from the control points to unknown positions on the dam.

(4) The first time a structure is visited to make trilateration measurements, both ratios and conventional measurements are made to determine the shape and size of the control figure. The simplest example would be the triangular figure shown in Figure F-4b. All control monuments should be occupied by the EDM or total station. At each point, measurements should be made to all of the other control monuments within a short period of time. In the case of the triangle ABC in Figure F-4b, monument A would be occupied and lengths AC and AB measured. Similar measurements should then be made as the EDM occupies stations B and C. Each line should then be reduced to the level or spheroid and then have the refractive index corrections applied. A typical set of measurements for triangle ABC is:

	Length (in m)	Ratio
A to	C 2547.447	AC/AB 0.9181349
	B 2774.589	

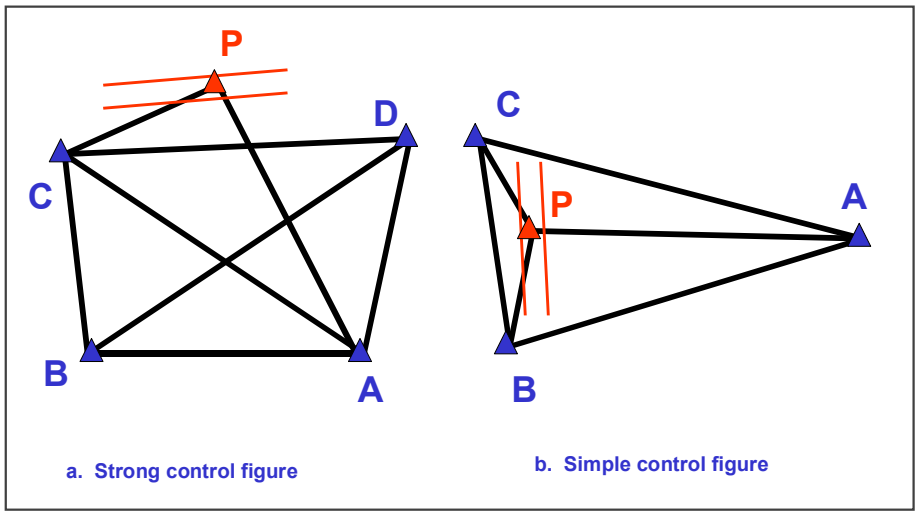


Figure F-4. Strong and simple control figures around a structure.

B to	A 2774.583	BA/BC 3.7776155
	C 734.480	
C to	B 734.478	CB/CA 0.2883212
	A 2547.430	

(AC/AB)*(BA/BC)*(CB/CA) = 1.0000018

	Adjusted Angles
A	15° 05' 47.84"
B	64° 35' 55.08"
C	100° 18' 17.08"

By way of comparison, angles calculated from the mean lengths would be:

A	15° 05' 47.59"
B	64° 35' 53.76"
C	100° 18' 18.65"

The adjusted angles determined from corrected ratios are more accurate than the angles determined from the means of the lengths of the sides because ratios are more accurate than the lengths of which they are composed.

(5) It may be seen from this example that the result of working with ratios is angles, and that in effect very accurate triangulation is being carried out using an EDM or total station. As in the case of triangulation, a baseline is necessary to determine the scale when ratios are used. Choose one of the sides of the triangle to serve as a baseline, and use the mean length as the scale for the triangle. In this example, AB has been chosen and its length is 2774.586 meters. Next, by using the sine formula and the angles determined from ratios, the other two sides may be determined:

$$\frac{2774.586}{\sin C} = \frac{BC}{\sin A} = \frac{AC}{\sin B}$$

BC = 734.481

AC = 2547.443

(6) The angles obtained by these methods are of the highest accuracy. The scale, however, is only as accurate as the mean of the two measurements of the baseline. Fortunately, this is not a serious problem with measurements of dams because changes in lengths are desired rather than the absolute lengths themselves.

(7) The final task in establishing the control network is to assign coordinates to A, B, and C. These may be fitted into an existing network, or a local control net may be set up for the project.

(8) At a later date, the control figure may once again be occupied. The same procedure may be used, and the angles determined and compared with those obtained during the first survey. This, however, requires the use of temperature and pressure measuring devices each time the figure is surveyed.

(9) An easier method is to use the observed ratios, for these do not require knowledge of the refractive index. Remember that the observed ratios remain constant, and thus comparison of observed ratios from the first survey with observed ratios from the second survey are sufficient to determine whether any of the control monuments have moved. In fact, measurements of temperature and pressure need only be made of the control lines in order to give the proper scale to the figure. And these measurements need only be made the first time a project is surveyed. From that time on, only observed distances are required. In addition, all of the measurements from the control monuments to stations on the dam will be observed distances. Measurements of temperature and pressure are not necessary.

b. Points on the dam. When positions have been established for the monuments in the control figure, observed ratios will be used to determine the refractive index corrections for measurements of points on the dam. Referring again to Figure F-4b, the lines AC, AB, and BC have been corrected for refractive index and may be used as reference lines. For measurements from control monument A, either AC or AB may be used as a reference line. A good reference line is one which traverses approximately the same atmosphere as is found along the lines to points on the dam and is almost the same length or longer. If we call the corrected length of the reference line R_{Corr} and the observed length of the same line R_{Obs}, the following equation may be written:

$$R_{Obs} \cdot k = R_{Corr} \qquad \text{(Eq F-1)}$$

where k is a constant owing to the atmospheric conditions along the line at the time it was measured. Because the reference line has been selected to travel through approximately the same atmosphere as that to points on the dam, k is also the atmospheric constant for lines measured to the dam. If P_{Obs} is the observed length to a point on the dam, then P_{Corr} may be found from:

$$P_{Obs} \cdot k = P_{Corr} \qquad \text{(Eq F-2)}$$

This technique enables the surveyor to correct for refractive index without using temperature and pressure measuring equipment. However, k is not really a constant because it changes slowly with time. For this reason, it must be remeasured at approximately 30-minute intervals, and it must be assumed it changes in a linear fashion.

(1) The following example will detail the previous phenomena. In Figure F-5, the EDM has been set up at A. Measurements are made of AC, AP_1, AP_2, AP_3, and again AC.

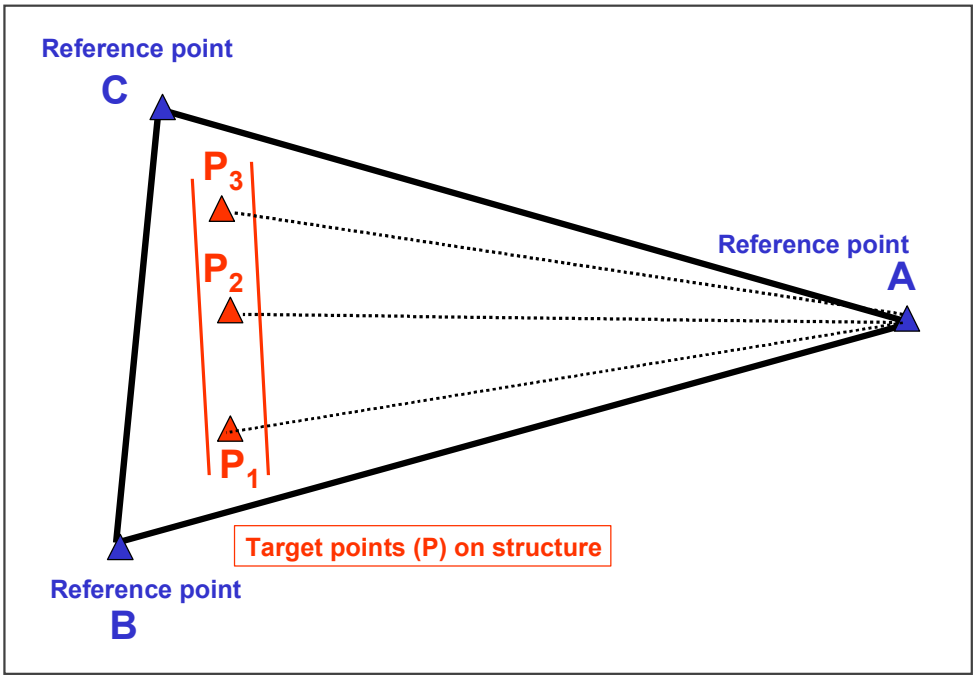


Figure F-5. Use of a Reference Line.

After the observed lengths have been reduced to the level or the spheroid, the measurements from control monument A were recorded as listed in Table F-1.

Table F-1. Measurement Taken (Example Deformation Survey)

To Station	Time	Observed Length (D_{Obs})	Refractive Index Constant (k)	Corrected Distance (D_{Corr})
C	1330	2547.326	1.0000459	2547.443
P_1	1335	2477.075	1.0000454	2477.187
P_2	1340	2407.354	1.0000449	2407.462
P_3	1345	2445.152	1.0000445	2445.261
C	1350	2547.331	1.0000440	2547.443*

Note: AC is the reference line

The first and last measurements are of AC. The length of AC is known and is used as a reference line to calculate the value of the refractive index constant. At first, the constant was 1.0000459 (2547.443/2547.326), but because of changes in the atmosphere, it changed to 1.0000440 (2547.443/2547.331). The value of k at intermediate times may be found by assuming that the change was linear. Thus, a value of k may be found for the times when P_1, P_2, and P_3 were measured. Applying the appropriate value of k to the observed length, D_{Obs}, of AP_1 gives 2477.075 * 1.0000454 = 2477.187 as its corrected length, D_{Corr}.

(2) Any length in a control figure may serve as a reference line, although some lines will be better than others. From A, AB would also serve. From B, however, BC would be a better choice than BA because it passes through a similar atmosphere to that found in measuring from B to P_1, P_2, and P_3.

c. Reduction to the spheroid. Mention has been made of reducing lines either to the level or the spheroid. In very accurate work where lines exceed 1 km, the surface upon which a survey is being made can no longer be considered a plane. If distances are reduced to the level and used to calculate angles, the angles thus obtained may not agree with angles obtained from a theodolite. Further, the position of a point calculated from the lengths to two control monuments may not agree with the position of the same point when measured from two other control monuments. To prevent problems of this type, figures with line lengths in excess of 1 km should be reduced to the spheroid instead of the level.

d. Example deformation survey. The example survey developed in the following paragraphs combines the principles developed for ratio lines. A diagram of the control setup and dam are shown in Figure F-6. Control pedestals have been set at points C1, C2, C3, and C4. Markers A1 through A6 have been set along the crest of the dam, and T1 and T2 have been set near the toe of the dam. Elevations have been measured to obtain the list in Table F-2.

(1) Each of the control monuments was occupied with an EDM, and measurements were made to the other three control monuments. Temperatures and pressures were also taken at both ends of the lines. After measuring the control lines, the lengths to stations on the dam were measured from three of the control monuments. Temperatures and pressures were not taken for these lines.

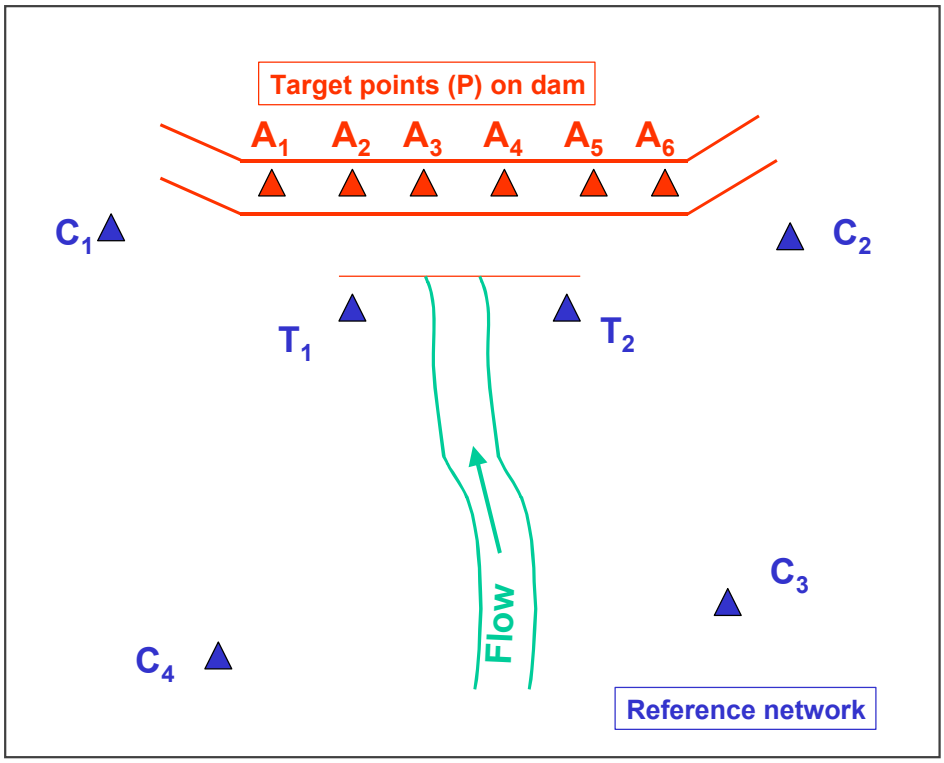


Figure F-6. Example survey scheme on a concrete dam.

Table F-2. Elevations for example deformation survey.

Point	Elevation (m above sea level)
A1	410.724
A2	410.718
A3	410.706
A4	410.721
A5	410.712
A6	411.245
C1	419.911
C2	413.275
C3	463.701
C4	521.537
T1	329.623
T2	329.394

(2) On a separate occasion, the following lengths were measured from C3:

Table F-3. Measurements from C3 for example deformation survey.

#	To	Time	Observed Distance Ds (meters)	Mean Temp. (°C)	Mean Press. (inches Hg)
1	C1	0930	1081.105	16.4	28.26
2	C4	0935	945.032	16.4	28.09
3	C2	0940	703.788	17.0	28.27
4	C1	0945	1081.104	16.7	28.26
5	C1	1025	1081.101		
6	A1	1035	968.241		
7	A2	1045	924.456		
8	C1	1050	1081.103		
9	A3	1100	882.721		
10	A4	1115	843.323		
11	C1	1120	1081.104		
12	A5	1130	806.626		
13	A6	1145	772.950		
14	C1	1150	1081.104		
15	C1	1300	1081.100		
16	T1	1305	872.886		
17	T2	1315	836.021		
18	C1	1300	1081.097		

Measurements began with the control figure. Either C1 or C2 could have been used for a reference line, but in this case C1 has been chosen. Because it was the reference line, it was measured before and after the remaining control lines. This practice helped to check for both drift in the instrument and in the atmospheric conditions. When the control lines were completed, the operator next measured to points on the dam. Forty minutes had elapsed after completion of the contour line measurements before the field party with reflectors was set up on the dam. Because the reference line should be measured approximately every 30 minutes, the observed distance to C1 was again measured (measurement 5). A reflector was left unattended at C1 because it was no longer necessary to read the temperature and pressure. Remember temperature and pressure measurements are made only on the control lines and only when a study is made for the first time at a particular dam. The next time the dam is visited, perhaps 6 or 12 months later, it will not be necessary to measure refractive index. Possible movement in the control figure may be checked at that time by a comparison of ratios of observed distances.

(2) Measurements were made that same afternoon from C1. Only the control lines were measured. Three sets of positions will be obtained for the stations on the dam from C2, C3, and C4. Measurements from C1 would do little to improve the accuracy of these positions in the upstream-direction. Table F-4 gives the lengths from C1 recorded for that session.

Table F-4. Measurements from C1 for example deformation survey.

#	To	Time	Observed Distance Ds (meters)	Mean Temp. (°C)	Mean Press. (inches Hg)
19	C2	1400	566.212	19.0	28.28
20	C3	1405	1081.095	18.8	28.20
21	C4	1410	989.418	18.5	28.09
22	C2	1415	566.215	18.8	28.28

(4) A week later, monument C4 was occupied and measurements were taken. These measurements are shown in Table F-5.

Table F-5. Measurements from C4 for example deformation survey.

#	To	Time	Observed Distance Ds (meters)	Mean Temp. (°C)	Mean Press. (inches Hg)
23	C1	0835	989.446	6.1	28.85
24	C2	0840	1138.277	6.1	28.87
25	C3	0845	945.050	5.8	28.78
26	C1	0850	989.445	6.2	28.85
27	C1	0900	989.444		
28	A1	0905	1031.587		
29	A2	0915	1042.973		
30	A3	0925	1057.756		
31	C1	0930	989.438		
32	A4	0940	1075.788		
33	A5	0945	1096.925		
34	A6	0955	1120.924		
35	C1	1000	989.432		
36	T1	1010	981.303		
37	T2	1020	987.682		
38	C1	1025	989.431		

(5) Later that day, monument C2 was occupied and measurements were taken. These measurements are shown in Table F-6 and completed the field measurement phase.

Table F-6. Measurements from C2 for example deformation survey.

#	To	Time	Observed Distance D_S (meters)	Mean Temp. (°C)	Mean Press. (inches Hg)
39	C1	1230	566.225	8.1	29.04
40	C4	1235	1138.273	7.6	28.87
41	C3	1240	703.799	7.8	28.97
42	C1	1245	566.225	8.3	29.04
43	A1	1250	398.146		
44	A2	1300	337.350		
45	A3	1310	276.652		
46	C1	1315	566.225		
47	A4	1320	216.070		
48	A5	1330	155.828		
49	A6	1335	96.436		
50	C1	1345	566.224		

(6) The first step in the data reduction is to reduce all the lines (D_S) to the spheroid. This has been done and is shown in Table F-7.

Table F-7. Corrected line lengths.

#	C3 To	Time	Observed Distance D_{Obs} (meters)	Corrected Distance (meters)
1	C1	0930	1080.143	1080.156*
2	C4	0935	943.188	943.201*
3	C2	0940	701.931	701.940*
4	C1	0945	1080.142	1080.155*
5	C1	1025	1080.141	(1080.155)
6	A1	1035	966.724	966.736
7	A2	1045	922.873	922.884
8	C1	1050	1080.141	(1080.154)
9	A3	1100	881.068	881.078
10	A4	1115	841.599	841.609
11	C1	1120	1080.142	(1080.154)
12	A5	1130	804.828	804.837
13	A6	1145	771.115	771.124
14	C1	1150	1080.142	(1080.154)
15	C1	1300	1080.138	(1080.154)
16	T1	1305	862.473	862.486

17	T2	1315	825.111	825.125
18	C1	1320	1080.135	(1080.154)

#	C1 To	Time	Observed Distance D_{Obs} (meters)	Corrected Distance (meters)
19	C2	1400	566.136	566.144*
20	C3	1405	1080.133	1080.149*
21	C4	1410	984.112	984.128*
22	C2	1415	566.139	566.147*

#	C4 To	Time	Observed Distance D_{Obs} (meters)	Corrected Distance (meters)
23	C1	0835	984.140	84.137*
24	C2	0840	1133.034	1133.030*
25	C3	0845	943.206	943.203*
26	C1	0850	984.139	984.136*
27	C1	0900	984.138	(984.134)
28	A1	0905	1025.543	1025.540
29	A2	0915	1036.993	1036.992
30	A3	0925	1051.857	1051.858
31	C1	0930	984.132	(984.134)
32	A4	0940	1069.987	1069.991
33	A5	0945	1091.232	1091.238
34	A6	0955	1115.403	1114.411
35	C1	1000	984.126	(984.134)
36	T1	1010	962.289	962.297
37	T2	1020	968.747	968.756
38	C1	1025	984.125	(984.134)

#	C2 To	Time	Observed Distance D_{Obs} (meters)	Corrected Distance (meters)
39	C1	1230	566.149	566.147*
40	C4	1235	1133.149	1133.027*
41	C3	1240	701.942	701.940*
42	C1	1245	566.149	(566.146)

43	A1	1250	398.112	398.110
44	A2	1300	337.318	337.316
45	A3	1310	276.622	276.621
46	C1	1315	566.149	(566.146)
47	A4	1320	216.041	216.040
48	A5	1330	155.797	155.796
49	A6	1335	96.408	96.408
50	C1	1345	566.148	(566.146)

Note: * - Denotes length corrected from temperature and pressure measurements.
( ) - Denotes true length.

(7) When the lines have been reduced to the spheroid, the next step is to define the size and shape of the control figure, in this case a doubly braced quadrilateral. There are several ways to do this. One way is that the figure contains four triangles, and these may be individually treated in the same manner as the triangle in Figure F-4a. Another way would be to use the means of the six lines in the figure and adjust these by means of a quadrilateral adjustment. This is the technique that was used in the present case to obtain the following adjusted lengths:

C1 to C2	566.146 meters
C1 to C3	1080.154
C1 to C4	984.134
C2 to C3	701.940
C2 to C4	1133.029
C3 to C4	943.202

(8) The control figure may be fit into an existing coordinate system or a local system may be devised just for the dam. For the example dam, a local system was used. C4 was selected as a starting point was assigned coordinates of x = 1000.000 and y = 1000.000. The coordinates of C3 were then chosen to place C3 at a distance of 943.202 meters from C4; they are x = 1943.202 and y = 1000.000; The placement of C4 and C3 has determined the scale and orientation of the figure. Using the positions of C3 and C4 and the appropriate lengths, the positions of C1 and C2 can be determined to be:

C1:	x = 1366.527	y = 1913.333
C2:	x = 1890.936	y = 1699.991

(9) The establishment of the control figure needs be done only once. From that time on, it is only necessary to check for movements of the control monuments. This may be done by comparing observed ratios taken at some later time with the original set.

(10) Returning to Table F-7, one may now calculate the corrected lengths D_C to the stations on the top and toe of the dam from the control monuments. This is done by using reference lines to make refractive index corrections.

(11) Measurements 15 through 18 from Table F-7 are given in Table F-8.

Table F-8. Changes of correction factor with time.

#	C3 To	Time	D_O (meters)	Correction Factor	D_C* (meters)
15	C1	1300	1080.138	1.0000148	(1080.154)
16	T1	1305	862.473	1.0000155	862.486
17	T2	1315	825.111	1.0000169	825.125
18	C2	1320	1080.135	1.0000135	(1080.154)

* () denotes true length.

(12) At 1300, when the distance to C1 was measured, the observed distance, D_{Obs}, was found to be 1080.138 meters. This line, C3 to C1, is a part of the control figure, and its correct length has been determined to be 1080.154 meters. The atmospheric correction at 1300 may then be found by dividing. The correction is 1080.154/1080.138 = 1.0000148. Later, at 1320, the atmospheric correction has become 1.0000176. Assuming the change in correction has been linear as a function of time over the 20-minute interval, we may calculate the correction factor at 1305 and 1315 when observed distances were measured to T1 and T2. Multiplying the observed distance by the corresponding atmospheric correction gives the corrected distance, D_{Corr}, to T1 and T2. Thus, in Table F-7, the values in parenthesis in column 5 are the correct or true lengths of reference lines, and the values without an asterisk or parenthesis are the corrected lengths that have been calculated from reference lines.

(13) Finally, with the corrected lengths and the coordinates of the control monuments from which they were measured, it is possible to calculate the positions of the points on the dam. Because three lengths were measured to stations on the crest of the dam, three solutions will be obtained. Geometrically, some solutions will be superior to others. For stations at the toe of the dam, only one solution is possible.

(14) In Table F-9, positions of the crest and toe markers are given for various line combinations. In the case of the crest markers, and adjusted position is also given.

Table F-9. Crest and toe station positions.

Station	X	Y	From

A1	1533.713	1875.726	C2 to C3
	1533.710	1875.720	C2 to C4
	1533.705	1875.723	C3 to C4
	1533.709	1875.722	Adjusted
A2	1590.161	1852.688	C2 to C3
	1590.158	1852.682	C2 to C4
	1590.153	1852.685	C3 to C4
	1590.157	1852.684	Adjusted
A3	1646.583	1829.648	C2 to C3
	1646.588	1829.656	C2 to C4
	1646.594	1829.652	C3 to C4
	1646.589	1829.653	Adjusted
A4	1703.041	1806.615	C2 to C3
	1703.038	1806.609	C2 to C4
	1703.033	1806.613	C3 to C4
	1703.037	1806.612	Adjusted
A5	1759.465	1783.585	C2 to C3
	1759.467	1783.588	C2 to C4
	1759.470	1783.584	C3 to C4
	1759.468	1783.586	Adjusted
A6	1815.919	1760.547	C2 to C3
	1815.915	1760.542	C2 to C4
	1815.912	1760.545	C3 to C4
	1815.915	1760.544	Adjusted
T1	1568.152	1776.672	C3 to C4
T2	1608.187	1754.053	C3 to C4

(15) If desired, alignment may be determined from positions. Using the crest stations A1 and A6 as end points, the alignment of A2 through A5 is given in Table F-10. T1 and T2 are also included in the alignment to help monitor any tilt in the dam. Alignment done from positions is not affected by curved dams, by bends, or by differences in elevations.

Table F-10. Alignment.

Station	Distance from A1 (meters)	Distance off Line (meters)*
A2	60.968	0.00
A3	121.919	- 0.001
A4	182.888	+ 0.001
A5	243.836	- 0.004
T1	+78.691	
T2	+84.505	

* + = Downstream
- = Upstream

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

GLOSSARY

Terms and Abbreviations

1. Abbreviations and Acronyms.

1D.....One-Dimensional
2D.....Two-Dimensional
2DRMS .....Twice the distance root mean square
3D.....Three-Dimensional
A-E.....Architect-Engineer
ATR.....Automatic Target Recognition
AGC .....Army Geospatial Center
ASCII .....American Standard Code for Information Interchange
BM .....Benchmark
CCD .....Charged Couple Device
CDMS .....Continuous Deformation Monitoring System
CERN.....European Organization for Nuclear Research
CONUS .....CONtinental United States
CORPSCON .....CORPS CONvert
COTS .....Commercial Off the Shelf
CW .....Civil Works
DD.....Double Differencing
DoD.....Department of Defense
DOP.....Dilution of Precision
Dof .....Degrees of Freedom
DGPS .....Differential GPS
DSP .....Digital Signal Processing
DSAC.....Dam Safety Action Classification
EDM.....Electronic Distance Measurement
EM.....Engineer Manual
EP .....Engineer Pamphlet
ER .....Engineer Regulation
ERDC.....Engineer Research and Development Center
FEM .....Finite Element Method
FGCS.....Federal Geodetic Control Subcommittee
FIG .....International Federation of Surveyors
FOA.....Field Operating Activity
ft .....Feet
GDOP.....Geometric Dilution of Precision
GIS .....Geographic Information System
GPS .....Global Positioning System
GRS80.....Geodetic Reference System of 1980

HARN .....High Accuracy Regional Networks
HDOP.....Horizontal Dilution of Precision
Hg.....Mercury
HI .....Height of Instrument
HQUSACE.....Headquarters, U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
IR.....Infrared
IWST.....Iterative Weighted Similarity Transformation
LEP .....Lateral Effect Photodiode
LiDAR.....Light Detection and Ranging
LOS.....Line of Sight
mm .....Millimeter
MSC .....Major Subordinate Command
NAD27 .....North American Datum of 1927
NAD83 .....North American Datum of 1983
NANU .....Notice Advisory to NAVSTAR Users
NAVD88 .....North American Vertical Datum 1988
NGRS.....National Geodetic Reference System
NGS.....National Geodetic Survey
NGVD29 .....National Geodetic Vertical Datum 1929
NIR.....Near Infrared
NOAA .....National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
NOS.....National Ocean Service
O/D.....Outside Diameter
OMB .....Office of Management and Budget
PB.....Phased Based
PICES.....Periodic Inspection and Continuing Evaluation of (Completed CW) Structures
PLL .....Phase Lock Loop
PRN.....Pseudo Random Noise
QC .....Quality Control
RINEX .....Receiver Independent Exchange
RMS .....Root Mean Square
SD .....Single Differencing
SI.....International System of Units
SN .....Signal to Noise
SNR.....Signal to Noise Ratio
SPCS .....State Plane Coordinate System
SV .....Space vehicle
TBM.....Temporary Benchmark
TD .....Triple Differencing
TEQC .....Translation Editing Quality Check
TOF .....Time of Flight
UHF.....Ultra High Frequency

UNB .....University of New Brunswick
USC&GS.....U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey
USACE .....U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
USATEC.....U.S. Army Topographic Engineering Center
U-SMART.....USACE Survey Monument Archival and Retrieval Tool
URL.....Universal Resource Locator
UTC.....Universal Time Coordinated
UTM.....Universal Transverse Mercator
USNO.....U.S. Naval Observatory
VCO .....Voltage Controlled Oscillator
VDOP.....Vertical Dilution of Precision
WGS84.....World Geodetic System of 1984

2. Terms.

Absolute GPS
Operation with a single receiver for a desired position. This receiver may be positioned to be stationary over a point. This mode of positioning is the most common military and civil application.

Accuracy
The degree to which an estimated (mean) value is compatible with an expected value. Accuracy implies the estimated value is unbiased.

Adjustment
Adjustment is the process of estimation and minimization of deviations between measurements and a mathematical model.

Altimeter
An instrument that measures elevation differences usually based on atmospheric pressure measurements.

Altitude
The vertical angle between the horizontal plane of the observer and a directional line to the object.

Angle of Depression
A negative altitude.

Angle of Elevation
A positive altitude.

Angular Misclosure
Difference in the actual and theoretical sum of a series of angles.

Archiving
Storing of documents and information.

Azimuth
The horizontal direction of a line clockwise from a reference plane, usually the meridian. Often called forward azimuth to differentiate from back azimuth.

Backsight
A sight on a previously established traverse or triangulation station and not the closing sight on the traverse. A reading on a rod held on a point whose elevation has been previously determined.

Baseline
Resultant 3D vector between any two stations with respect to a given coordinate system. The primary reference line in a construction system.

Base net
The primary baseline used for densification of survey stations to form a network.

Base Points
The beginning points for a traverse that will be used in triangulation or trilateration.

Base Control
The horizontal and vertical control points and coordinates used to establish a base network. Base control is determined by field surveys and permanently marked or monumented for further surveys.

Benchmark
A permanent material object, natural or artificial, on a marked point of known elevation.

Best Fit
To represent a given set of points by a smooth function, curve, or surface which minimizes the deviations of the fit.

Blunder
A mistake or gross error.

Calibration
Determining the systematic errors in an instrument by comparing measurements with correct values. The correct value is established either by definition or by measurement with a device which has itself been calibrated or of much higher precision.

Chi-square Testing
Non-parametric statistical test used to classify the shape of the distribution of the data.

Circle Position
A prescribed setting (reading) of the horizontal circle of a direction theodolite, to be used for the observation on the initial station of a series of stations that are to be observed.

Circuit Closure
Difference between measured or adjusted value and the true or published value.

Collimation
A physical alignment of a survey target or antenna over a mark or to a reference line.

Collimation Error
The angle between the actual LOS through an optical instrument and an alignment.

Confidence Level
Statistical probability (in percent) based on the standard deviation or standard error associated with the normal probability density function. The confidence level is assigned per an expansion factor multiplied by the magnitude of one standard error. The expansion factor is based on values found in probability tables at a chosen level of significance.

Control
Data used in geodesy and cartography to determine the positions and elevations of points on the earth's surface or on a cartographic representation of that surface. A collective term for a system of marks or objects on the earth or on a map or a photograph whose positions or elevation are determined.

Control Densification
Addition of control throughout a region or network.

Control Monuments
Existing local control or benchmarks that may consist of any Federal, state, local, or private agency points.

Control Point
A point with assigned coordinates is sometimes used as a synonym for control station. However, a control point need not be realized by a marker on the ground.

Control Survey
A survey which provides coordinates (horizontal or vertical) of points to which supplementary surveys are adjusted.

Control Traverse
A survey traverse made to establish control.

Coordinate Transformation
A mathematical process for obtaining a modified set of coordinates through some combination of rotation of coordinate axes at their point of origin, change of scale along coordinate axes, or translation through space.

Datum
Any numerical or geometrical quantity or set of such quantities which serve as a reference or base for other quantities.

Differential GPS
Process of measuring the differences in coordinates between two receiver points, each of which is simultaneously observing/measuring satellite code ranges and/or carrier phases from the NAVSTAR GPS constellation. Relative positioning with GPS can be performed by a static or kinematic modes.

Differential Leveling
The process of measuring the difference of elevation between any two points by spirit leveling.

Direction
The angle between a line or plane and an arbitrarily chosen reference line or plane. At a triangulation station, observed horizontal angles are referred to a common reference line and termed horizontal direction. A line, real or imaginary, pointing away from some specified point or locality toward another point. Direction has two meanings: that of a numerical value and that of a pointing line.

Direct Leveling
The determination of differences of elevation through a continuous series of short horizontal lines. Vertical distances from these lines to adjacent ground marks are determined by direct observations on graduated rods with a leveling instrument equipped with a spirit level.

Dumpy Level
The telescope permanently attached to the leveling base, either rigidly to by a hinge that can be manipulated by a micrometer screw.

Earth-Centered Ellipsoid
Center at the Earth's center of mass and minor semi-axis coincident with the Earth's axis of rotation.

Easting
The distance eastward (positive) or westward (negative) of a point from a particular meridian taken as reference.

Eccentricity
The ratio of the distance from the center of an ellipse to its focus on the major semi-axis.
Electronic Distance Measurement (EDM)
Timing or phase comparison of electro-magnetic signal to determine an interferometric distance.

Elevation
The height of an object above some reference datum.

Ellipsoid
Formed by revolving an ellipse about its minor semi-axis. The most commonly used reference ellipsoids in North America are: Clarke 1866, Geodetic Reference System of 1980 (GRS 80), World Geodetic System of 1972 (WGS 72), and World Geodetic System of 1984 (WGS 84).

Ellipsoid height
The magnitude h of a point above or below the reference ellipsoid measured along the normal to the ellipsoid surface.

Error
The difference between the measured value of a quantity and the theoretical or defined value of that quantity.

Error Ellipse
An elliptically shaped region with dimensions corresponding to a certain probability at a given confidence level.

Error of Closure
Difference in the measured and predicted value of the circuit along the perimeter of a geometric figure.

Finite Element Method
Obtaining an approximate solution to a problem for which the governing differential equations and boundary conditions are known. The method divides the region of interest into numerous, interconnected sub regions (finite elements) over which simple, approximating functions are used to represent the unknown quantities.

Fixed Elevation
Adopted as a result of tide observations or previous adjustment of spirit leveling, and which is held at its accepted value in any subsequent adjustment.

Foresight
An observation to the next instrument station. The reading on a rod that is held at a point whose elevation is to be determined.

Frequency
The number of complete cycles per second existing in any form of wave motion.

Geodesy
Determination of the time-varying size and figure of the earth by such direct measurements as triangulation, leveling, and gravimetric observations.

Geodetic Control
Established and adjusted horizontal and/or vertical control in which the shape and size of the earth have been considered in position computations.

Geodetic Coordinates
Angular latitudinal and longitudinal coordinates defined with respect to a reference ellipsoid.

Geodetic Height
See Ellipsoid height.

Geodetic Leveling
The observation of the differences in elevation by means of a continuous series of short horizontal lines of sight.

Geodetic Reference System of 1980
Reference ellipsoid used to establish the NAD83 system of geodetic coordinates.

Global Positioning System (GPS)
DoD satellite constellation providing range, time, and position information through a GPS receiver system.

Histogram
A graphical representation of relative frequency of an outcome partitioned by class interval. The frequency of occurrence is indicated by the height of a rectangle whose base is proportional to the class interval.

Horizontal Control
Determines horizontal positions with respect to parallels and meridians or to other lines of reference.

Index Error
A systematic error caused by deviation of an index mark or zero mark on an instrument having a scale or vernier, so that the instrument gives a non-zero reading when it should give a reading of zero. The distance error from the foot of a leveling rod to the nominal origin (theoretical zero) of the scale.

Indirect Leveling
The determination of differences of elevation from vertical angles and horizontal distances.

Interior Angle
An angle between adjacent sides of a closed figure and lying on the inside of the figure. The three angles within a triangle are interior angles.

International Foot
Defined by the ratio 30.48/100 meters.

International System of Units (SI)
A self-consistent system of units adopted by the general Conference on Weights and Measures in 1960 as a modification of the then-existing metric system.

Intersection
Determining the horizontal position of a point by observations from two or more points of known position. Thus, measuring directions or distances that intersect at the station being located. A station whose horizontal position is located by intersection is known as an intersection station.

Intervisibility
When two stations are visible to each other in a survey net.

Invar
An alloy of iron containing nickel, and small amounts of chromium to increase hardness, manganese to facilitate drawing, and carbon to raise the elastic limit, and having a very low coefficient of thermal expansion (about 1/25 that of steel).

Least Count
The finest reading that can be made directly (without estimation) from a vernier or micrometer.

Least Squares Adjustment
The adjustment of the values of either the measured angles or the measured distances in a traverse using the condition that the sum of the squares of the residuals is a minimum.

Level
Any device sensitive to the direction of gravity and used to indicate directions perpendicular to that of gravity at a point.

Level Datum
A level surface to which elevations are referred. The generally adopted level datum for leveling in the U.S. is mean sea level. For local surveys, an arbitrary level datum is often adopted and defined in terms of an assumed elevation for some physical mark.

Level Net
Lines of spirit leveling connected together to form a system of loops or circuits extending over an area.

Line of Sight
The line extending from an instrument along which distant objects are seen, when viewed with a telescope or other sighting device.

Local Coordinate System
Where the coordinate system origin is assigned arbitrary values and is within the region being surveyed and used principally for points within that region.

Local Datum
Defines a coordinate system which is used only over a region of very limited extent.

Mean Angle
Average value of the angles.

Metric Unit
Belonging to or derived from the SI system of units.

Micrometer
In general, any instrument for measuring small distances very accurately. In astronomy and geodesy, a device, for attachment to a telescope or microscope, consisting of a mark moved across the field of view by a screw connected to a graduated drum and vernier. If the mark is a hairlike filament, the micrometer is called a filar micrometer.

Misclosure
The difference between a computed and measured value.

Monument
A physical object used as an indication of the position on the ground of a survey station.

North American Datum Conversion (NADCON)
The National Geodetic Survey developed the conversion program NADCON to convert to and from North American Datum of 1983. The technique used is based on a bi-harmonic equation classically used to model plate deflections. NADCON works exclusively in geographical coordinates (latitude/longitude).

National Geodetic Vertical Datum 1929
Formerly adopted as the standard geodetic datum for heights, based on an adjustment holding 26 primary tide stations in North America fixed.

Network
Interconnected system of surveyed points.

Non-SI units
Units of measurement not associated with International System of Units (SI).
North American Datum of 1927
Formerly adopted as the standard geodetic datum for horizontal positioning. Based on the Clarke ellipsoid of 1866, the geodetic positions of this system are derived from a readjustment of survey observations throughout North America.

North American Datum of 1983
Adopted as the standard geodetic datum for horizontal positioning. Based on the Geodetic Reference System of 1980, the geodetic positions of this system are derived from a readjustment of survey observations throughout North America.

North American Vertical Datum of 1988
Adopted as the standard geodetic datum for heights.

Northing
A linear distance, in the coordinate system of a map grid, northwards from the east-west line through the origin (or false origin).

Open Traverse
Begins from a station of known or adopted position, but does not end upon such a station.

Optical Micrometer
Consists of a prism or lens placed in the path of light entering a telescope and rotatable, by means of a graduated linkage, about a horizontal axis perpendicular to the optical axis of the telescope axis. Also called an optical-mechanical compensator. The device is usually placed in front of the objective of a telescope, but may be placed immediately after it. The parallel-plate optical micrometer is the form usually found in leveling instruments.

Optical Plummet
A small telescope having a 90° bend in its optical axis and attached to an instrument in such a way that the LOS proceeds horizontally from the eyepiece to a point on the vertical axis of the instrument and from that point vertically downwards. In use, the observer, looking into the plummet, brings a point on the instrument vertically above a specified point (usually a geodetic or other mark) below it.

Order of Accuracy
Defines the general accuracy of the measurements made in a survey. The order of accuracy of surveys are divided into four classes labeled: first order, second order, third order, and fourth or lower order.

Origin
That point in a coordinate system which has defined initial coordinates and not coordinates determined by measurement. This point is usually given the coordinates (0,0) in a coordinate system in the plane and (0,0,0) in a coordinate system in space.

Orthometric Height
The elevation *H* of a point above or below the geoid.

Parallax
The apparent displacement of the position of a body, with respect to a reference point or system, caused by a shift in the point of observation.

Philadelphia Leveling Rod
Having a target but with graduations so styled that the rod may also be used as a self-reading leveling rod. Also called a Philadelphia rod. If a length greater than 7 feet is needed, the target is clamped at 7 feet and raised by extending the rod. When the target is used, the rod is read by vernier to 0.001 foot. When the rod is used as a self-reading leveling rod, the rod is read to 0.005 foot.

Photogrammetry
Deducing the physical dimensions of objects from measurements on photographs of the objects.

Plumb Line
The direction normal to the geopotential field. The continuous curve to which the gradient of gravity is everywhere tangential.

Positional Error
The amount by which the actual location of a cartographic feature fails to agree with the feature's true position.

Precision
The amount by which a measurement deviates from its mean.

Project Control
Control used for a specific project.

Project Datum
Datum used for a specific project.

Quadrangle
Consisting of four specified points and the lines or line segments on which they lie. The quadrangle and the quadrilateral differ in that the quadrangle is defined by four specified angle points, the quadrilateral by four specified lines or line-segments.

Random Error
Randomly distributed deviations from the mean value.

Readings
The observed value obtained by noting and/or recording scales.
Real-time
An event or measurement reported or recorded at the same time as the event is occurring through the absence of delay in getting, sending, and receiving data.

Reciprocal Leveling
Measuring vertical angles or making rod readings from two instrument positions for the purpose of compensating for the effects of refraction.

Rectangular Coordinate Systems
Coordinates on any system in which the axes of reference intersect at right angles.

Redundant Measurements
Taking more measurements than are minimally required for a unique solution.

Reference Point
Used as an origin from which measurements are taken or to which measurements are referred.

Rejection Criterion
Probabilistic confidence limit used to compare with measurements to determine if the measurements are behaving per a hypothesized prediction.

Refraction
The bending of rays by the substance through which the rays pass. The amount and direction of bending are determined by its refractive index.
Relative Accuracy
Indicated by the dimensions of the relative confidence ellipse between two points. A quantity expressing the effect of random errors on the location of one point or feature with respect to another.

Repeating Theodolite
Designed so that the sum of successive measurements of an angle can be read directly on the graduated horizontal circle.

Resection
Determining the location of a point by extending lines of known direction to two other known points.

Sexagesimal System
Notation by increments of 60. As the division of the circle into 360°, each degree into 60 minutes, and each minute into 60 seconds.

Setup
In general, the situation in which a surveying instrument is in position at a point from which observations are made.

Spheroid
Used as a synonym for ellipsoid.

Spirit Level
A closed glass tube (vial) of circular cross-section. Its center line forms a circular arc with precise form and filled with ether or liquid of low viscosity, with enough free space left for a bubble of air or gas.

Stadia Constant
The sum of the focal length of a telescope and the distance from the vertical axis of the instrument on which the telescope is mounted to the center of the objective lens-system.

Standard Error
The standard deviation of the errors associated with physical measurements of an unknown quantity, or statistical estimates of an unknown quantity or of a random variable.

Systematic Error
Errors that affect the position (bias) of the mean. Systematic errors are due to unmodeled effects on the measurements that have a constant or systematic value.

State Plane Coordinate System (SPCS)
A planar reference coordinate system used in the United States.
Strength of Figure
A number relating the precision in positioning with the geometry with which measurements are made.

Subtense Bar
A bar with two marks at a fixed, known distance apart, used for determining the horizontal distance from an observer by means of measuring the angle subtended at the observer between the marks.

Taping
Measuring a distance using a surveyor's tape.

Three-wire Leveling
The scale on the leveling rod is read at each of the three lines and the average is used for the final result.

Transformation
Converting a position from one coordinate system to another.

Traverse
A sequence of points along which surveying measurements are made.

Triangulation
Determination of positions in a network by the measurement of angles between stations.

Tribrach
The three-armed base, of a surveying instrument, in which the foot screws used in leveling the instrument are placed at the ends of the arms. Also called a leveling base or leveling head.

Trigonometric heighting
The trigonometric determination of differences of elevation from observed vertical angles and measured distances.

Trilateration
Determination of positions in a network by the measurement of distances between stations using the intersection of two or more distances to a point.

U.S. Survey Foot
The unit of length defined by 1200/3937 m

Variance-Covariance Matrix
A matrix whose elements along the main diagonal are called the variances of the corresponding variables; the elements off the main diagonal are called the covariances.

Vernier
An auxiliary scale used in reading a primary scale. The total length of a given number of divisions on a vernier is equal to the total length of one more or one less than the same number of divisions on the primary scaled.

Vertical Angle
An angle in a vertical plane either in elevation or depression from the horizontal.

Vertical Circle
A graduated scale mounted on an instrument used to measure vertical angles.

Vertical Datum
Any level surface used as a reference for elevations. Although a level surface is not a plane, the vertical datum is frequently referred to as the datum plane.

World Geodetic System of 1984
Adopted as the standard geodetic datum for GPS positioning. Based on the World Geodetic System reference ellipsoid.

Zenith Angle
Measured in a positive direction downwards from the observer's zenith to the observed target.

Zenith Distance
The complement of the altitude, the angular distance from the zenith of the celestial body measured along a vertical circle.